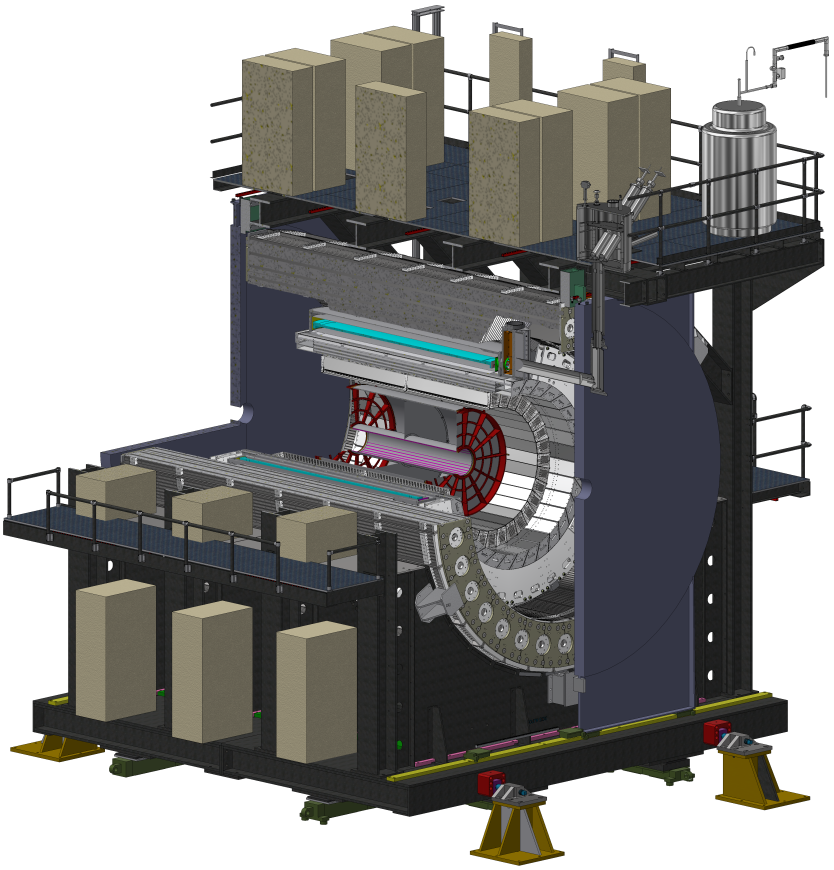
# sPHENIX Technical Design Report

PD-2/3 Release

May 13, 2019



# 3 Executive Summary

sPHENIX[1] is a proposal for a major upgrade to the PHENIX experiment at RHIC capable of measuring jets, photons, and Upsilon states to determine the temperature dependence of transport coefficients of the quark-gluon plasma. The detector needed to make these measurements requires electromagnetic and hadronic calorimetry for measurements of jets, a high resolution and low mass tracking system for reconstruction of the Upsilon states, and a high speed data acquisition system.

This document describes the baseline design for a detector capable of carrying out this program of measurements built around the BaBar solenoid. As much as possible, the mechanical, electrical, and electronic infrastructure developed for the PHENIX experiment from 1992-2016 is reused for sPHENIX. The major new systems are the superconducting magnet, a high precision tracking system, and electromagnetic and hadronic calorimeters.

The central tracking system consists of a small Time Projection Chamber (TPC) with three layers of Monolithic Active Pixel Sensors (MAPS) vertex detectors, and two layers of silicon strip detectors within the inner radius.

The electromagnetic calorimeter is a compact tungsten-scintillating fiber design located inside the solenoid. The outer hadronic calorimeter consists of steel in which scintillator tiles with light collected by wavelength shifting fibers are sandwiched between tapered absorber plates that project nearly radially from the interaction point. The calorimeters use a common set of silicon photomultiplier photodetectors and amplifier and digitizer electronics.

The baseline detector consists of the compact TPC and its readout electronics, an electromagnetic calorimeter with acceptance $|\eta| < 0.85$, an outer hadronic calorimeter which doubles as the flux return of the solenoid, readout electronics for the calorimeters, and data acquisition and trigger hardware. In addition to the baseline detector proposed here, several complementary projects have been pursued with alternative funding sources for the superconducting magnet and support structure, the remaining 25% of the electromagnetic calorimeter acceptance, an inner hadronic calorimeter, and two inner silicon detectors which both make the tracking more robust and enable a heavy flavor physics program.

The detector design has been evaluated by means of GEANT4 simulation and a program of bench and beam tests of prototype detectors. This program of simulation, prototyping, and testing of components has been used to converge on the baseline design described herein.

# Contents

CONTENTS

# Chapter 1

# Detector Overview

The sPHENIX detector is a cylindrical detector covering $|\eta| \leq 1.1$ and the full azimuth. It is designed to use the former BaBar superconducting solenoid to contain an inner tracking system out to 80 cm in radius followed by an electromagnetic calorimeter and the first of two longitudinal segments of a hadronic calorimeter, which is not instrumented in the project baseline. The second longitudinal segment of the hadronic calorimeter, which is instrumented to $|\eta| \leq 1.1$, also serves as the magnet flux return, surrounding the magnet cryostat.

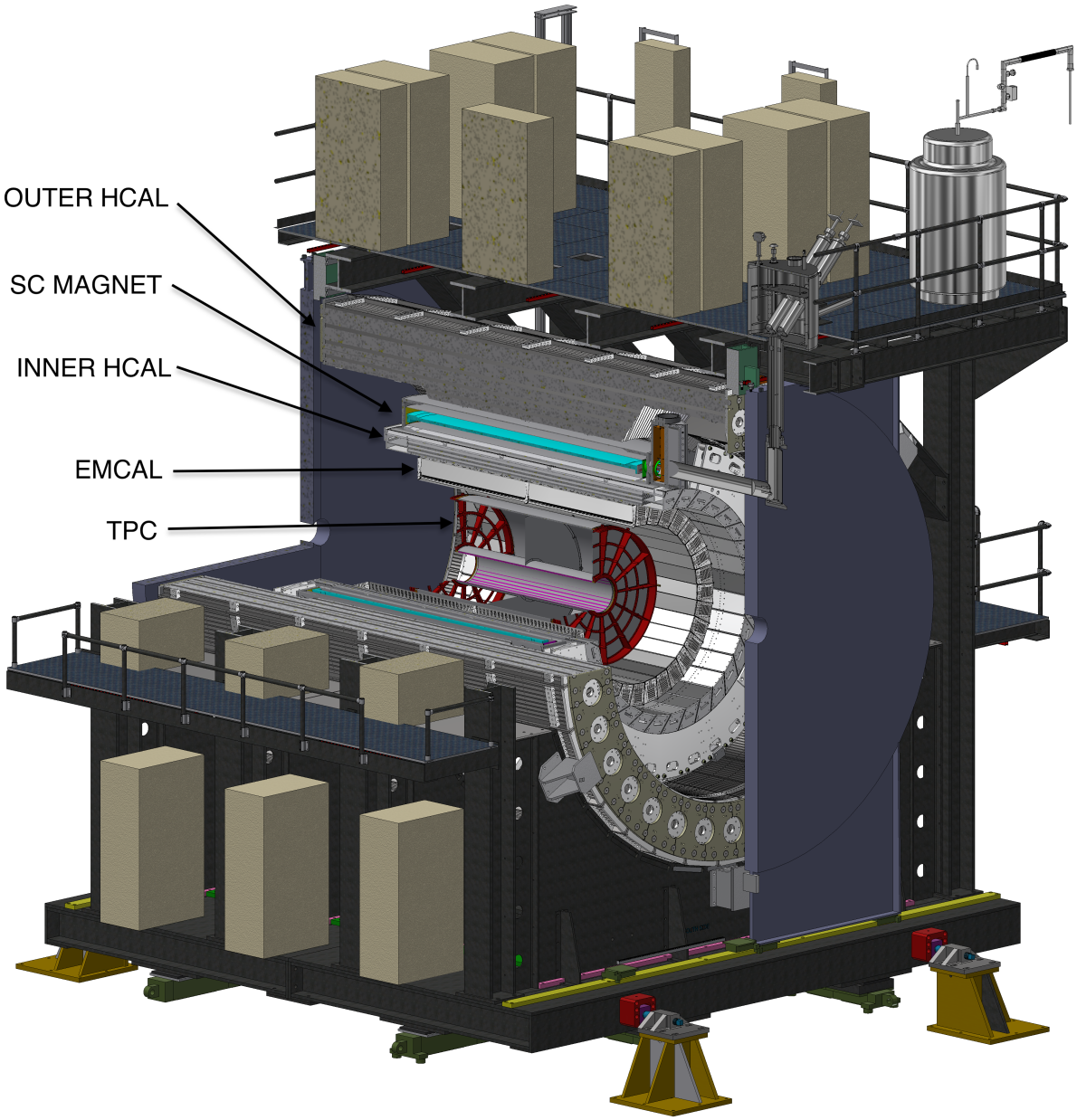



**Figure 1.1:** View of the sPHENIX detector with its component subdetectors.

sPHENIX has been designed to collect a large sample of events in Au+Au and $p$+$p$ collisions at RHIC to measure jets, jet correlations, and Upsilon production and decay, and satisfy a set of performance requirements that are needed to carry out the physics program. The sPHENIX physics program rests on several key measurements, particularly measurements of jets with calorimetry and tracking which can cleanly separate the Upsilon states; the requirements that drive any particular aspect of the detector performance come from a broad range of considerations related to those measurements. A comprehensive assessment of the physics requirements has led to the development of the reference design shown in Figure 1.1.

The primary components of the sPHENIX reference design are as follows.

**Magnetic Solenoid** Built for the BaBar experiment at SLAC, the magnet became available after the termination of the BaBar program. The cryostat has an inner radius of 140 cm and is 33 cm thick, and can produce a central field of 1.4 T.

**Tracking system** The tracking system consist of three components:

**Time Projection Chamber** A TPC with an outer radius of about 80 cm measures space points of charged tracks, which provides momentum resolution that can separate the Upsilon states in decays to $e^+e^-$.

**Intermediate Tracking** The Intermediate Tracker is a silicon strip detector consisting of two layers which can measure space points on charged tracks inside the inner radius of the TPC for robust tracking even in a high multiplicity heavy ion collision with time resolution that can separate pileup in the TPC. This detector is based on commercial silicon sensors read out with the FPHX ASIC developed for the PHENIX FVTX detector and is a RIKEN and RIKEN-Brookhaven Research Center contribution to the sPHENIX experiment.

**MAPS Vertex Detector** A Monolithic Active Pixel (MAPS) vertex detector in close proximity to the beam pipe is to provide high precision vertex measurements to determine displaced vertices from decays of particles containing $b$ and $c$ quarks, and provide additional precisely measured space points for charged particle tracking. This detector is proposed and developed as a separate upgrade to the sPHENIX proposal, based on duplicating as much as possible the ALICE Inner Tracking System (ITS) detector.

**Electromagnetic Calorimeter** Tungsten-scintillating fiber sampling calorimeter inside the magnet bore read out with silicon photo-multipliers. The calorimeter has a small Molière radius and short radiation length, allowing for a compact design.

**Inner Hadronic Calorimeter** Sampling calorimeter of non-magnetic metal and scintillator located inside the magnet bore, which is not part of the DOE funded proposal, but which could be instrumented at a later time with non-DOE funding.

**Outer Hadronic Calorimeter** Sampling calorimeter of magnet steel and scintillator located outside the cryostat, which doubles as the flux return for the solenoid.

In the following list we provide a high-level mapping between physics aims and various detector requirements. The justification for these requirements is then discussed in more detail in subsequent sections.

**Upsilons** The key to the physics is high statistics $p$+$p$, $p$+$A$, and $A$+$A$ data sets, with mass resolution and signal-to-background sufficient to separate the three states of the Y family.

- large geometric acceptance ($\Delta\phi = 2\pi$ and $|\eta| < 1.1$)
- high rate data acquisition (15 kHz)
- trigger for electrons from $\Upsilon \to e^+e^-$ ($> 90\%$ efficiency) in $p$+$p$ and $p$+$A$
- track reconstruction efficiency $> 90\%$ and purity $> 90\%$ for $p_T > 3$ GeV/c
- less than 125 MeV/$c^2$ mass resolution on Upsilon states.
- electron identification with efficiency $> 70\%$ and charged pion rejection of 90:1 or better in central Au+Au at $p_T = 4$ GeV/c.

---

**Jets** The key to the physics is to cover jet energies of 20–70 GeV, for all centralities, for a range of jet sizes, with high statistics and performance insensitive to the details of jet fragmentation.

- energy resolution $< 120\%/\sqrt{E_{\rm jet}}$ in $p$+$p$ for $R = 0.2$–$0.4$ jets
- energy resolution $< 150\%/\sqrt{E_{\rm jet}}$ in central Au+Au for $R = 0.2$ jets
- energy scale uncertainty $< 3\%$ for inclusive jets
- energy resolution, including effect of underlying event, such that scale of unfolding on raw yields is less than a factor of three
- measure jets down to $R = 0.2$ (segmentation no coarser than $\Delta\eta \times \Delta\phi \sim 0.1 \times 0.1$)
- underlying event influence determined event-by-event (large coverage HCal/EMCal) (ATLAS method)
- energy measurement insensitive to softness of fragmentation (quarks or gluons) — HCal + EMCal
- jet trigger capability in $p$+$p$ and $p$+$A$ without jet bias (HCal and EMCal)
- rejection ($> 95\%$) of high $p_T$ charged track backgrounds (HCal)

---

**Dijets** The key to the physics is large acceptance in conjunction with the general requirements for jets as above

- $> 80\%$ containment of opposing jet axis
- $> 70\%$ full containment for $R = 0.2$ dijets
- $R_{AA}$ and $A_J$ measured with $< 10\%$ systematic uncertainty (also key in $p$+$A$, onset of effects)

---

**Fragmentation functions** The key to the physics is unbiased measurement of jet energy

- excellent tracking resolution out to $> 40$ GeV/$c$ ($dp/p < 0.2\% \times p$/GeV)
- independent measurement of $p$ and $E$ ($z = p/E$)

---

**Heavy quark jets** The key to the physics is tagging identified jets containing a displaced secondary vertex

- precision DCA ($< 100$ microns) for electron $p_T > 4$ GeV/$c$
- electron identification for high $p_T > 4$ GeV/$c$

---

**Direct photon** The key to the physics is identifying photons

- EMCal segmentation $\Delta\eta \times \Delta\phi \sim 0.024 \times 0.024$
- EMCal resolution for photon ID $< 8\%$ at 15 GeV
- EMCal cluster trigger capability in $p$+$p$ and $p$+$A$ with large background rejection for $E_\gamma > 10$ GeV

---

**High statistics** Ability to sample high statistics for $p$+$p$, $p$+$A$, $A$+$A$ at all centralities — requires high rate, high throughput DAQ (15 kHz).

In the following sections, we detail the origin of key requirements.

## 1.1 Acceptance

The large acceptance and high rate of sPHENIX are key enablers of the sPHENIX physics program. The total acceptance of the detector is determined by the requirement of high statistics jet measurements and the need to fully contain both single jets and dijets. To fully contain hadronic showers in the detector requires both large solid angle coverage and a calorimeter deep enough to fully absorb the energy of hadrons up to 70 GeV.

The PYTHIA event generator has been used to generate a sample of $p$+$p$ at 200 GeV events which can be used to demonstrate the pseudorapidity distribution of jets. The left panel in Figure 1.2 shows the pseudorapidity distribution of jets with $E_T$ above 20, 30, and 40 GeV. The right panel in Figure 1.2 shows the fraction of events where a trigger jet with $E_T$ greater than a given value within a pseudorapidity range has an away side jet with

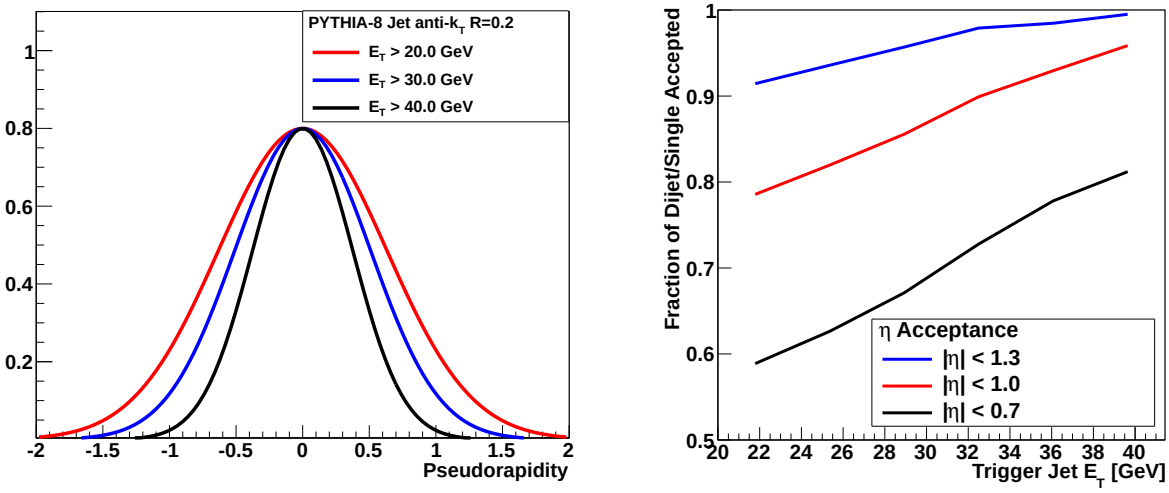



**Figure 1.2:** (Left) Pseudorapidity distribution of PYTHIA jets reconstructed with the FASTJET anti-k$_T$ and R=0.2 for different transverse energy selections. (Right) The fraction of PYTHIA events where the leading jet is accepted into a given pseudorapidity range where the opposite side jet is also within the acceptance. Note that the current PHENIX acceptance of $|\eta| < 0.35$ corresponds to a fraction below 30%.

$E_T > 5$ GeV accepted within the same coverage. In order to efficiently capture the away side jet, the detector should cover $|\eta| < 1$, and in order to fully contain hadronic showers within this fiducial volume, the calorimetry should cover slightly more than that. Given the segmentation to be discussed below, the calorimeters are required to cover $|\eta| < 1.1$.

It should be noted that reduced acceptance for the away-side jet relative to the trigger suffers not only fromoo a reduction in statistics for the dijet asymmetry and $\gamma$-jet measurements but also results in a higher contribution of low energy fake jets (upward fluctuations in the background) in those events where the away side jet is out of the acceptance. For the latter effect, the key is that both jet axes are contained within the acceptance, and then events can be rejected where the jets are at the edge of the detector and might have partial energy capture.

## 1.2 Segmentation

Jets are reconstructed from the four-vectors of the particles or measured energies in the event via different algorithms, and with a typical size $R = \sqrt{\Delta\phi^2 + \Delta\eta^2}$. In order to reconstruct jets down to radius parameters of $R = 0.2$ a segmentation in the hadronic calorimeter of $\Delta\eta \times \Delta\phi = 0.1 \times 0.1$ is required. The electromagnetic calorimeter segmentation should be finer as driven by the measurement of direct photons for $\gamma$-jet correlation observables. The compact electromagnetic calorimeter design being considered for sPHENIX has a

Molière radius of $\sim 15$ mm, and with a calorimeter at a radius of about 100 cm, this leads to an optimal segmentation of $\Delta\eta \times \Delta\phi = 0.024 \times 0.024$ in the electromagnetic section.

## 1.3 Energy Resolution

The requirements on the jet energy resolution are driven by considerations of the ability to reconstruct the inclusive jet spectra and dijet asymmetries and the fluctuations on the fake jet background. The total jet energy resolution is typically driven by the hadronic calorimeter resolution and many other effects including the bending of charged particles in the magnetic field out of the jet radius. Expectations of jet resolutions approximately 1.2 times worse than the hadronic calorimeter resolution alone are typical.

In a central Au+Au event, the average energy within a jet cone of radius $R = 0.2$ ($R = 0.4$) is approximately 10 GeV (40 GeV) resulting in an typical RMS fluctuation of 3.5 GeV (7 GeV). This sets the scale for the required reconstructed jet energy resolution, as a much better resolution would be dominated by the underlying event fluctuations regardless. A measurement of the jet energy for $E = 20$ GeV with $\sigma_E = 120\% \times \sqrt{E} = 5.4$ GeV gives a comparable contribution to the underlying event fluctuation. A full study of the jet energy resolution with a GEANT4 simulation of the detector configuration has been performed and is presented in the Physics Performance chapter of the sPHENIX Proposal [1].

Different considerations set the scale of the energy resolution requirement for the EMCal. The jet physics requirement is easily met by many EMCal designs. For the direct $\gamma$-jet physics, the photon energies being considered are $E_\gamma > 10$ GeV where even a modest $\sigma_E/E = 12\%/\sqrt{E}$ represents only a blurring of 400 MeV. In Au+Au central events, the typical energy in a $3 \times 3$ tower array is also approximately 400 MeV. These values represent a negligible performance degradation for these rather clean photon showers even in central Au+Au events.

Most of these physics measurements require complete coverage over a large range of rapidity and azimuthal angle ($\Delta\eta \leq 1.1$ and $\Delta\phi = 2\pi$) with good uniformity and minimal dead area. The calorimeter should be projective (at least approximately) in $\eta$. For a compact detector design there is a trade-off in terms of thickness of the calorimeter and Molière radius versus the sampling fraction and, therefore, the energy resolution of the device.

## 1.4 Tracking

The requirements on tracking capabilities are tied to three particular elements of the sPHENIX physics program. The measurement of the upsilon family of quarkonia states, heavy flavor tagged jets, and fragmentation functions at high and at low $z$, together set the

performance specification for the sPHENIX Tracker.

To fully utilize the available luminosity, the tracking systems should have large, uniform acceptance and be capable of fast readout. Measuring fragmentation functions at low $z$ means looking for possibly wide angle correlations between a trigger jet and a charged hadron. This places only moderate requirements on the momentum resolution ($\Delta p/p \simeq 1\% \cdot p$), but reinforces the requirement of large acceptance.

Fragmentation functions at high $z$ place more stringent requirements on momentum resolution and can be a design constraint at momenta well above 10 GeV/c. In order to unfold the full fragmentation function, $f(z)$, the smearing due to momentum uncertainty should be very small compared to the corresponding smearing due to the calorimetric jet measurement for a cleanly identified jet. For a 40 GeV jet this condition is satisfied by a tracking momentum resolution of $\Delta p/p \simeq 0.2\% \cdot p$ or better.

The measurement of the Y family places the most stringent requirement on momentum resolution below 10 GeV/c. The large mass of the upsilon means that one can focus primarily on electrons with momenta of $\sim 4-10$ GeV/c. The $\Upsilon(3S)$ has about 3% higher mass than the $\Upsilon(2S)$ state; to distinguish them clearly one needs invariant mass resolution of $\sim 1\%$ or $\sim$100 MeV. This translates into a momentum resolution for the daughter $e^{\pm}$ of $\sim 1.2\%$ in the range $4-10$ GeV/c.

The Y measurement also generates requirements on the purity and efficiency of electron identification. The identification needs to be efficient because of the low cross section for Y production at RHIC, and it needs to have high purity against the charged pion background to maintain a good signal to background ratio. Generally speaking, this requires minimizing track ambiguities by optimizing the number of tracking layers, their spacing, and the segmentation of the strip layers. Translating this need into a detector requirement can be done only by performing detailed simulations with a specific tracking configuration, followed by evaluation of the tracking performance.

Tagging heavy-flavor jets introduces the additional tracking requirement of being able to measure the displaced vertex of a D or B meson decay. The $c\tau$ for D and B decays is 123 $\mu$m and 457 $\mu$m, respectively, and the displaced vertex needs to be identified with a resolution sufficient to distinguish these decays against backgrounds.

## 1.5 Triggering

The jet energy should be available at the Level-1 trigger as a standard part of the PHENIX dead-timeless Data Acquisition and Trigger system. This triggering ability is important as one requires high statistics measurements in proton-proton, proton-nucleus, light nucleus-light nucleus, and heavy nucleus-heavy nucleus collisions with a wide range of luminosities. It is important to have combined EMCal and HCal information available so as to avoid a specific bias on the triggered jet sample.

# Chapter 2

# TPC

## 2.1 Physics requirements

Four elements of the sPHENIX physics program drive the performance parameters of sPHENIX tracking. Three of these, the measurement of the Upsilon family of quarkonia states, fragmentation functions at high and at low $z$, and heavy flavor tagged jets together set the momentum resolution spec for the tracker . The fourth element, the tagging of heavy-flavor jets, requires that the inner tracking system has the ability to measure the displaced vertex of a D or B meson decay. In addition, to fully utilize the available RHIC luminosity the tracking systems should have large, uniform acceptance and be capable of fast readout.

The measurement of the Y family places the most stringent requirement on momentum resolution at lower momentum. The large mass of the Upsilon means that one can primarily focus on electrons with momenta of $\sim 4-8$ GeV/c. The $\Upsilon(3S)$ has about 3% higher mass than the $\Upsilon(2S)$ state and to distinguish them clearly one needs invariant mass resolution of $\sim$125 MeV, or $\sim$ 1.25%. This translates into a momentum resolution for the daughter $e^{\pm}$ of $\sim$ 1.2% in the range $4-8$ GeV/c.

The Y measurement also generates requirements on the purity and efficiency of electron identification. The identification needs to be efficient because of the low cross section for Y production at RHIC, and it needs to have high purity against the charged hadron background to maintain a good signal to background ratio. This requires minimizing track ambiguities. For a continuous tracking device such as a TPC one must optimize the two-track separation through the appropriate choice of granularity of the readout plane, and control of space charge and pile-up effects. Translating this need into a detector requirement can be done only by performing detailed simulations with a specific tracking configuration, followed by evaluation of the tracking performance.

Fragmentation functions at high $z$ also place stringent requirements on momentum resolution and at larger momentum than the Y reconstructions. In order to unfold the full fragmentation function, $f(z)$, the smearing due to momentum uncertainty should be very small compared to the corresponding smearing due to the calorimetric jet measurement for a cleanly identified jet. For a 40 GeV jet this condition is satisfied by a tracking momentum resolution of $\Delta p/p \simeq 0.2\% \cdot p$ or better.

Measuring fragmentation functions at low $z$ requires looking for possibly wide angle correlations between a trigger jet and a charged hadron. This places only moderate requirements on the momentum resolution ($\Delta p/p \simeq 1\% \cdot p$), but reinforces the requirement of large acceptance.

Tagging heavy-flavor jets introduces the additional tracking requirements. At minimum this demands the ability to measure the displaced track originating from a D or B meson decay. The $c\tau$ for D and B decays is 123 $\mu$m and 457 $\mu$m, respectively, and the displaced track would need to be identified with a resolution sufficient to distinguish these decays against backgrounds. Furthermore, heavy-flavor jet identification algorithms such as

DCA-counting methods require multiple large DCA tracks to be found simultaneously within a jet and will require a large single track efficiency to keep the overall identification suitably efficient. Other heavy flavor jet identification methods such as those based on fully reconstructing individual secondary vertices can place additional demands on the individual track position resolution and impact the inner pixel segmentation.

## 2.2 General Remarks about Tracking

### 2.2.1 Magnetic Field

The field produced by the Babar magnet is shown in Figure 2.1. The sPHENIX application of this coil is rather close to the original BaBar design with an EMCAL inside the coil and tracking extending to ∼78 cm. A standard solenoid with length equal to diameter has significant radial magnetic field components at each end and thereby does not produce an idealized field shape. A return yoke with a small opening (*e.g.* STAR) will compensate for this shortcoming while severely limiting possibilities for upgrades in the forward direction. The BaBar magnet attacks this classic problem by using an increased winding density at each end, thereby sacrificing uniformity of the field at large radius, for an extended "sweet spot" of field in the middle. Thus the region in which sPHENIX plans to install tracking features a close-to-ideal magnetic field shape. It should further be noted that the calculations of Figure 2.1 are done with a return yoke that allows for future upgrades in the forward direction.

## 2.3 TPC Design Overview

The TPC design follows the classical cylindrical double-sided TPC layout used in several other experiments, with a central membrane electrode located at the middle of the interaction region dividing the TPC into two mirror-symmetric volumes, as shown in fig. 2.2.

In each such volume the readout plane is located on the endcap inner surface, facing the gas volume. The electric field, transporting primary ionization to the readout plane is formed by the membrane electrode set to the highest voltage bias on one side and by the the readout plane at ground potential on the other. The electrical drift field is constrained by the field cage along the inner and the outer cylindrical surfaces of the TPC.

The two mirror-symmetric parts of the TPC form a common gas volume filled with the gas mixture, which transports primary ionization to the readout plane on each TPC endcap surface. The same gas that transports primary ionization also serves as the medium for the amplification elements located in front of the readout planes. These amplification elements are built based on several layers of micropattern gaseous detectors.

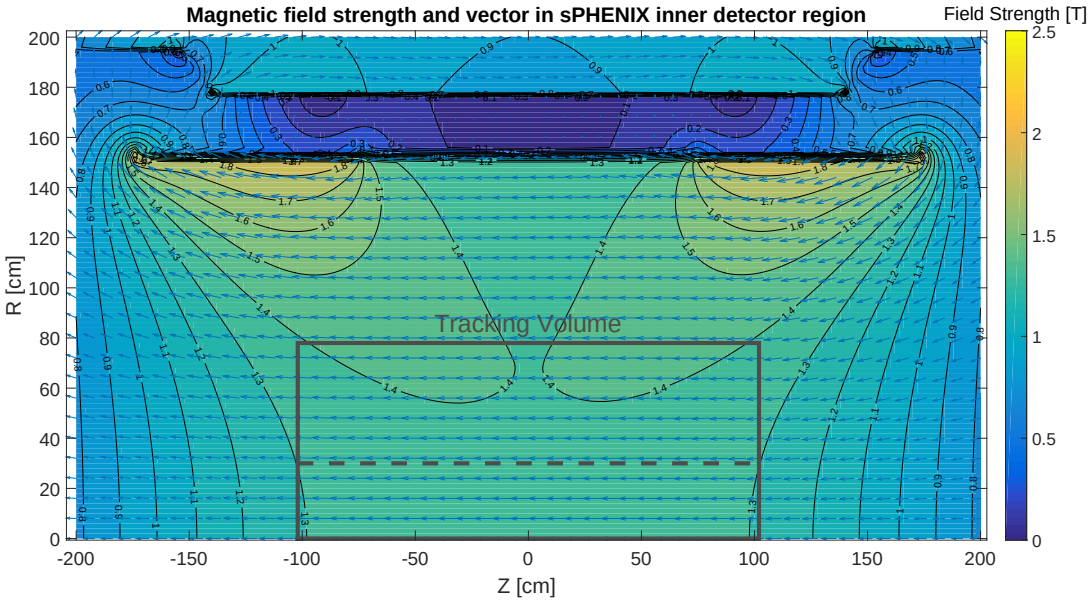



**Figure 2.1:** The BaBar magnet field superimposed with the dimensions of the tracker volume. This calculation includes the effect of the field return as envisioned for future upgrades (forward arm spectrometer). The dashed line indicates the inner radius of the TPC tracking volume.

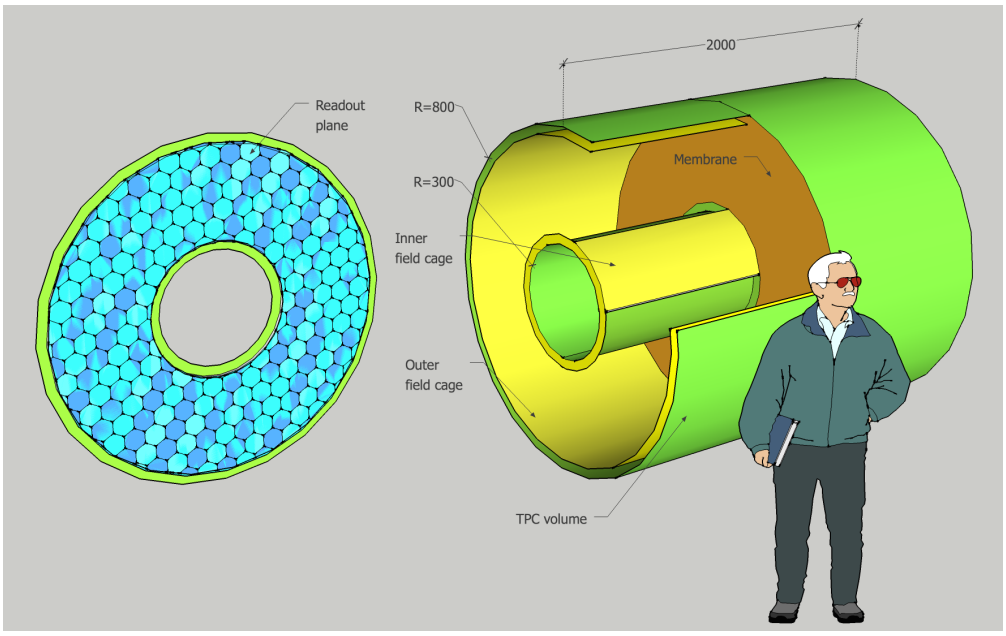



**Figure 2.2:** Schematic layout of TPC main elements.

Other TPC subsystems directly related to the main volume are the channel readout system; high voltage distribution systems for the drift field and for the amplification elements; gas circulation, control and purification system; TPC calibration systems. Operation and

| Size | end/TPC | sector/end | cards/sector | channels/card | channels/TPC |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| R1 | 2 | 12 | 6 | 256 | 36864 |
| R2 | 2 | 12 | 8 | 256 | 49152 |
| R3 | 2 | 12 | 12 | 256 | 73728 |
| **TOTAL** | | | | | **159744** |

**Table 2.1:** Table summarizing TPC module and channel counts.

readout of different service subsystems requires a TPC slow control system.

Each end of the TPC will be divided into 12 azimuthal segments and three radial segments. This size of GEM chamber is well established in multiple experiments and should lead to stable and reliable operation. Charge from individual pads will be collected by SAMPA chips (developed by ALICE) on the so-called FEE cards. Each FEE will house 8 SAMPA chips and thereby 256 channels. The R1, R2, and R3 modules support 6, 8, and 12 FEE cards respectively. Thus, the total number of channels for the TPC is 159,744. These channel counts are summarized in Table 2.1. Data flowing from each TPC sector (26 cards) will be collected into a Data Aggregation Module (DAM) wherein clustering algorithms will be performed prior to the data entering the main sPHENIX DAQ stream.

## 2.4 TPC Design Details

### 2.4.1 Design Drivers

The TPC system must supply sPHENIX with excellent pattern recognition and excellent momentum resolution in order to meet all the physics goals. As detailed below, this is a challenging task, but not insurmountably so. Figure 2.3 shows in 3D model form the location of the TPC. Because the TPC is sandwiched between the EMCAL on the outside radius and the silicon detectors on the inside, the radial extent of the TPC is limited to $20\ cm \rightarrow 78\ cm$.

The radial extent along with the polar angle direction ($\eta < \pm 1.1\ units$) defines the TPC envelope as indicated in Figure 2.4, compliant with the sPHENIX envelope control specifications. As compared to prior TPC detectors used in heavy ion physics (STAR, ALICE) the sPHENIX will be rather small and is thereby referred to as a "compact" TPC. While aspects of being compact simplify the detector construction (*e.g.* not requiring a scaffold to reach the detector top), others present challenges. In particular, a short gas length adversely affects the $\frac{dE}{dx}$ resolution and yields a small lever arm for momentum measurements.

Figures 8.3, 8.4 and 8.5 show simulations of the performance of the TPC and indicate that, as simulated, we meet or exceed all specifications. This performance is despite the short

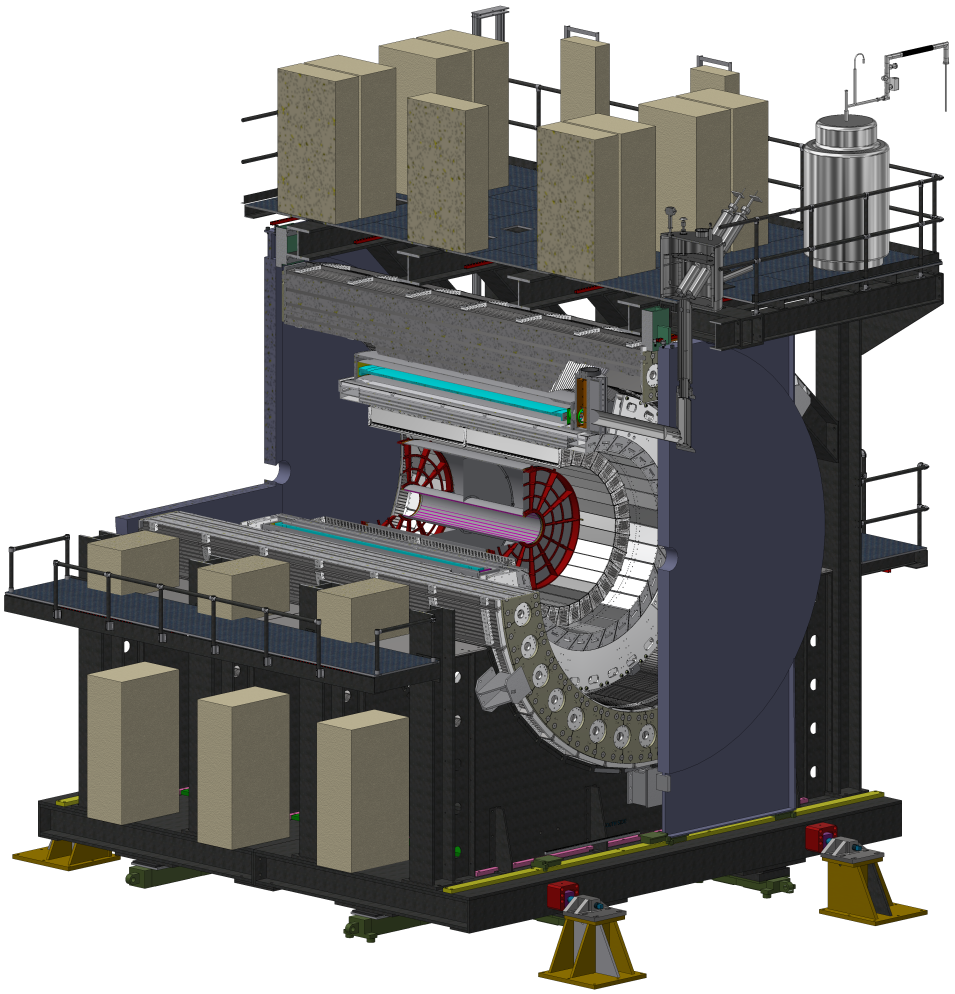


**Figure 2.3:** Schematic layout of the sPHENIX experiment. The TPC is presented as the central blue cylinder.

lever arm, but requires that the end-of-day resolution of the TPC should be better than 200 $\mu m$ in the $r - \phi$ direction. While not significantly beyond the bounds of what has been previously achieved, we must maintain this performance in the face of high collision rates and possibly high space charge effects.

### 2.4.2 Limiting Space Charge Effects

Figure 2.5 summarizes the geometrical overview of the TPC. Tracking is accomplished by digitizing the after-avalanche electron clouds that impinge upon the amplification stage after having drifted away from the central membrane. Because of the enormous positive charge left in the gas volume following avalanche (here expected to be 2000X the primary charge), any TPC design must specifically deal with the positive ions to eliminate or at

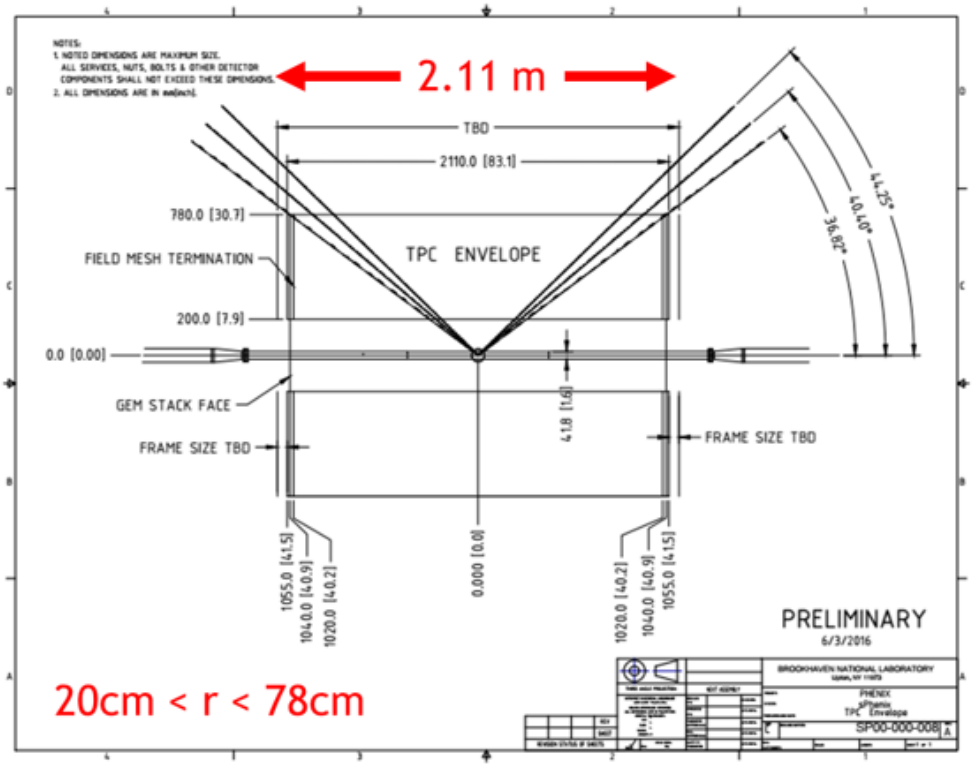



**Figure 2.4:** The outer limit of the TPC radial space (20 cm to 78 cm)is bounded by the INTT and EMCAL detectors and allows for an as-yet-unspecified future 10 cm PID upgrade device. The length is defined by the $\eta < \pm 1.1$ sPHENIX aperture.

least minimize their impact on the TPC drift field. Traditionally this issues is handled by a so-called "gating grid" whose bias can be set to either allow the flow of electrons (and ions) or deny this flow. A traditional TPC therefore operates by opening the gating grid upon receipt of a trigger, holding it open for a time sufficient to collect electrons with the largest drift time (*i.e.* those originating near the central membrane), and then closing it for a time period sufficient to block all avalanche-induced positive ions from entering the main TPC gas volume. Because of the "off-time" for responding to positive ions, traditional TPC's are considered somewhat slow devices.

A new concept in limiting Ion Back Flow (IBF, or avalanched-induced positive ions) has been pioneered by the ALICE collaboration and is expected to be brought online by them prior to first data-taking with sPHENIX. With the advent of MPGD (Micro-Pattern Gas Detector) technology a breakthrough is possible in IBF handling. As indicated in Figure 2.6, the avalanche stage of a gas detector can be made using a stack of Gas-Electron Multiplier (GEM) foils. Each foil contributes a small fraction of the total gain, which is achieved only when avalanching through the full stack. However, through clever manipulation of the electric fields between GEM foils ("transfer" fields) one can generate a condition whereby only a very small fraction of the positive ions are able to drift back into the main detector volume. In this way, the detector can be kept fully live at all times.

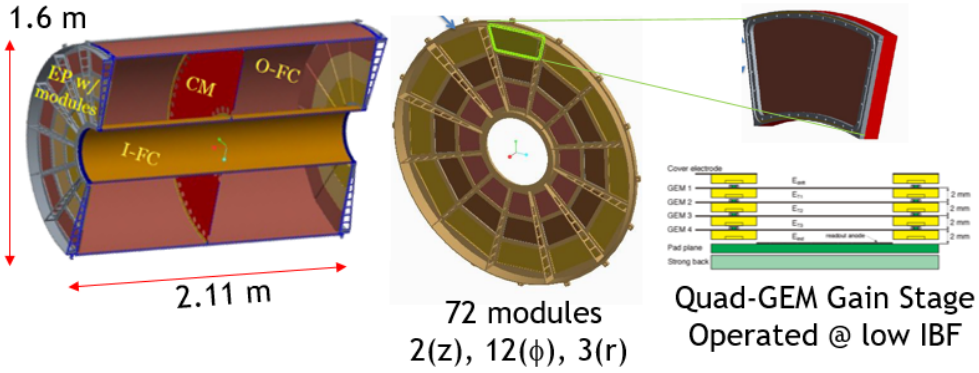



**Figure 2.5:** Ionization drifts away from the central membrane of the TPC and impinges upon the avalanche chambers located at each end. The end plates are segmented into 12 azimuthal and 3 radial segments, making a total of 72 modules in total. Each module is a quad-GEMstack operated in a low IBF configuration.


**Figure 2.6:** This figure shows the final design of the ALICE avalanche modules using a quad-GEMstack. We expect to operate similar chambers or perhaps a hybrid $\mu$MEGA arrangement.

Unfortunately, the MPGD-based avalanche scheme is not 100% effective at blocking positive ions from entering the gas volume. Figure 2.7 illustrates the problem. charge from the primary ionization (indicated by blue lines) is released into the gas volume. The positive ions will drift toward the central membrane with some having short paths and others longer. Conversely, all IBF positive ions begin at the avalanche chambers and therefore drift through the entire TPC gas volume. Because of the large disparity in drift velocity between the fast electrons and slow ions, the TPC effectively "stores" a past time history of ionization in the form of pancakes of charge that slowly drift toward the central membrane. Even in the case of upgraded ALICE working optimally, when operating at a gain of 2000 and an IBF fraction of 1%, the IBF positive charge will exceed the primary by a factor of 20X. Thus, all possible precautions and design considerations must be applied to the IBF issue.

The analytical expression for space charge density in radius and z, developed by STAR,

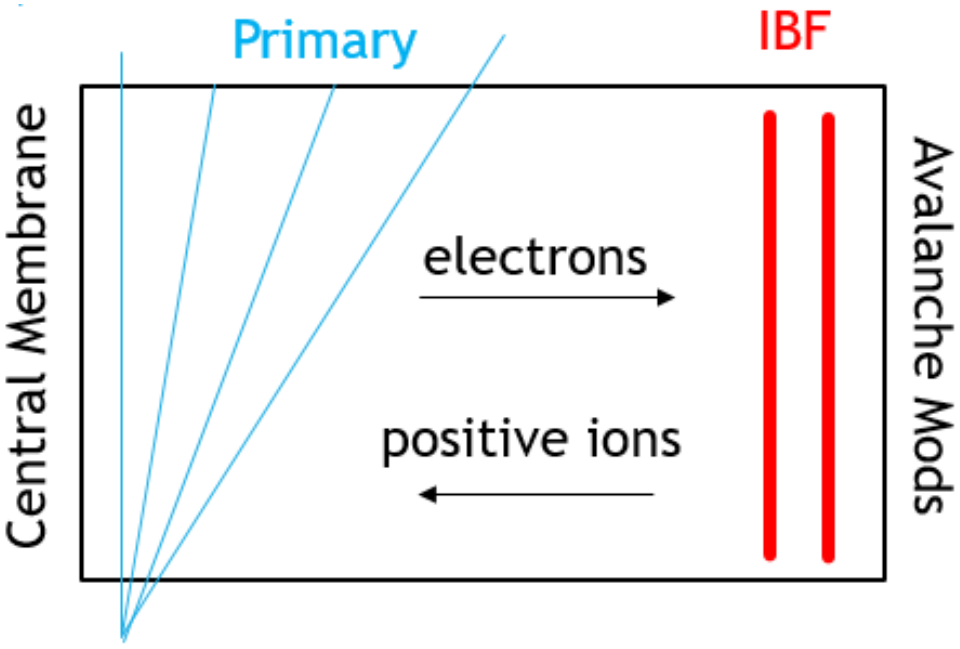



**Figure 2.7:** All ionization produces both signal electrons and positive ions. Primary ionization sets the lower limit to TPC space charge. However, even small percentage back flows from the avalanche stage (here represented by the red "pancakes" of drifting charge) contribute significantly to the overall space charge and will likely be the dominant source.

has the form:

$$\rho(r,z) \propto \frac{I \cdot M \cdot R}{v_{ion}} \left[ \frac{1 - \frac{z}{Z_{tot}} + e}{r^2} \right] \tag{2.1}$$

where $1 - \frac{z}{Z_{tot}}$ accounts for primary ionization and e accounts for IBF. Figure 2.8 shows the relative contributions of the two forms of space charge. The left panel shows the result from only primary ionization. The right panel shows the effect of adding only 1% IBF at a gain of 2000X. The space charge comes overwhelmingly from the non-absorbed fraction of avalanche charge. For this reason, we put our initial TPC design efforts into minimizing IBF. The following sections summarize each of the design steps we have used to combat and minimize IBF.

#### 2.4.2.1 Ion Drift Velocity

In general, the ion drift velocity is given by the expression:

$$\vec{v_{ion}} = K\vec{E} \tag{2.2}$$

where K is the ion mobility and $\vec{E}$ is the electric field. Although the ion mobility is, in principle, a function of the applied field, for all practical values of drift field, the ion

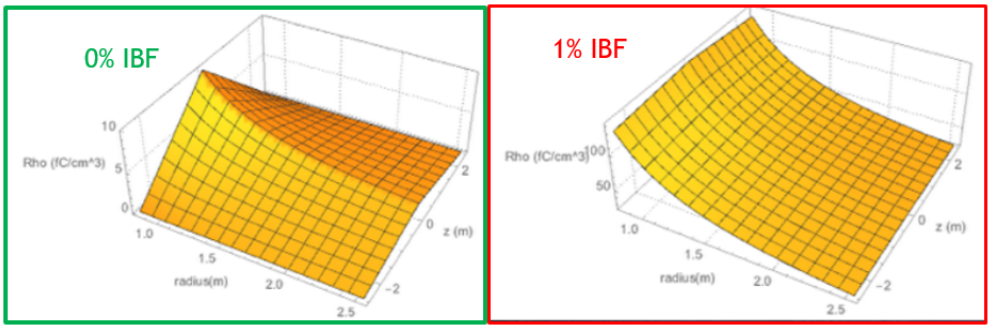



**Figure 2.8:** The left panel shows the anticipated space charge in the TPC resulting from only primary charges with a minimum bias collision rate of 100 kHZ. The right panel shows the result if one assumes 1% IBF from the avalanche stage operating with a gain of 2000.

mobility is a constant. Therefore, the initial attack on space charge involves maximizing the ion drift velocity by maximizing both the mobility and electric field strength. Figure 2.9 shows the ion mobility in pure gases as a function of mass. Clearly the fastest gases have the lowest mass, driving us toward Ne as the principle noble gas component for sPHENIX. The right hand plot in the same Figure shows the accuracy by which one can predict ion drift velocity in gas mixtures using Blanc's Law:

$$\frac{1}{K_{tot}} = \frac{f_1}{K_1} + \frac{f_2}{K_2} + \frac{f_3}{K_3} + ... \tag{2.3}$$

Blanc's law is analogous to the formula for resistors in parallel. We can apply law to compare ion drift velocities across experiments as shown in the table below:

| Gas | K $(\frac{cm^2}{Volt \cdot sec})$ | $v_D\left(E = 130\frac{V}{cm}\right)$ | $v_D\left(E = 400\frac{V}{cm}\right)$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ar | 1.51 | 196 | 604 |
| Ar-$CH_4$ 90:10 | 1.56 | 203(STAR) | 624 |
| Ar-$CO_2$ 90:10 | 1.45 | 189 | 582 |
| Ne | 4.2 | 546 | 1680 |
| Ne-$CH_4$ 90:10 | 3.87 | 503 | 1547 |
| Ne-$CO_2$ 90:10 | 3.27 | 425 | 1307(ALICE) |
| He | 10.2 | 1326 | 4080 |
| He-$CH_4$ 90:10 | 7.55 | 981 | 3019 |
| He-$CO_2$ 90:10 | 5.56 | 722 | 2222 |
| T2K | 1.46 | 190(ILC) | 584 |

It is clear that the space charge issues in STAR and ALICE are of an entirely different nature. in STAR, the ion mobility is low enough that the positive argon ions from the primary charge generate track distortions. In ALICE, both the noble gas choice (Ne instead of Ar) and the high drift field, dramatically reduce the distortions due to the space charge from the primary ionization. After upgrade, ALICE will struggle primarily with the ion back flow from the amplification stage.

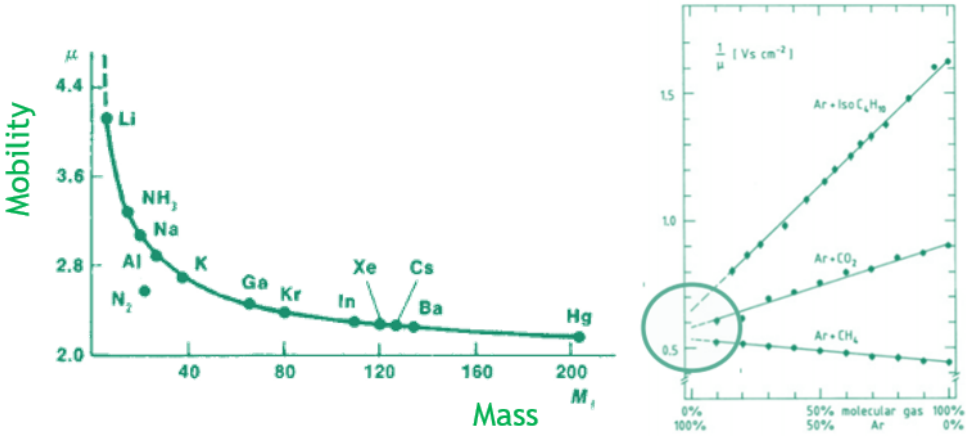



**Figure 2.9:** The left panel shows the mass dependence of positive ion mobility, clearly favoring light gases for high mobility and thereby low space charge. The right panel shows the effectiveness of Blanc's Law for calculating ion mobility in gas mixtures.

#### 2.4.2.2 GEMstack Operating Point

ALICE has done extensive studies of the characteristics of IBF using a quad GEMstack. Their results are summarized in Figure 2.10. The vertical axis is an energy resolution measure based upon $^{55}Fe$ measurements. The 5.6 keV gamma from $^{55}Fe$ would be expected to have a fractional width $\frac{\sigma}{mean}$ of roughly 8%. However, one sees that in the limits of lowest ion back flow, the resolution worsens significantly. Understanding this effect is simple. In the ALICE configuration, any positive ions created by the top GEM will be coupled directly in to the drift volume. Therefore, lowering the gain in the first GEM is the most effective way to lower the IBF. However, fractional gain fluctuations are maximized at low gain, thereby spoiling energy resolution. Despite the many different running configurations represented in this plot, all fall basically atop the energy resolution vs IBF compromise curve.

For ALICE this is a critical consideration since their TPC's main function is the measurement of specific ionization, $\frac{dE}{dx}$. For sPHENIX the case is significantly simpler since our physics goals do not require a precision $\frac{dE}{dx}$ measurement. We therefore choose to operate our GEMstacks at the lowest point measured by ALICE, 0.3% IBF.

#### 2.4.2.3 Field Cage Entrance Window

The finger-physics explanation of the effects of space charge in the TPC volume is simple: Positive ions attract electrons and thereby distort their trajectories toward the "middle" radius of the TPC. A more careful consideration reminds us that if space were filled with a uniform charge density, that there would be no net force on the electron. Therefore we are lead to the simple picture that space charge distortions maximize at both the inner

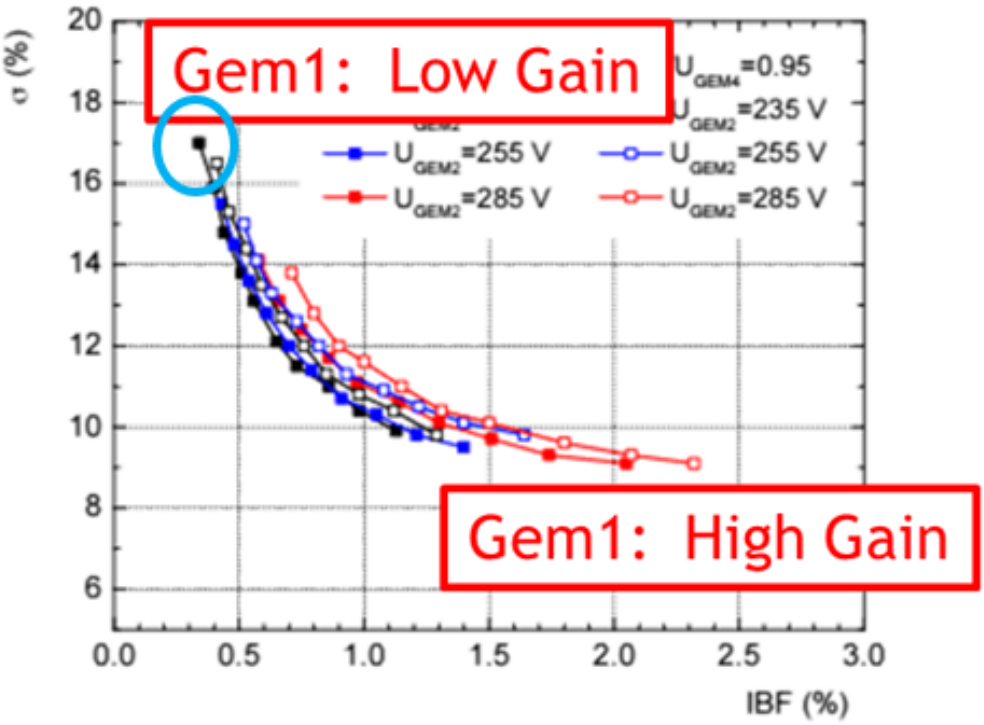



**Figure 2.10:** Results from R&D for the ALICE experiment indicate a "universal" trend. Configurations with the lowest IBF suffer from poor energy resolution. The principle reason for this trend is the contribution of the first GEM to the overall gain.

and outer field cages where the space charge density has a discontinuity. Indeed, full calculations of space charge distortions for sPHENIX are shown in Figure 2.11. The blue curve indicates a calculation for a TPC spanning the radial range 30-80 cm. The maximum distortion is 2 cm found exactly at the inner radius. Notice, however, the red curve for a TPC spanning 20-80 cm. At the lowest radius, the distortion is indeed severe (3 cm, 50% worse than before), however the distortion of the track at 30 cm is drastically reduced to only 3 mm!. Thus, by modifying our TPC design from the originally-proposed version (30-80 cm) to a new version that spans (20-80 cm), can can easily and dramatically reduce space charge to under 1 cm.

#### 2.4.2.4 Passive Mesh for IBF Reduction

Although our current proposal for IBF reduction (Ne gas; High E-field; Low IBF Op Point; Moved Inner Field Cage), makes our distortions manage-ably small, there is still significantly more that can be done to reduce IBF. Such a reduction would allow us to, for example, change the operation point of the GEMstack to regain much of the lost resolution. To understand the technique we must first gain insight on how IBF reduction in an MPGD detector works.

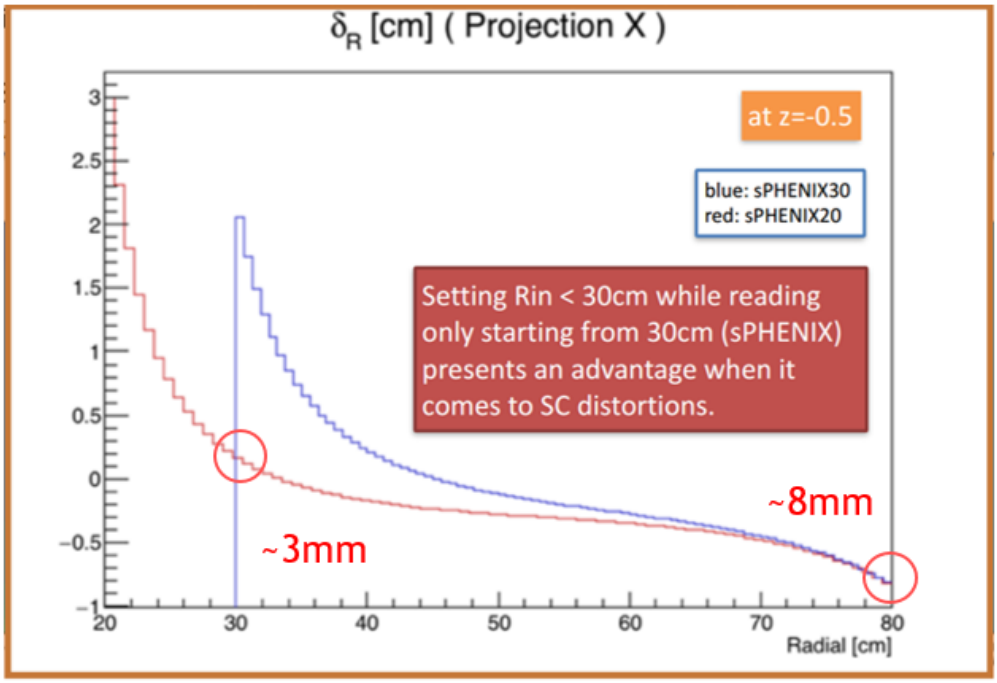



**Figure 2.11:** Electron paths are primarily influenced by the charge density closest to the electron. Necessarily, the greatest deflections from the ideal trajectory are found closest to the field cage. By moving the field cage entrance window from 30 cm to 20 cm, we are able to drastically reduce the deflection due to IBF to reasonably manageable levels.

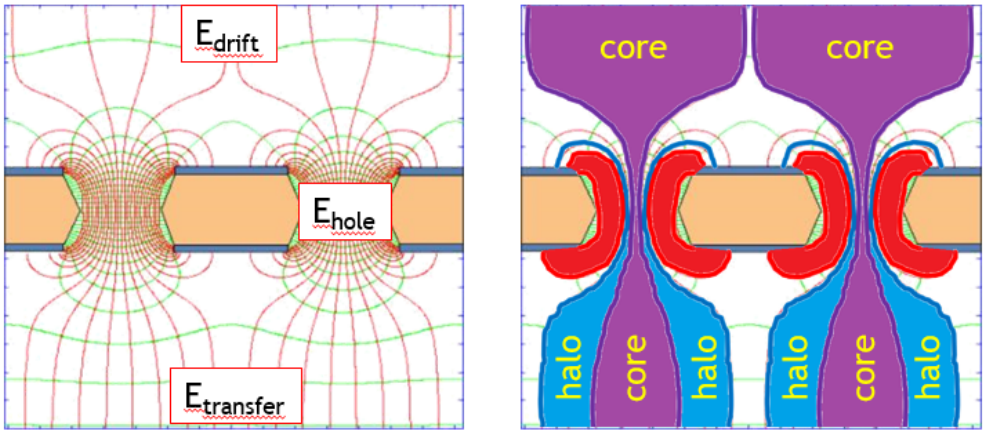



**Figure 2.12:** In the limit of zero diffusion, one can easily visualize the mechanism behind IBF suppression. When the exit field of a GEM significantly exceeds the entrance field, near 100 % electron transmission is achieved while many or most of the ions terminate instead on the GEM itself.

Figure 2.12 shows the electric field lines of a GEM under operation in the left panel. Notice that the density of field lines below the GEM is greater than above, indicating the the transfer field exceeds the drift field. The right hand panel shows the limit in which we

ignore diffusion during transport. The violet region indicates the field lines passing from above the GEM to below. The blue "halo" region surrounds the "core". Electrons beginning above the GEM will all be transported through the holes. However, ions beginning below the GEM will distribute themselves among the core and halo, thereby having only a fractional transmission.

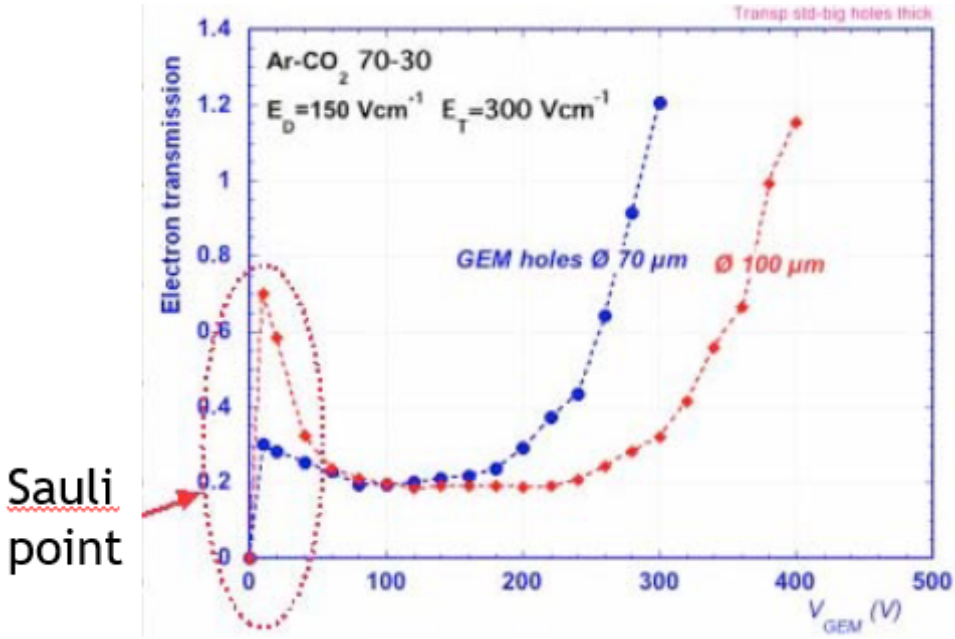



**Figure 2.13:** The so-called "Sauli Point" for a GEM is a spike in electron transmission at very low dV. sPHENIX has proposed and simulated using either a low $\Delta$V GEM operating at the Sauli Point or even a simple mesh to create an electron-transparent but ion-blocking shield.

This effect is quite similar to that which induces the so-called "Sauli Point" (Figure 2.13) for GEM transparency at low avalanche field. Indeed, this phenomenon has served as the basis for design of the gating GEM anticipated for use the the ILC TPC. Inspired by that possibility and further encouraged by a private suggestion that the same might be accomplished by a passive mesh (H. Appelshäuser, ALICE), we began a second consideration of methods to combat IBF without compromising energy resolution.

Figure 2.14 summarizes the approach. The well understood degradation in energy resolution with decreasing IBF comes from fluctuations at low gain the the first GEM. Indeed, statistical distributions enforce this tendency, for example Poisson distributions have the variable equal to the mean. However, an avalanche is different. At the very least the primary electron in the avalanche will be present at small gain $\sim$1. For this reason, an avalanche stage with full transparency and no gain introduces no fluctuations. If such a structure were placed with asymmetric entrance and exist field, it is natural to assume that the electric fields would dictate high transparency and low IBF.

Full GARFIELD simulations indicate that this configuration should be viable. Many different mesh geometries have been modeled by sPHENIX, one of which is summarized

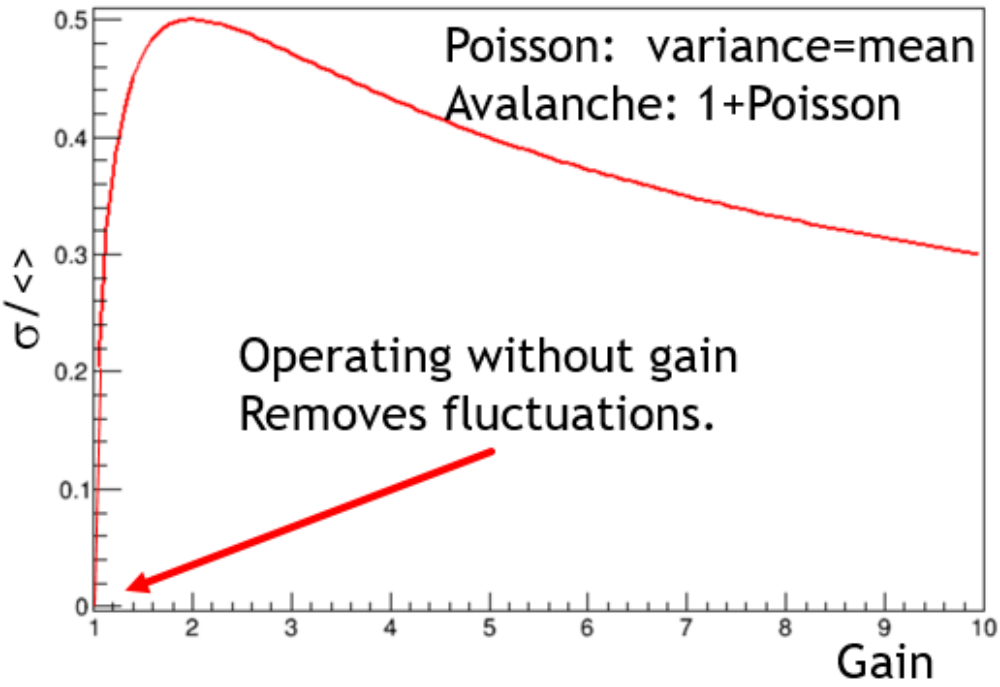



**Figure 2.14:** Electron gain differs from simple statistical calculations (*e.g.* Poisson) because even without gain, at the very least the electron that enters the avalanche exits as well. Therefore the fluctuations (measured as $\frac{\sigma}{mean}$) vanish in the low gain limit.

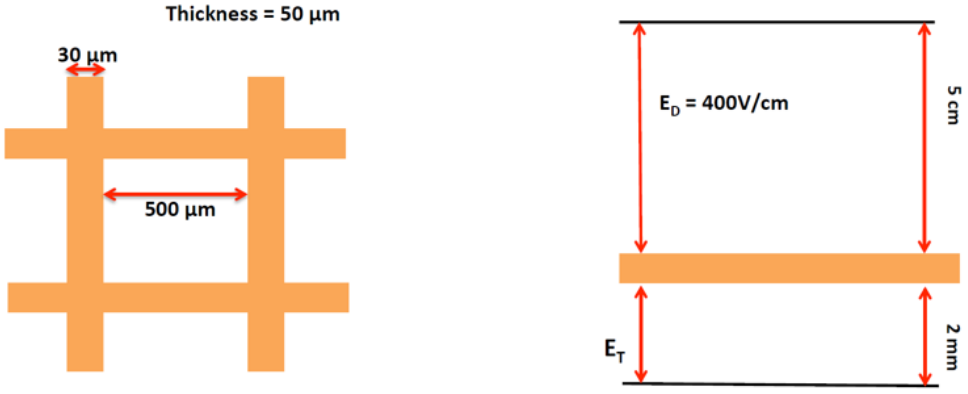



**Figure 2.15:** Full GARFIELD simulations including magnetic field in the idealized mesh shape shown here, square holes photographically etched into flat metal.

in Figures 2.15 and 2.16. Both the electron transmission (forward direction) and the ion blocking (backward direction) have been measured using GARFIELD in our operating gas and as a function of magnetic field in the TPC. Clearly, for quite reasonable ratios of drift and transfer fields, one can achieve nearly 100% electron transmission while blocking about 80% of the positive ions. This would, in principle allow for much more favorable operating points with very low IBF and good energy resolution. Future R&D will confirm these findings.

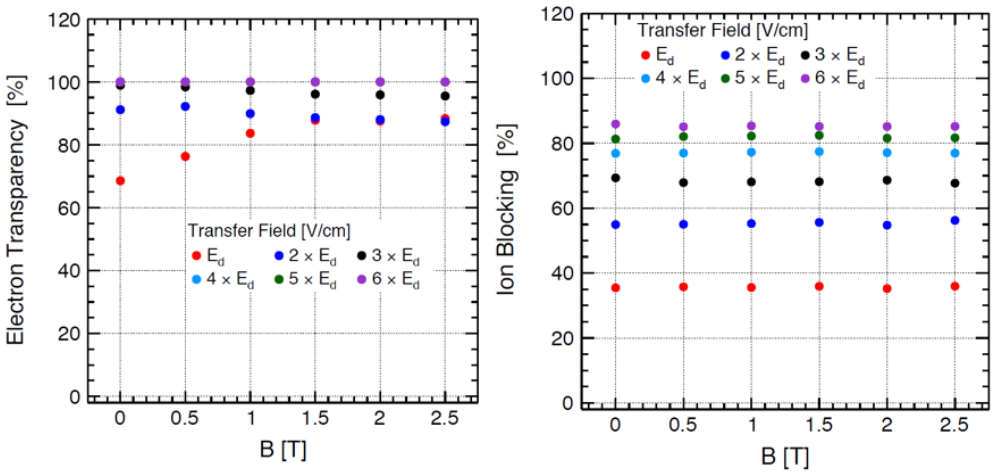



**Figure 2.16:** GARFIELD results indicate that for reasonable ratios of $\frac{E_{exit}}{E_{entrance}}$ near perfect electron transmission can be achieved while blocking 70-80% of the ions produced in the avalanche stage.

### 2.4.3 Diffusion and Resolution

The prior section justified our choices for minimization of IBF effects on the TPC:

- Use a low mass gas (Ne) to increase ion drift velocity.
- Use a high drift field to increase drift velocity.
- Select a GEM operating point for intrinsically low IBF.
- Move the inner field cage closer to the interaction point to counteract space charge.
- Adjust the field strengths on both sides of the field termination mesh to allow for passive IBF rejection.

These steps, will surely minimize the IBF distortions or a manageable level.This, our next consideration must be resolution.

The single point resolution of a gas chamber can be expressed as the quadrature sum of several terms:

$$\sigma_x^2 = \sigma_{pad}^2 + \frac{D_T^2 L}{N_{eff}} + \sigma_{sc}^2 \tag{2.4}$$

Here $\sigma_x$ is the position resolution, $\sigma_{pad}$ is the intrinsic resolution of the pad plane, $D_T$ is the transverse diffusion constant, $L$ is the drift length, $N_{eff}$ is the effective number of electrons, and $\sigma_{sc}$ is the uncertainty due to space charge distortion. The character of the diffusion constant reflects the random walk process. Clearly the lowest diffusion gas will give us

the best precision so long as we achieve charge sharing among pads (so as to not ruin the pad term).

Although the $N_{eff}$ term looks like simple counting statistics, it is somewhat more complicated. Two principle factors reduce the effective number of electrons as compared to the average number of ionization electrons. The first factor is only relevant when the number of electrons is very small on average. This one notes that:

$$\langle N \rangle \neq \left( \left\langle \frac{1}{N} \right\rangle \right)^{-1} \tag{2.5}$$

Although significant for numbers of primary electrons below 10, this correction is only a few % for our case. The second factor is more subtle and more significant. Since each electron's avalanche is of different strength, the error on the mean is larger than the error of a single measurement over $\sqrt{N}$. This calculated by Kobayashi for a Polya gain distribution with parameter $\theta$ as:

$$R = 1 + \frac{1}{1+\theta} \tag{2.6}$$

The the gases currently under consideration by sPHENIX this reduction in $N_{eff}$ is between a factor of 1.5 and 2.

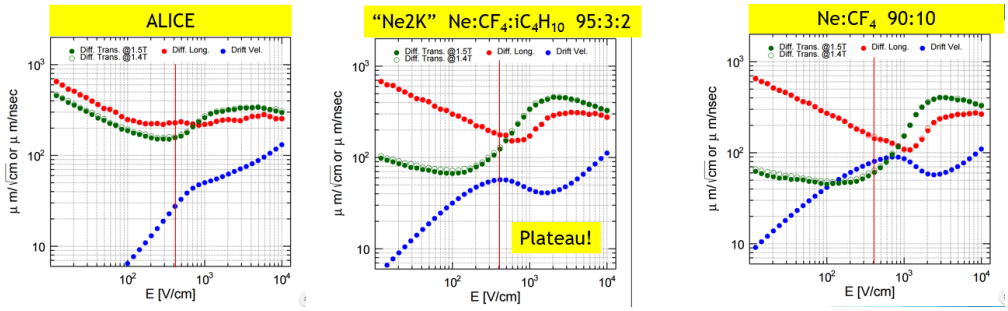



**Figure 2.17:** Three types of gases are analyzed for longitudinal diffusion (red), transverse diffusion (blue), and drift velocity (black). The left panel shows the original ALICE gas (Ar:$CO_2$), "Ne2K" (as described in the text), and our current leading choice (Ne:$CF_4$ 90:10).

Figure 2.17 shows calculations of diffusion and drift velocity for several gas choices. The red curve is longitudinal diffusion, the green curve is transverse diffusion, and the blue curve (different scale) is drift velocity. Table 2.2 summarizes the diffusion-driven resolution.

Pure resolution considerations obviously favor the $Ne : CF_4$ gas mixture over Ne2K, however, the plateau at our exact drift velocity in Ne2K makes this remain an attractive choice.

| Gas | $N_{eff}$ | $D_T$ | $\frac{D_T\sqrt{L}}{\sqrt{N_{eff}}}$ | $v_{drift}$ | $T_{drift}$ | $\sigma_\tau(chr)$ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Ne2K | 31.4 | $120\frac{\mu m}{\sqrt{cm}}$ | 214 $\mu$m | $56\frac{\mu m}{nsec}$ | 18 $\mu sec$ | $32nsec$ |
| Ne:$CF_4$ 90:10 | 32.1 | $60\frac{\mu m}{\sqrt{cm}}$ | 106 $\mu$m | $80\frac{\mu m}{nsec}$ | 12.5 $\mu sec$ | $17.5nsec$ |

**Table 2.2:** Resolution comparison for Ne2K and Ne:$CF_4$ gases.

| | |
|---|---|
| $N_{eff}$ | 20.4 |
| $\sigma_{pad}$ | 70 $\mu$ m |

**Table 2.3:** TPC Measured performance in test beam.

In June 2018, we mounted a test beam campaign to measure the resolution of a small prototype TPC. Using a single, extra field stripe circuit card sized for the TPC inner field cage, we were able to construct a 40 cm diameter and 40 cm length TPC. Because the device (shown in Figure!2.18 is a single-ended TPC, it yielded a drift length of 40 cm, thereby allowing tests at a significant fraction of the TPC full drift length of 1 meter.

The TPC resolution depends strongly upon the magnetic field due principally to the diffusion term. However, upon inspection of the resolution equation

$$\sigma_x^2 = \sigma_{pad}^2 + \frac{D_T^2 L}{N_{eff}} + \sigma_{sc}^2 \tag{2.7}$$

we notice that the square resolution rises linearly with drift length. We are therefore able to distinguish the $\sigma_{pad}^2$ from the $\frac{D_T^2 L}{N_{eff}}$ contributions by measuring the intercept and slope of the resolution as a function of length. Our results were comparable to our expectations summarized in Table 2.3.

These results are in good agreement with expectations. $N_{eff}$ was measured with 9mm pads (instead of the 12.5 mm assumed in the prior table. Therefore the expectation for $N_{eff}$ should be 24 electrons...comparable to the result of $\sim$ 20. They can furthermore be used, along with the field-on known value of transverse diffusion, to create a measurement-based estimate for the TPC resolution with field on. Figure 2.19 shows the result. The blue dots are the measurement and the green dots are the estimate of what would be achieved with the complete elimination of electronic noise. The average resolution from this plot (114 $\mu m$) is significantly better than either the design requirement or the simulation (which contains a conservative smearing).

Following this successful test beam campaign, we have selected the $Ne : CF_4$ mixture as the final choice.

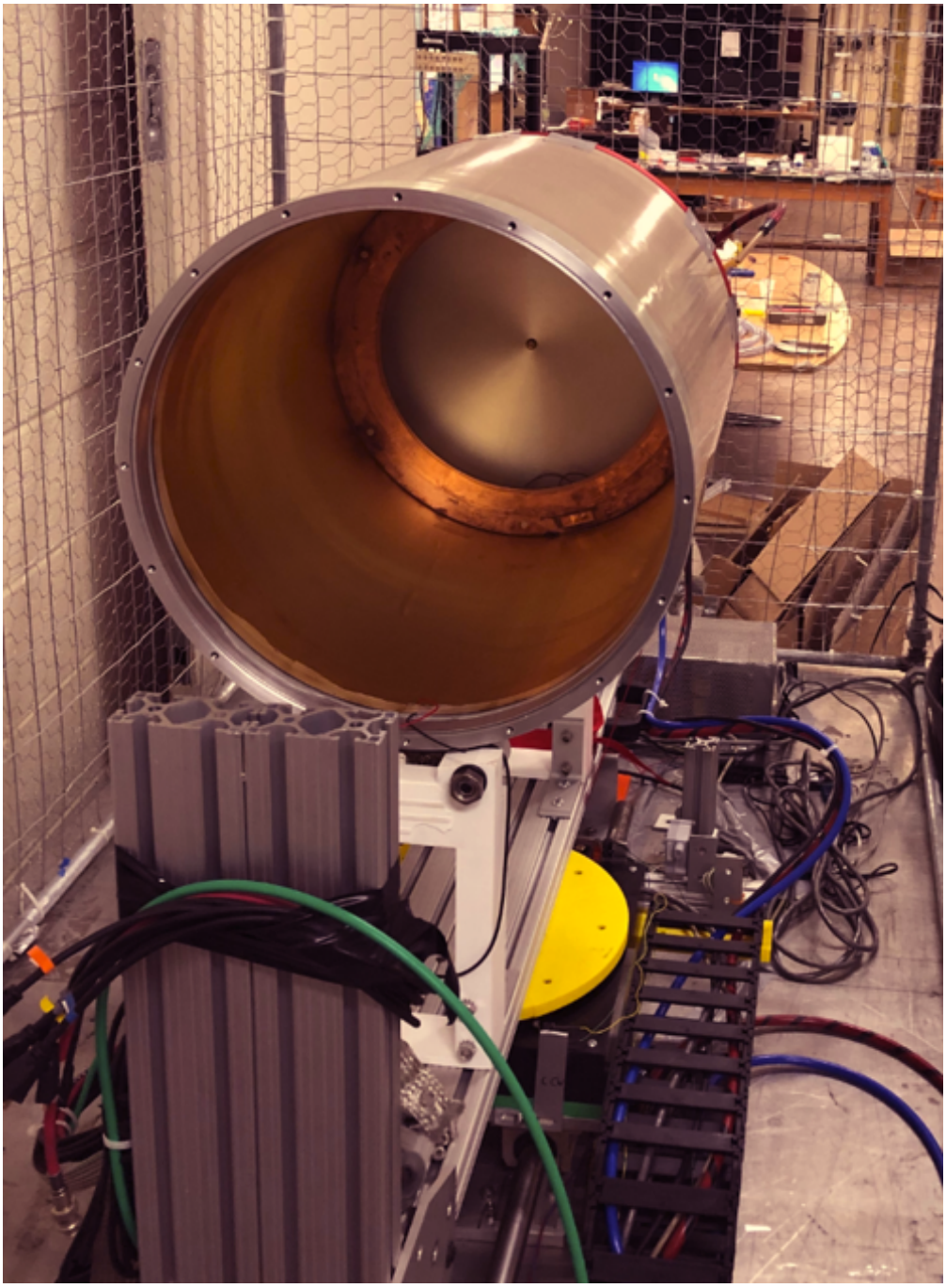


**Figure 2.18:** A photo of the TPC prototype taken to test beam in June 2018.

## 2.5 TPC Electronics

sPHENIX benefits tremendously from the developments in ALICE for their own TPC upgrade. In many ways, our detector is based upon theirs. It is therefore worthwhile to summarize their design before moving to the particulars of sPHENIX.

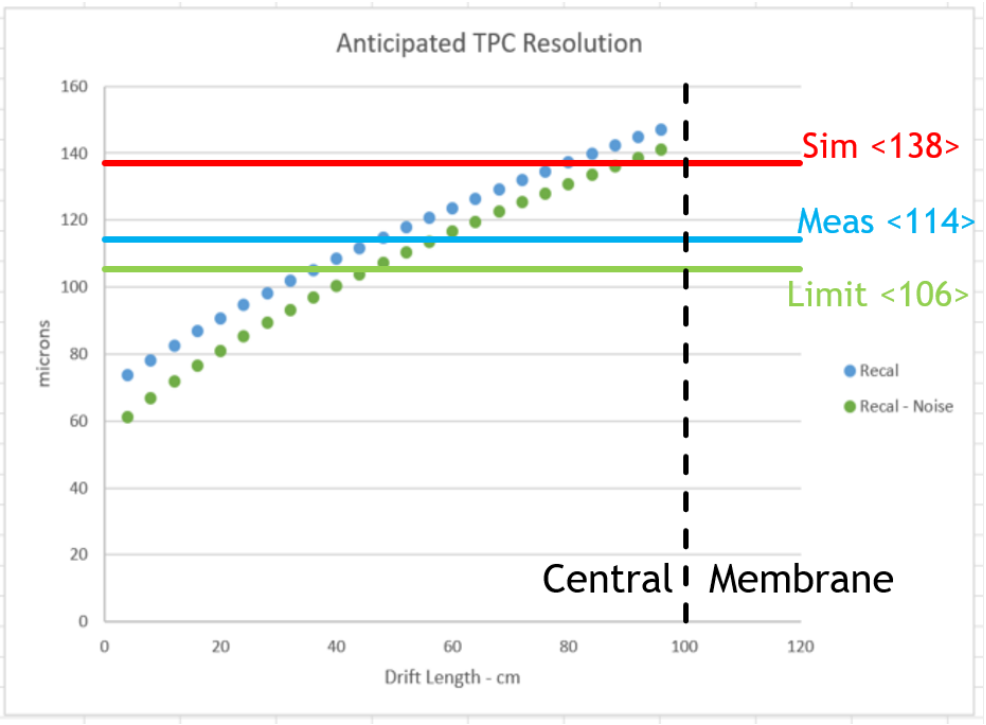



**Figure 2.19:** Resolution results for the TPC. Blue dot are the full measurement. Green dots are the limit if electronic noise were removed.

The ALICE TPC at the LHC is to read out continuously at 50 kHz in Pb+Pb collisions, a reasonable match to requirements at RHIC. Figure 2.20 shows the block diagram of signal processing based on the ALICE TPC upgrade electronics.

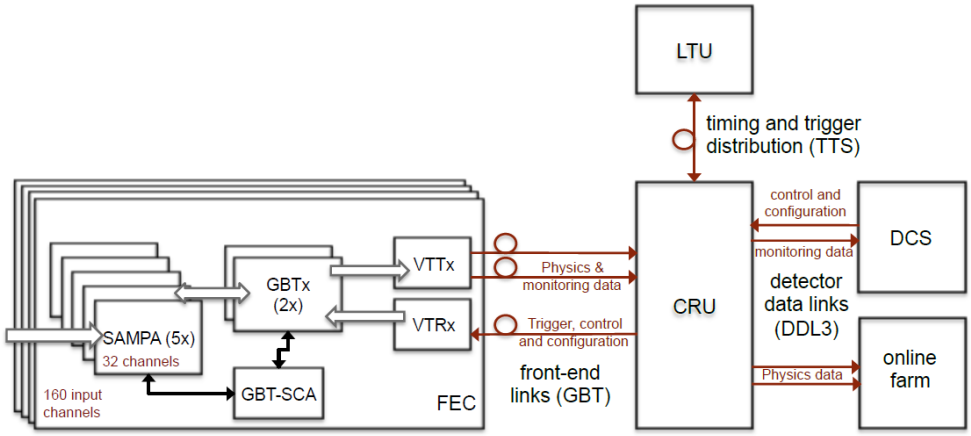



**Figure 2.20:** Block diagram of signal processing for ALICE TPC upgrade

Starting from the end of the signal processing chain, the Data Control System (DCS) and online farm is the computer system where the data are stored and processed for analysis.

The LTU provides the timing and trigger signal to the Common Readout Unit (CRU), which is the post-processing system where some online calibrations and event reconstruction are performed. The Front End Card (FEC) consists of SAMPA chips which amplify and shape the analog signals and digitize them. The DSP (data processing unit) is also on the chip. This formats the digital data into a data packet (it also performs baseline suppression, i.e., zero-suppression of the raw data). The packet is then sent to GBTx followed by VTTx. They convert the data packet into optical signals. The block diagram of the SAMPA chips is shown in Figure 2.21. In the ALICE design, there will be 5 SAMPA chips multiplexed

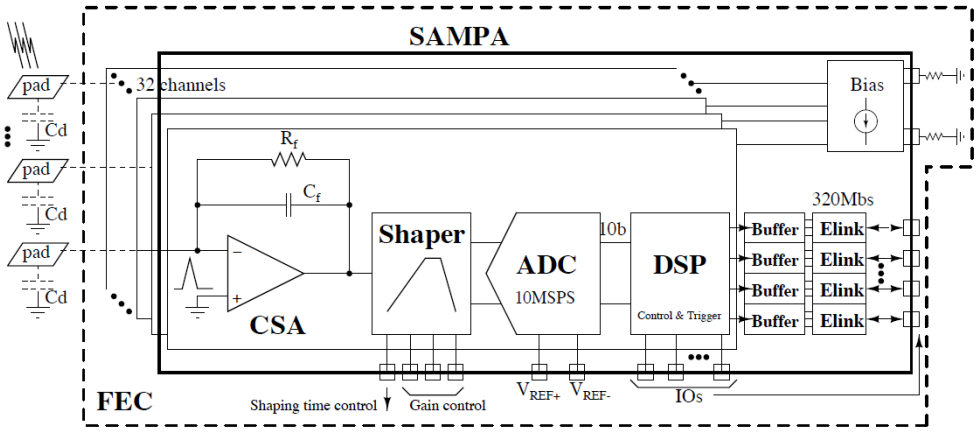



**Figure 2.21:** Block diagram of ALICE SAMPA chip

by 2GBTx ASICs. One SAMPA chip accepts 32 inputs, therefore one FEC can process 160 inputs. The ALICE TPC will have 121 FECs per readout segment module. The TPC will be equipped with 18 segments in each side, 36 segments in total.

By contrast, the sPHENIX system is summarized in Figure 2.22. The sPHENIX FEE cards will each carry 8 SAMPA chips and thereby readout 256 channels on each FEE. Going outward in radius, the sPHENIX modules carry 6, 8, and 12 FEE cards respectively. This results in 159,744 active channels for the entire TPC system. Each sector of 26 FEE cards is serviced by a single PCI-express-based FPGA card Data Aggregation Module (DAM), which is hosted on a server, Event Buffering and Data Compressor (EBDC). The DAM is responsible for event alignment and clustering. Furthermore, present calculations indicate that we can create false event boundaries from our continuous readout by copying ambiguous data into both triggered events. Then the result sub-event is compressed on EBDC and send to the sPHENIX event builder via Ethernet.

### 2.5.1 Front End Electronics (FEE) with new SAMPA chips (ver5)

The SAMPA chip has reached a mature stage as evidenced by the waveform from the MPW2 test run as shown in Fig. 2.23. This waveform was obtained directly from the silicon in the ORNL laboratory of Chuck Britton. One should note that the SAMPA chip's

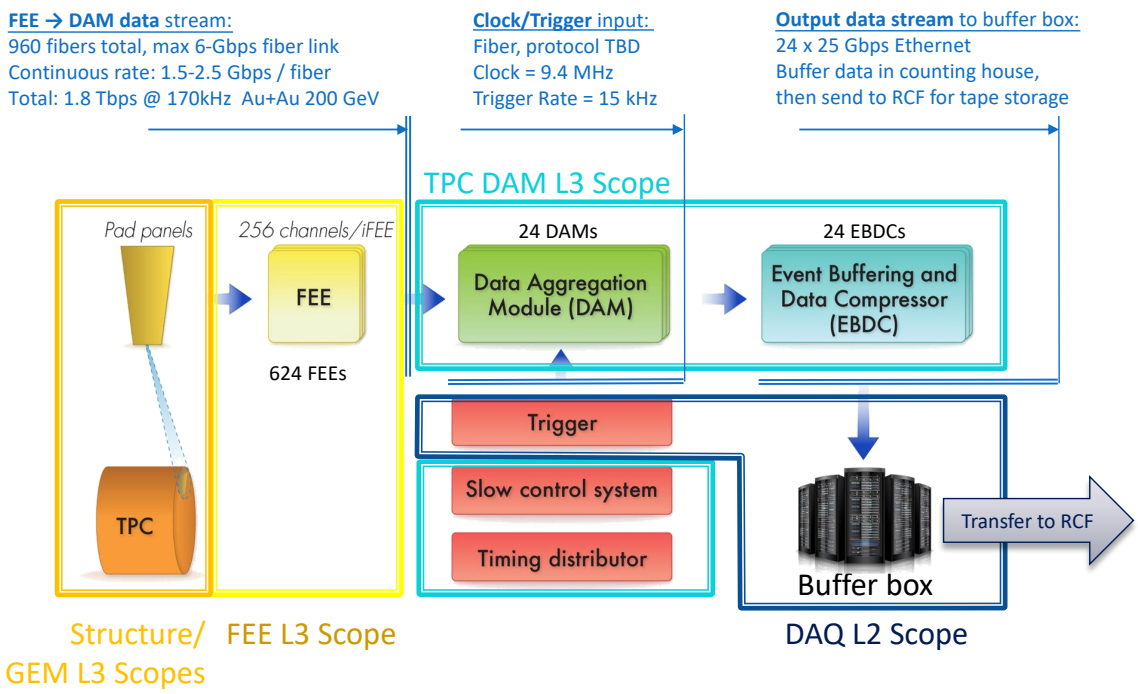



**Figure 2.22:** An overview of the TPC electronics chain. FEE cards housing SAMPA chips are located on board of the detector. Zero suppressed, untriggered data flows to Data Aggregation Modules (DAMs) hosted on Event Buffering and Data Compressors (EBDCs) located in the counting house. From there, the TPC data joins the main stream flow of the sPHENIX DAQ.

rise time is on the slow side for sPHENIX. Our drive towards low diffusion to meet the resolution spec has necessitated the use of a "cold" gas (namely $Ne - CF_4$) which has also increased the drift velocity. In principle, one should match the charge collection time to the time constant of the charge sensitive amplifier and pulse shaping amplifier. With low diffusion and high drift velocity, there is a mis-match with the electronics time constant being longer than we would prefer. This increases the occupancy, but not to the point that the tracking efficiency is expected to suffer. Therefore, we asked U. Sao Paulo, which is the leading institution of the SAMPA chip development, to produce a new version of the SAMPA chip, namely, SAMPA ver 5.

There are four versions of SAMPA chips by the time of Mar 2018. The latest version, ver4, is the one that has settled most of the bugs found by then, has shorter decay time constant in the charge sensitive amplifier ($\sim 5\mu$sec), and is more rad-hard. This version was employed for ALICE TPC electronics. We asked to change the shaping time options from 320 and 160 nsec of ver4 to 160 and 80 nsec in the ver5, in which case we just change the time constant for the 320 nsec circuit. The U. Sao Paulo group has found the issue on the peak hold circuit in ver4, and implemented its improved circuit in the ver5.

In Dec 2017, we received several SAMPA chips (ver2) for testing from STAR group. We developed a utility test board that serves a list of important functions:

**Table 2.4:** Raw data rate estimate for sPHENIX TPC and ALICE TPC cases

| Parameters | sPHENIX (Au+Au 200 GeV) | ALICE (Pb+Pb 5.5 TeV) | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|
| dN/dy (Minbias) | 180 | 500 | |
| $\eta$ coverage of TPC | 2.2 ($\|\eta\|$ <1.1) | 1.8 ($\|\eta\|$ <0.9) | |
| # of tracks in TPC | 396 | 900 | |
| Effective # of tracks in TPC (accounted for $r$-dep. $\eta$ coverage change) | 560 | 1690 | note 1 |
| Effective factor for track # increase for accounting albedo background | 2 | 2 | note 2 |
| # of measurements in $r$ | 40 | 159 | |
| # of samples in $\phi$ | 3 | 2 | $\phi\times$time$\sim$20 bins for |
| # of samples in timing | 5 | 10 | ALICE (from TDR) |
| # of bits of each sample | 10 | 10 | |
| Data volume increase factor by SAMPA header | 1.4 | 1.4 | Absolute maximum |
| Data volume/event (bits) | $9.41\times10^6$ | $1.50\times10^8$ | note 3 |
| Data volume/event (bytes) | $1.18\times10^6$ | $1.88\times10^7$ | |
| Collision rate [kHz] | 100 | 50 | |
| Total data rate (bits/sec) | $9.41\times10^{11}$ | $7.52\times10^{12}$ | |
| Total data rate (bytes/sec) | $1.18\times10^{11}$ | $9.41\times10^{11}$ | |

note 1: ALICE didn't estimate from first principle. We estimated for them.
note 2: We doubled the number of tracks to account for the background, based on STAR's experience.
note 3: Product of the previous seven rows. ALICE estimated the data volume as 160 Mbits/evt.

- The board opens multiple diagnostic channels to allow a complete evaluation of the SAMPA chip.

- The board interfaces directly to existing GEM modules at BNL and Stony Brook so that physics signals ($^{55}$Fe, generated soft X-rays, cosmic rays) can be used to excite the GEMstack and read out through a SAMPA-based chain.

The experience of the test board put us in an excellent position to develop the 8-SAMPA version of the board that will be compatible with modules on the main TPC. Some performance plots are shown in the Fig. 2.25. The noise level was found to be 570 electrons with an input capacitance (mimicking detector capacitance) of 18 pF at 30 mV/fC gain at 160 nsec shaping time.

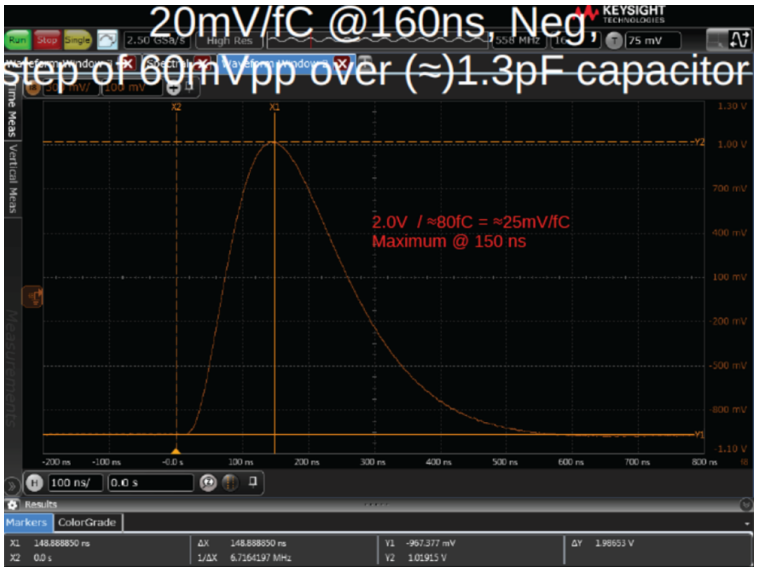



**Figure 2.23:** Wafer measurements at ORNL for ALICE capture the waveform coming from the SAMPA shaper in response to a delta-function excitation. The indicated peaking time of 150 nsec, while on the slow side for sPHENIX needs, is nonetheless OK for meeting our performance specifications.

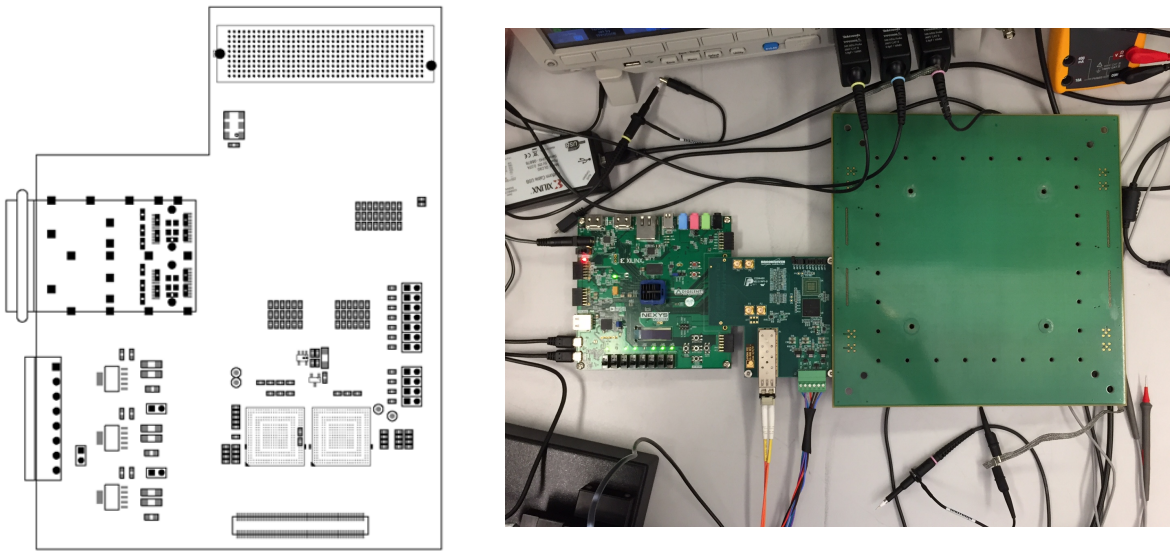


**Figure 2.24:** (Left) The first sPHENIX SAMPA prototype board is designed to house 2 SAMPA chips (similar to the iTPC for STAR) and a variety of diagnostic access points. (Right) Actual board with signal input and Xilinx Artix-7 evaluation board that mimic all the functionality expected for the FEE card.

Fig. 2.26 shows the block diagram of the full-scale FEE card. One FEE has 8 SAMPA chips (32 ch input each) and therefore can accept 256 channel input signals. The signal is processed, digitized and serialized by the SAMPA chip, and passed to FPGA through

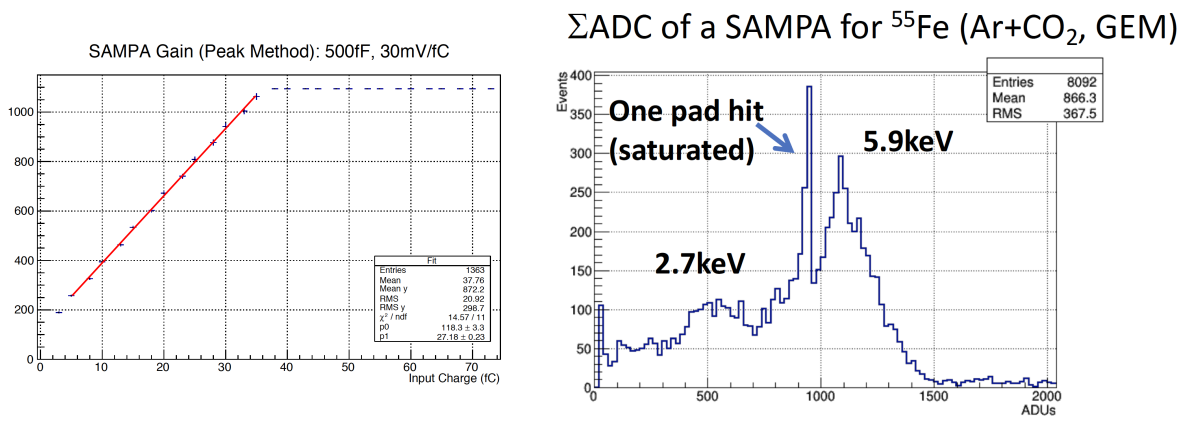



**Figure 2.25:** (Left) Input charge vs output ADC values for SAMPA ver2 chip at the gain of 30 mV/fC and 160 nsec shaping time. (Right) At the same configuration, the X-ray from $^{5}$5Fe source was injected to a chamber with GEM readout system filled with a $CO_2$gas.

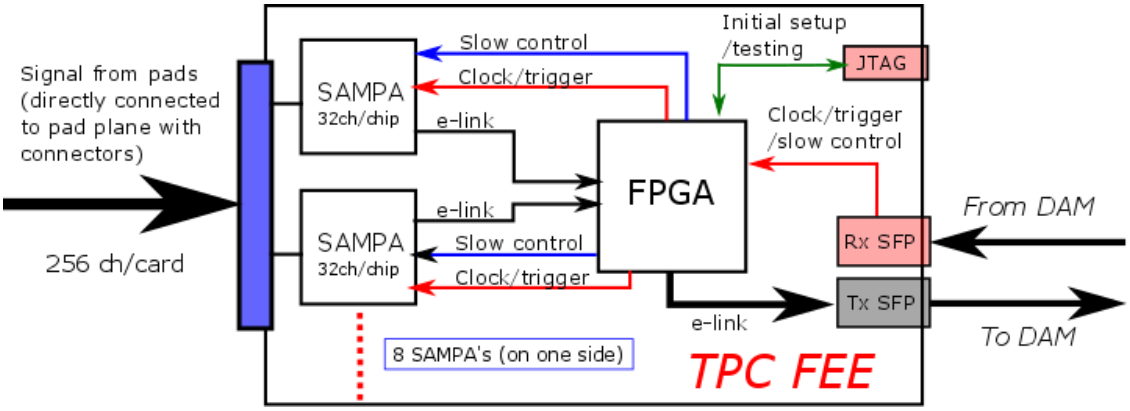



**Figure 2.26:** Block diagram of the full-scale FEE card to be used for the TPC in the sPHENIX experiment.

88 elinks connections (11 elinks per chip, 88 elinks from 8 chips) at the transfer speed of 320 Mbps. The FPGA will then pack the data and ship to DAM through an optical transceiver. The FPGA receives beam clock, heartbeat trigger, and slow control data from DAM also through the optical transceiver. The transmission rate of the transceiver is 6.25 Gbps. The plans is to use Xilinx Artix-7 XC7A100T or XC7A200T as FPGA, and to mount two transceivers for around half of the boards. The powers to be supplied are 4V, 2V (digital), and 2V(analog), and the maximum power consumption will be ∼20 W per board (current measured maximum is ∼15 W).

The left side of the Fig 2.27 shows the first prototype of the full-scale FEE (we call prototype v1) that accommodates 8 SAMPA chips, one Xilinx Artix-7 FPGA and one optical transceiver. After fabricating the board, we found several minor issues related to the level translators as well as input protection diodes polarity. With these issues sorted out, we have fabricated a revised version of the full-scale FEE prototype as shown in the right side

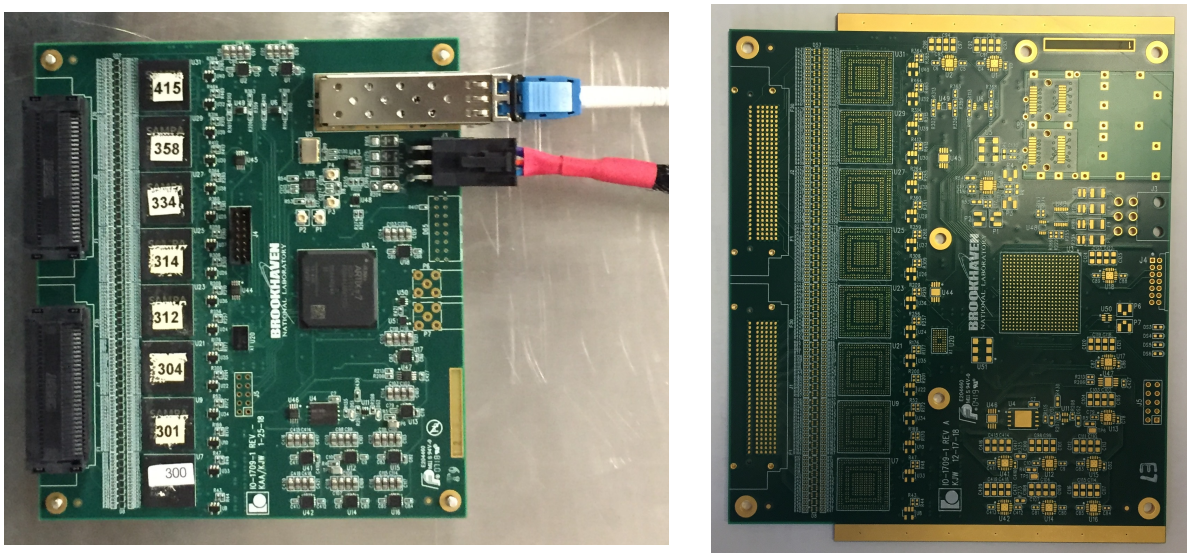



**Figure 2.27:** (Left) The first full-scale FEE prototype board. (Right) Next version (v1b) of the FEE board. We anticipate the pre-production version after v1b board, which has minor modification to v1b that includes additional optical transceiver and GND plane at the edge and fixing issues found by now.

of Fig 2.27. The new version has two optical modules for higher data volume transmission which would be needed for most inner and middle section of a sector (sector = 1/12 of full azimuth), and also has a GND plane at the edge of the board for workaround of grounding between the FEE, wagonwheel and/or padplane. The parts are being mounted and will be tested on small scale GEM readout of TPC in lab and on beam in June 2018.

The next version of the FEE (pre-production prototype) will have three minor changes; possible FPGA replacement from the current Xilinx Artix-7 XC7A 100T to XC7A 200T, EEPROM replacement with the one used in ATLAS which is more radhard, and bandgap reference replacement with a radhard-proved LDO. If these changes are successfully implemented and proven to work, this version will become the production version.

### 2.5.2 Low voltage power supply scheme for FEE

As mentioned above, the FEE will consume ∼20 W at maximum. Breaking up to each voltage, this implies 1 A of 4 V, 4 A of 2 V (digital), and 4 A of 2 V (analog) at maximum. The latest measurement of the current at prototype v1 board was 0.5 A of 4 V, 2.4 A of 2 V (digital), and 2.4 A of 2 V (analog), therefore 12 W in total. Since the current is large and the power supply rack is ∼20 m far from the FEE at TPC, the low voltage power supply distribution scheme should be carefully designed. Fig. 2.28 shows the initial design of the low voltage power distribution scheme for the TPC FEE. The bulk power supply will be Vicor MegaPak 4 kW, in which ten 400 W DC-DC converters will be installed. We use 8 V modules that can supply up to 50 A, considering significant voltage drop between power

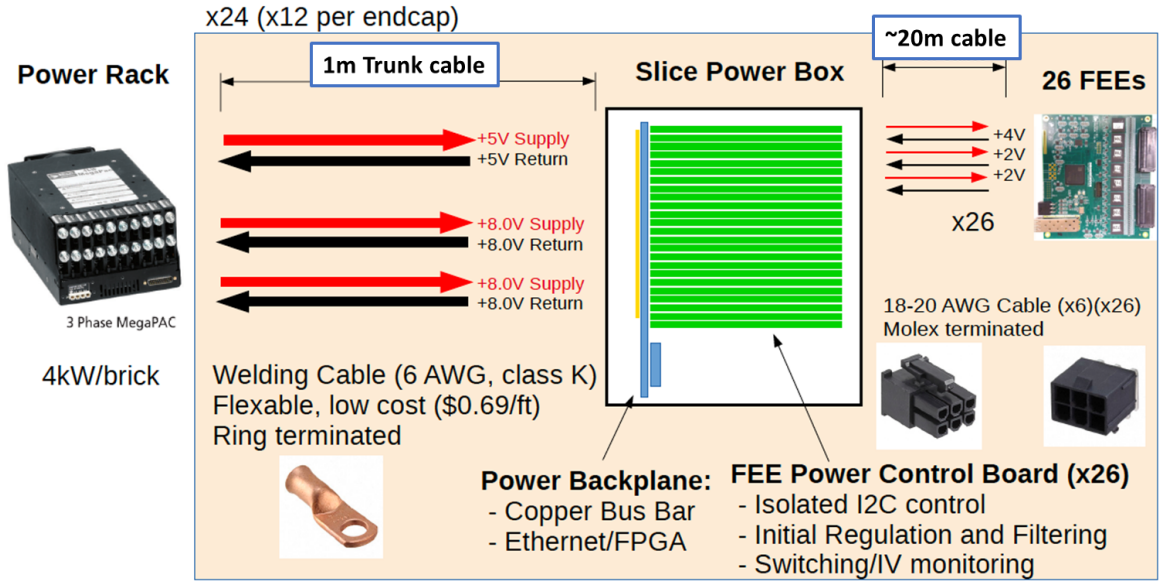



**Figure 2.28:** Low voltage power distribution scheme for TPC FEE.

distribution board and FEEs. This will result in using one 8 V module for 4 V and two 8 V modules for each 2 V lines. The distribution board will be designed so that one board takes care of 26 FEEs (corresponding to one sector) or 52 FEEs (two sectors). The decision will be made relatively soon considering the form factor of the distribution board.

### 2.5.3 Cooling scheme for for FEE

Each FEE will consume 20 W at maximum, meaning 6.2 kW from each endcap and 12.5 kW from both endcaps. This means that an efficient and organized cooling system is necessary to keep the temperature of FEE and the TPC. We decided to employ a heatpipe used for cooling CPUs in typical PCs as shown in the left side of the Fig 2.29. The heat pipe has a hollow where a liquid is filled. The liquid is vaporized at warm side and goes up to the cold side. The vapor is cooled at the cold side and goes down to warm side. This means the orientation of the cold and warm side matter for cooling efficiency. The cooling structure for an individual FEE is shown in the right side of the Fig. 2.29. An aluminum (copper) plate with the heat pipe soldered (blazed) is attached to FEE through a thermal conductive pad. The FEE with the cooling structure will then be installed into TPC through a card guide made with aluminum as shown in Fig.2.30. The left side of the Fig.2.30 shows the overview of the FEE card installation on TPC with the aluminum card guide installed in one middle sector. The right side shows the zoom-up view of the middle sector. The aluminum card guide will be attached to a cooling tube thermally and can transfer heats to the cooling liquid. This cooling scheme can avoid leaking of cooling liquid. With this structure the cooling efficiency will also be kept relatively well, except for horizontal orientation ($\phi$=0 and $\phi$=$\pi$). For this particular orientation, we may have to run a separate

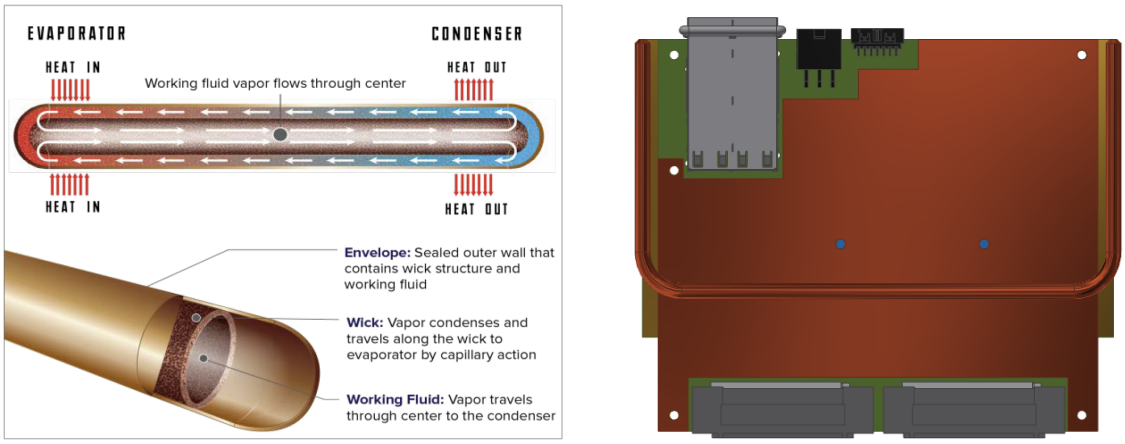



**Figure 2.29:** (Left) Heat pipe employed for cooling FEEs. The pipe is typically used for cooling CPUs in PCs. (Right) An aluminum (copper) plate with the heat pipe soldered (blazed) is attached to FEE through a thermal conductive pad. This is a cooling structure for an individual FEE.

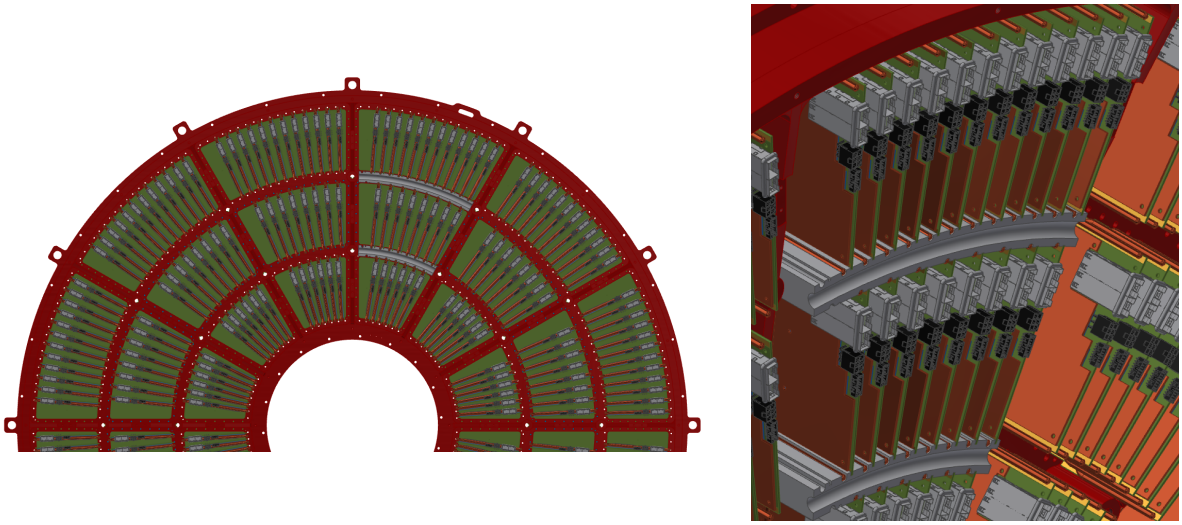


**Figure 2.30:** (Left) Overview of the FEE installed onto TPC. The gray pieces are cooling aluminum card guide. (Right) Zoom-up view of the FEE and cooling aluminum card guide.

cooling pipe. This is still under investigation.

### 2.5.4 Magnetic field hardness of FEE

The FEE will be directly attached to the TPC which is inside the solenoid magnet, and therefore will be operated under magnetic field. sPHENIX magnetic field is 1.5 T or

15 kGauss. The parts that will be affected by the magnetic field are inductor coils. For the case of FEE, the optical module will be the only one that may have coils. Unfortunately, we were not able to find 1.5 T magnet to test this. However, we found a magnet at BNL instrumentation division that can go up to 0.5 T. We placed the FEE at the three orthogonal directions in the magnet and check if the transmission capability of the optical transceiver changes. Fig. 2.31 shows the effect of magnetic field to the optical connection eye-diagram. The test was conducted with the power filter inductor on and off. At around 0.2 T, the

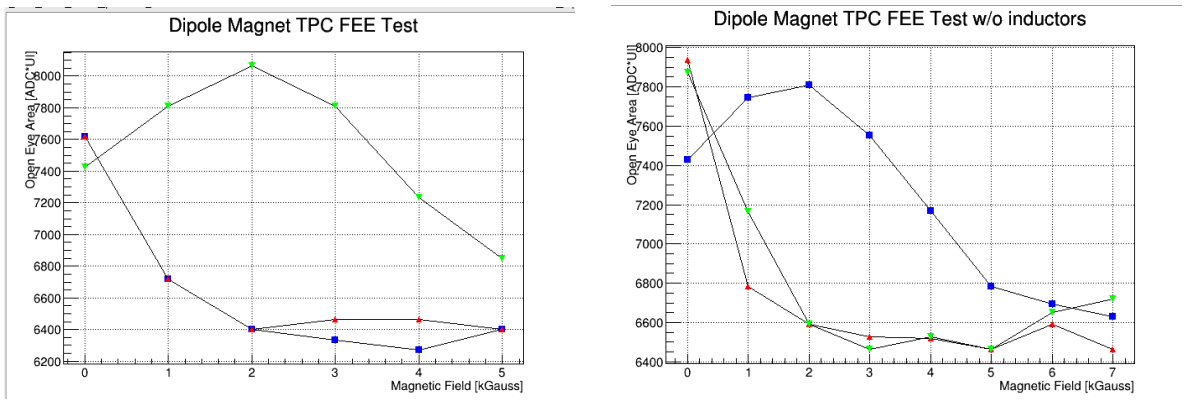



**Figure 2.31:** (Left) Eye-diagram of the optical transceiver connection with power filter inductor on the board as a function of magnetic field. (Right) The same plot with inductor taken off.

change was saturated for two orientations, and stable over to 0.5 T. One orientation has large variation, but again seems to cease above 0.4 T. In either case, the variation is ∼25 % level, and is acceptable from the point of view of optical communication.

### 2.5.5 Radiation hardness of FEE

Radiation tolerance for the TPC FEE is a key issue on validating its design, including selection of individual electronics parts, since the FEE will be installed very close to the beam pipe and the collision point. The FEE board will sit from in $|z|$=105-135 cm and $|R|$=20-40, 40-60 and 60-78 cm at each end of the TPC. The passive semi-conductor parts such like power regulators, and PLL will be sitting from R=20 cm. The SAMPA chips will also be sitting from that radiation position. On the other hand, the FPGA (Xilinx Artix-7) will be sitting in the middle of the FEE, meaning they are at 30, 50 and 70 cm. One last active component is the optical transceivers made by AVACO. The transceiver was tested working until 900 y (or 90 krad) at Belle-II [2]. The radiation tolerance for all the other passive components such like resistors and capacitors are expected to be very high, and don't need to be tested.

**TID and NIEL for FEE and TID radiation test by $Co^{60}$ $\gamma$ source**

PHENIX has conducted measurement of the total ionization dose in RHIC Year-6 (p+p)

and Year-14-17 runs (Au+Au, p+A and p+p). The left side of Figure 2.32 shows the neutron flux during the Year-14 Au+Au runs. The delivered luminosity by the CAD is 23 $\mathrm{nb}^{-1}$

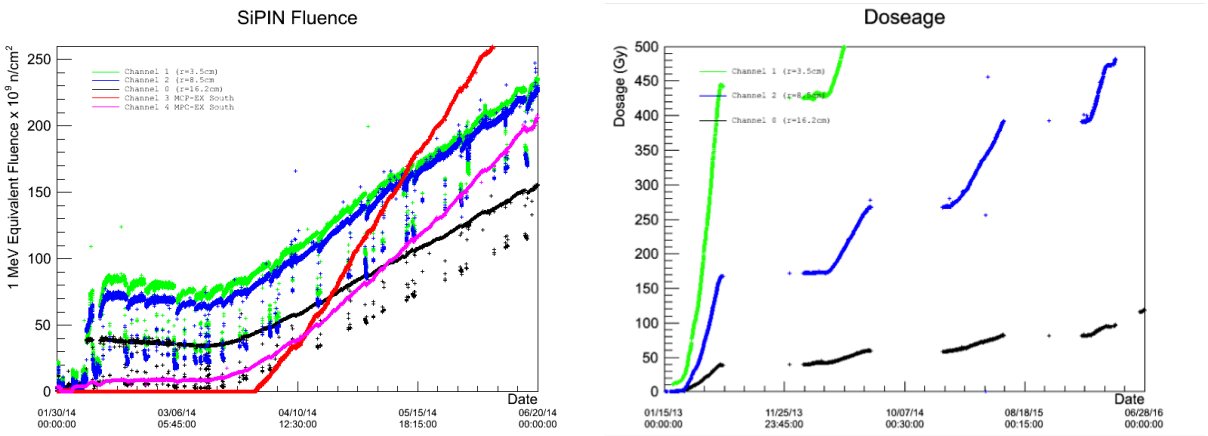



**Figure 2.32:** (Left) Neutron flux during Run-14 Au+Au runs. This run is 23 $\mathrm{nb}^{-1}$, which corresponds to 150 billion events. (Right) RadFET monitoring for Run-14 to Run-17 PHENIX runs. The resulting dose for Au+Au collisions is estimated as 60 krad at 3.5 cm and 5 krad at 16 cm for 20 weeks RHIC running (typically the 1-year running is 20 weeks).

for this run, corresponding to $1.59 \times 10^{11}$ MB events. The $1/r^2$ dependence is not seen in this neutron flux, but rather $1/r$ is seen. As a conservative estimate, we take the face value at r=16 cm, which is $1.2 \times 10^{11}$ 1 MeV-eq n/cm$^2$. Translating this to 231 $\mathrm{nb}^{-1}$ of the Au+Au events to be delivered during the sPHENIX running, the estimated NIEL is $1.2 \times 10^{12}$ 1 MeV-eq n/cm$^2$. This will be our baseline for the NIEL requirement. If we add a safe factor of 5, the NIEL tolerance requirement will be $6.0 \times 10^{12}$ 1 MeV-eq n/cm$^2$.

The TID for the Year-14-17 was measured by RadFET and plotted as a function time as shown in the right side of Figure 2.32. For this measurement, we see rather clear $1/r^2$ dependence of the dose. Nonetheless, for our estimate, we again take the face value at r=16 cm. This will result in 6 krad per year, and 25 krad for 5-years sPHENIX running. If we add a safety factor of 5, the radiation tolerance requirement of TID will be 125 krad.

Usually, the safety factor of 5-10 comes from the lack of actual measurement at the real environment. Our estimate, however, is based on the measurement at PHENIX. So, we would think a safety factor of 2 is already safe enough.

For the electronics, people usually don't test for NIEL, but do test for TID. We performed the TID test for semiconductor parts of FEE using $^{60}$Co $\gamma$ source available at the BNL instrumentation division. The source is 10 krad per hour. We irradiated $\gamma$ to the optical transceiver and a regulator in one test, and the whole board including both parts in another test. Table 2.5 shows the results from the irradiation tests. From this results, we can conclude most of the parts survive up to the 50 krad. There are two parts that didn't

**Table 2.5:** Semiconductor parts list of FEE and their TID test result using $^{60}$CO $\gamma$ source.

| Manufacturer | Part Number | Description | Test date | Result | retest? |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| TI | TPS7A8500RGRT | IC REG LINEAR POS ADJ 4A 20VQFN | 7/18/2018 | OK up to 100krad | |
| ON Semi | CAT102TDI-GT3 | IC VREF SHUNT ADJ TSOT23-5 | 12/10/2018 | dead at 50krad | x |
| ON Semi | NUP4114UPXV6T1G | TVS DIODE 5.5VWM 10VC SOT563 | ALICE use it | OK at least up to 10krad | x |
| TI | PCA9306DCUR | IC VOLT LEVEL TRANSLATOR US8 | 12/10/2018 | OK up to 50krad | |
| TI | SN74AVC16T245ZQLR | IC BUS TRANSCVR 16BIT 56BGA | 12/10/2018 | OK up to 50krad | |
| TI | SN74LVC2G04DCKR | IC DUAL INVERTER GATE SC-70-6 | 12/10/2018 | OK up to 50krad | |
| Linear | LTC2991CMS#PBF | IC MONITOR OCTAL 16-MSOP | N/A | | |
| Macronix | MX25L25735FZ2I-10G | IC FLASH 256MBIT 104MHZ 8WSON | 12/10/2018 | OK at 20krad, dead at 50krad | x |
| Abracon | ASDMB-50.000MHZ-LC-T | OSC MEMS 50.000MHZ CMOS SMD | 12/10/2018 | OK up to 50krad | |
| Maxim | DS620U+ | SENSOR TEMPERATURE I2C 8UMAX | N/A | | |
| Many | EG-2101CA | OSC XO TBD MHZ LVDS 6-SMD, NO LEAD | 12/10/2018 | OK up to 50krad | |
| Silicon Labs | SI5338B-B-GMR | IC CLK GEN I2C QUAD 24QFN | 12/10/2018 | OK up to 50krad | |
| AVAGO | AFBR-57D7APZ | 850nm optical Rx/Tx | 7/18/2018 | OK up to 100krad | |

pass 50 krad, which are bandgap references (CAT102TDI-GT3) and EEPROM. The bandgap references are used for creating references for analog reference voltages and ADC reference voltages. The analog reference voltages won't be needed for SAMPA ver3 and later, so we will remove them. For the ADC reference, we will use TPS7A8500RGRT alternately. For the EEPROM, we found one used for ATLAS passed 50 krad. We will use it instead. These modification will be made at the pre-production prototype.

**Estimate of the charged hadron rate using AMPT**

We estimate the charged hadrons at the position where TPC FEE (and FPGA) will be installed, using the AMPT event generator [3]. We have run the AMPT event generator to generate 20 K Minbias Au+Au collisions at 200 GeV. We found that the minbias collisions of AMPT simulation gives $dN_{ch}/dy$=175, which is $\sim$ 5 % lower than the measurement. However, in the real measurement, there is a trigger bias that pushes the value toward upward. Therefore, we think that the AMPT gives a reasonable description of the Au+Au events. We counted the number of particles entering radial positions from 20 to 80 cm at Z=106+5 cm, where the FPGAs will sit, and scaled to the collision rate of 100 KHz. Figure 2.33 shows the number of charged hadron rate at a given radial position in minimum bias Au+Au collisions at 100 kHz collision rate. It is explicitly written in the figure, that the rate will be 2.2 kHz at the FPGA in the most inner sector, 800 Hz in the middle sector. and 400 Hz in the outer sector, where actually the FPGAs of FEEs will be positioned.

From the ALICE experiment, we obtained their charged hadron rate of 3.7 kHz at r=41 cm averaged over -74 cm$< z <$74 cm (See appendix B for the detailed info). This number is for Pb+Pb 50 kHz at 5.5 TeV. Given the difference of the dN/d$\eta$ between two experiments, our numbers are quite reasonable.

**SEU rate of the FPGA from ATLAS study**

The TPC FEE employs Xilinx Artix-7 series FPGA. We are currently using XC7A75T, but in order to accommodate SEU mitigation algorithm, we will move to XC7A100T. There are several radiation tests performed by the ATLAS experiments, which are for Artix-7 and Kintex-7 FPGAs [4]. Table 2.6 shows the key parameters for both FPGAs from Xilinx data sheet. There are two types of RAM, which are CRAM and BRAM. The CRAM is so-called

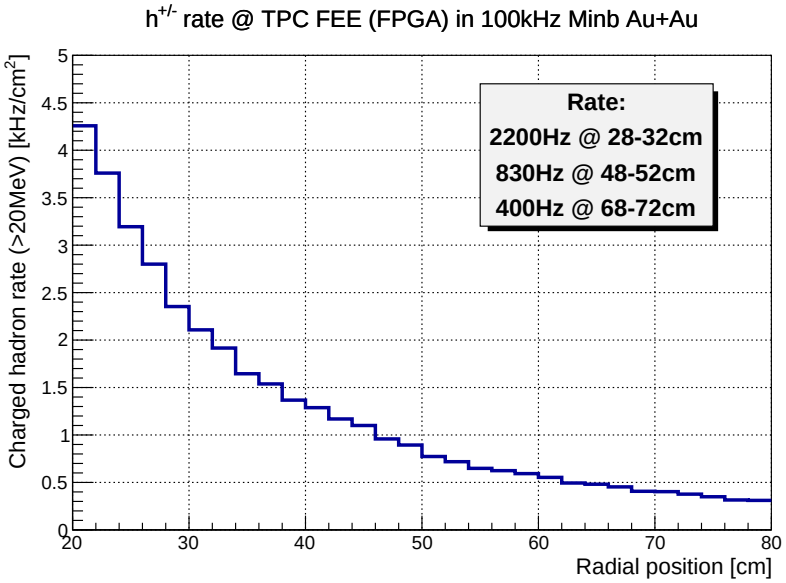



**Figure 2.33:** Charged hadron rate at the given radial position at Z=106+5 cm, where the FPGA on the FEE will be positioned.

configuration RAM, and is used to configure the logics of the FPGA. If it is flipped, it will affects the functions of the FPGA. The BRAM is so-called block RAM, and is same as memory of the PC. The data will be corrupted, but not essential for FPGA functions. To estimate the CRAM bit size, we take the total bitstream size (from the datasheets), subtract the BRAM size, and take 90 % of that number (∼10 % of the bitstream are commands, and not contents) as suggested by the Xilinx FAQ site. There is a measurement of the $\sigma_{SEU}$

**Table 2.6:** FPGA key parameters from Xilinx datasheets (ug470, ug116).

| Tech Node | Product | CRAM $\sigma_{SEU}$ (cm$^2$/bit) | CRAM bits | BRAM $\sigma_{SEU}$ (cm$^2$/bit) | BRAM bits |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 28 nm | Artix-7 7A100T | $7.0 \times 10^{-15}$ | $2.3 \times 10^{7}$ | $6.3 \times 10^{-15}$ | $4.8 \times 10^{6}$ |
| 28 nm | Artix-7 7A200T | $7.0 \times 10^{-15}$ | $5.8 \times 10^{7}$ | $6.3 \times 10^{-15}$ | $1.3 \times 10^{7}$ |
| 28 nm | Kintex-7 7K160 | $5.7 \times 10^{-15}$ | $3.8 \times 10^{7}$ | $5.6 \times 10^{-15}$ | $1.2 \times 10^{7}$ |
| 28 nm | Kintex-7 7K325 | $5.7 \times 10^{-15}$ | $6.8 \times 10^{7}$ | $5.6 \times 10^{-15}$ | $1.6 \times 10^{7}$ |

for Kintex-7 by the ATLAS measurement [4], which is found to be $7.1 \times 10^{-15}$ (cm$^2$/bit) both for CRAM and BRAM and is consistent with the one from the datasheet from Xilinx. Therefore, it is reasonable to assume that Artix-7 has ∼20 % worse upset rate, which is $8.5 \times 10^{-15}$ (cm$^2$/bit) for both CRAM and BRAM. The single event upset rate (R) for each device is obtained by the formula below:

$$R\ [upsets/s] = \sigma_{SEU}\ [cm^2/bit] \times (\#\ \text{CRAM or BRAM}\ bits\ [bit]) \times (particle\ flux\ \ [n/cm^2])$$

With these numbers, I list the upset rate for the sPHENIX TPC FEE case in the Table 2.7. From the table, in the hardest environment, the SEU for CRAM happens every 2780 sec,

**Table 2.7:** SEU of C(B)RAM of Artix-7 7A100T used for sPHENIX TPC FEE (error rate is $8.5 \times 10^{-15}$ [cm$^2$/bit]).

| R-position | # of FEE | flux [Hz/cm$^2$] | error/FPGA [$s^{-1}$] | error/sector [$s^{-1}$] |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 28-32cm | 120 | 2200 | $4.3 \times 10^{-4}$ | $5.2 \times 10^{-2}$ |
| 48-52cm | 192 | 800 | $1.6 \times 10^{-4}$ | $3.0 \times 10^{-2}$ |
| 68-72cm | 288 | 400 | $7.8 \times 10^{-3}$ | $2.3 \times 10^{-2}$ |

or 45 min per FEE. Assuming the linear increase of the total upset rate by the number of devices, there will be upset every 19 seconds in one of the FEEs in the most inner sector, every 33 seconds in one of the FEEs in the middle sector, and every 43 seconds in one of the FEEs in the outer sector, in average. And as a whole TPC FEE (600 FEEs), the upset may occur every 9.5 seconds in one of the FEEs, for 100 kHz minbias Au+Au collisions. Note that there is no any mitigation algorithm implemented here. Note that the 90.9 % of the SEU can be repaired by internal FrameECC, and the another 7.5 % and plus can be repaired by CRAM scrubbing architecture. Therefore, the real serious error is ∼1.5 % of the total SEU. TMR (tripple modular redundancy) may add another reliability against SEU.

**Soft error rate from Artix-7 beam test by ATLAS**

The sophisticated algorithm will give better repair of the bit error, but at some situation, the error can be recoverable either automatic multi-boot (soft error) which would take <1 minutes, or power recycle (hard error). The frequency of the hard error is ∼100 times smaller than the one for soft error. Therefore, we discuss the soft error rate here. If the occurrence of the soft error is very high, the 1-minute recovery time may be relatively large dead time compared to actual up-running time. ATLAS did perform decent measurement of the soft error rate for Artix-7 7A200T. The result was 94 soft errors for $1.3 \times 10^{11}$ (n/cm$^2$) of 800 MeV neutron flux. This corresponds to the error rate of $7.2 \times 10^{-10}$ (cm$^2$/error) for each device. The scaled number for sPHENIX TPC FEE case in 100 KHz minbias Au+Au collisions is shown in Table 2.8. To summarize, **rhe error will occur every 2700 seconds**

**Table 2.8:** Soft error for sPHENIX TPC FEE case (using Artix-7 7A200T).

| R-position | # of FEE | flux [Hz/cm$^2$] | error/FEE [$s^{-1}$] | error/sector [$s^{-1}$] |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 28-32cm | 120 | 2200 | $1.6 \times 10^{-6}$ | $1.9 \times 10^{-4}$ |
| 48-52cm | 192 | 800 | $5.8 \times 10^{-7}$ | $1.1 \times 10^{-4}$ |
| 68-72cm | 288 | 400 | $2.9 \times 10^{-7}$ | $8.6 \times 10^{-5}$ |

**or 45 minutes in one of the whole TPC FEEs (600 FEEs), for 100 kHz minbias Au+Au collisions**, if we implement TMR etc. We are planning to implement them.

(a) PCIe40.

CRU/ PCIe40

FELIX

| FPGA Family Name | Xilinx Virtex 6 | Altera Stratix V GX | Xilinx Virtex 7 | Altera Arria 10 GX ** | Xilinx Virtex Ultrascale | Altera Stratix 10 | CRU Requirements # | Xlinux Kintex Ultrascale |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Status | | available | available | ES available from Q2'15 | available | end of 2017 | | Available |
| FPGA part number | XC6VLX240T | 5SGXEA7 | XC7VX690T | **10AX115** | XCVU190 | 10SG280 | | XCKU115 |
| Used in | C-RORC | AMC40 | MP7 | **PCIe40** | | | | FELIX v1.5 test boards |
| Logic Elements / Cells [M] | 0.241 | 0.622 | 0.693 | 1.15 | 1.9 | 2.8 | | 1.451 |
| FFs [M] | 0.3 | 0.939 | 0.866 | 1.7 | 2.14 | | | 1.3 |
| LUTs [M] | 0.15 | 0.235 | 0.433 | 0.425 | 1.07 | | | 0.66 |
| 18/20 Kb RAM Blocks | 832 | 2560 | 2940 | **2713** | 7560 | 11721 | **1920 / 2560** | 4320 |
| Total Block RAM (Mb) | 15 | 50 | 53 | **53** | 133 | 229 | **40 / 53** | 75.9 |
| ≥ 10 Gb/s Transeivers | 24 | 48 | 80 | **96** | 60 | 144 | **48** | (48 input + 48 output fiber links in FELIX) |
| PLLs | 12 | 28 | 20 | 32 | 60 | 48 | | 48 |
| PCIe x8, Gen3 | 2 (Gen2) | 4 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 6 | | 6 |

# TPC Detector is the majority user ( >70%) of CRU boards. CRU requirements is measured against TPC detector specific logic occupancy.
** Altough the maximum number of links of the Arria10 family is 96 links, the FPGA equiping the PCIe40 board has only 72 links

**Figure 2.34:** The DAM acts as a bridge from SAMPA data to the sPHENIX DAQ and simply applies digital horsepower to high speed digital input and output streams. As such, we can leverage developments of other experiments such as ALICE (left panel) and ATLAS (right panel). The final selection for the TPC DAM is the BNL 712-v2 DAQ interface card, which is also known as ATLAS FELIX v2.1 card.

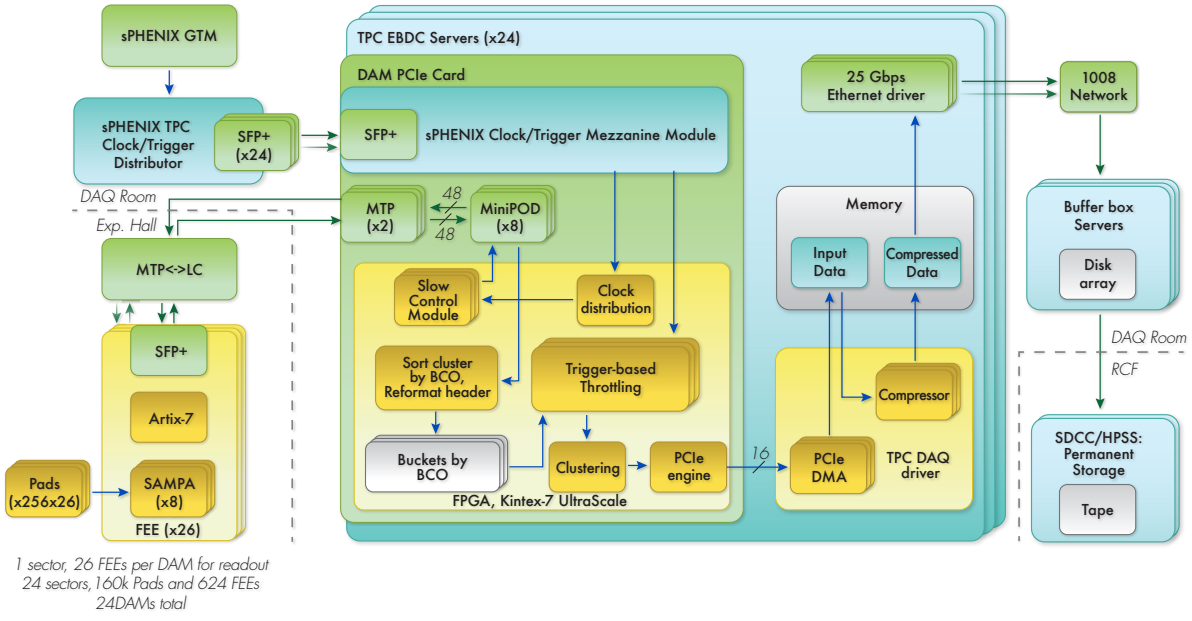



**Figure 2.35:** Block diagram for DAM and EBDC. Estimation of the DAM performance as realized using the FELIX board have been performed following this architecture assumption detailed in these diagrams.

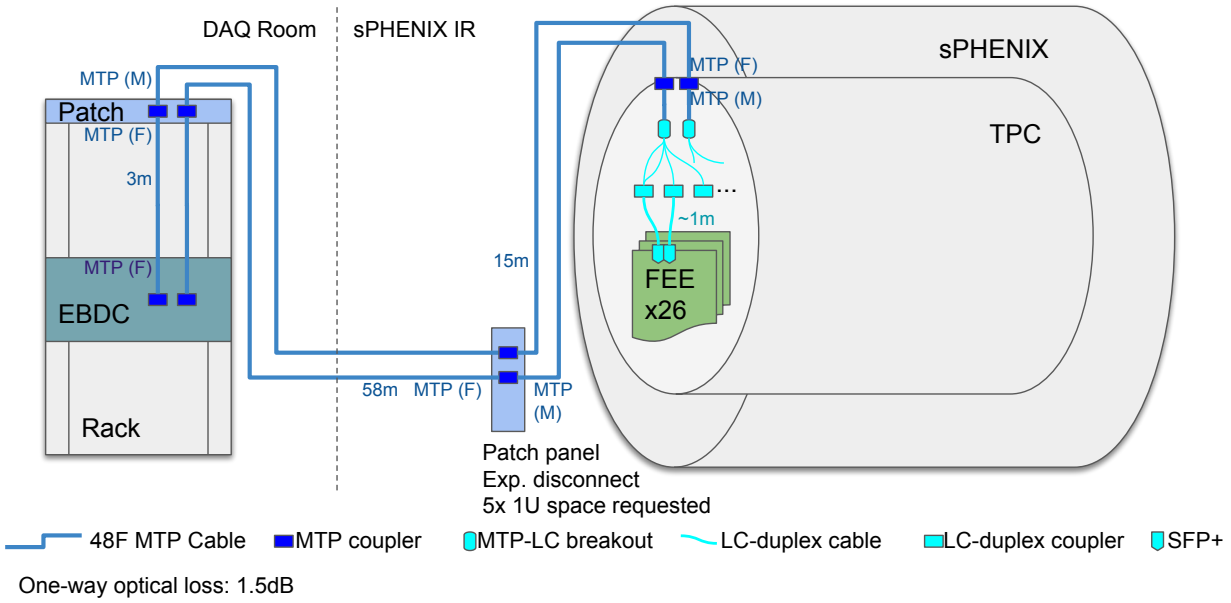



**Figure 2.36:** Signal cabling plan for each TPC sector. Two MTP trunk cable is used to connect a DAM to a sector, which further breakout to LC duplex connectors to FEE within the TPC end-cap.

### 2.5.6 Data Aggregation Module (DAM) and Event Buffering and Data Compressor (EBDC)

As the DAM is a digital-in and digital-out board with onboard programmable processing power, multiple already available options for implementation of the DAM exist. Figure 2.34 indicates a comparative study of the ALICE CRU module to the ATLAS FELIX module. Either of these devices fulfills the DAM throughput specification. While the CRU unit from ALICE can be paired with a SAMPA data stream, the FELIX board is being developed with the help of the BNL Instrumentation Division, and ATLAS group at BNL. FELIX board satisfies all the requirements, and local expertise will provide a stable platform for the DAM operations in the long term. Therefore, we determined the FELIX board as our optimal choice.

Figure 2.35 shows the current implementation for the DAM device using ATLAS FELIX v2.1 card, which is developed at BNL as the BNL 712-v2 DAQ interface card. A Xilinx Kintex Ultrascale XCKU115-2FLVF1924E FPGA is on board each DAM. To the FEE side, the FPGA is linked with four pairs of Mini Parallel Optical Device (MiniPOD) with Twelve channels in each component. Each of the 48 pairs of fiber link was tested to support up to 12.8 Gbps bi-directional data rate. The DAM FPGA is also linked with the EBDC server via 16-lane PCI Express Gen3 connections which are demonstrated to reach more than 100 Gbps. In the sPHENIX application, one of the 48 fiber links is redirected to an sPHENIX clock/trigger mezzanine module that provides an SFP+ connection with sPHENIX Global Timing Module (GTM).

Each TPC sector has an identical setup of 26 FEE, 1 DAM, and 1 EBDC. As shown in Figure 2.36, the SAMPA data is packaged on FEE and transmitted to DAM using 40 SFP+ data fiber links per sector, which is within the 48 bi-directional fiber link capability of the DAM. As detailed in Figure 2.35, the raw data is buffered in the DAM up to 20 $\mu$s. Then only the hits that fall within the drift time window for an sPHENIX trigger is output for further processing via a throttling algorithm in the DAM FPGA, which reduce the data rate by about a factor of four. A possible clustering step is envisioned on the DAM FPGA for further data reduction, although the following data rate estimation and initial sPHENIX operation does require this step. After transmitting the data to EBDC, lossless data compression is performed on CPU before sending it out to sPHENIX DAQ for storage.

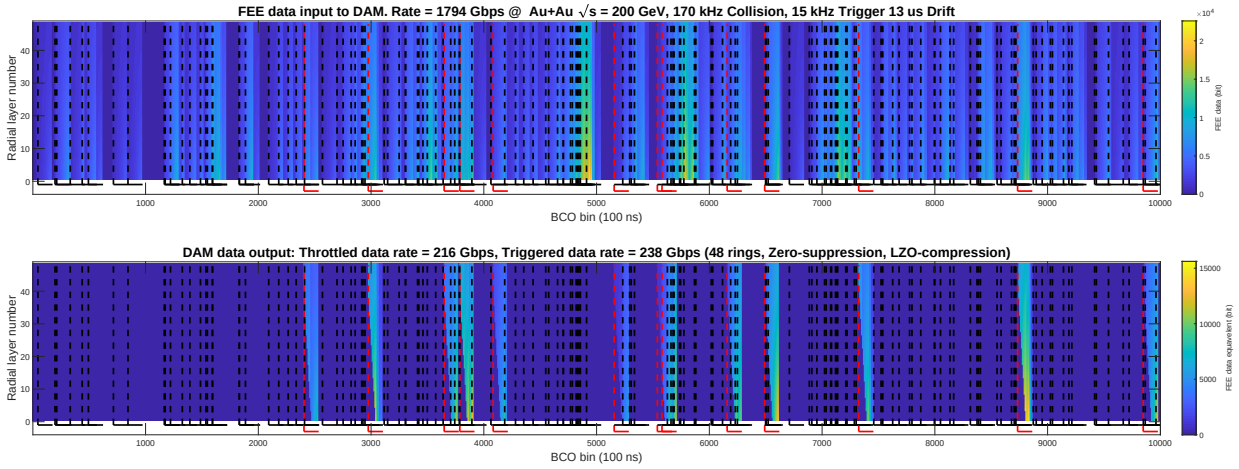



**Figure 2.37:** Example DAM data rate simulation under the configuration of 8 cm/$\mu$s drift and 170 kHz Au+Au collisions. Top panel is data transmission from FEE to DAM, and bottom panel for DAM data output. Both data streams are visualized as data bits (z-axis) histograms of TPC layers (y-axis) and Beam Collision Clock (BCO) time (x-axis). Black lines mark the the start and the extend of TPC hit stream from one Au+Au collision, and the red lines mark that of a triggered event, for which all TPC hits within $|\eta| < 1.1$ is recorded in the DAM event building stage. The result FEE to DAM average transmission rate is 1800 Gbps, and EBDC output average average transmission rate is 240 Gbps, both of which are simulated over much longer running time ($O(1\text{ s})$) than the time period being visualized in the figure.

Data rate within the DAM-EBDC system and at each processing stage is studied via a continuous-time Monte-Carlo simulation of the collision and data stream. Part of the data stream from one of these simulation sets is shown in Figure 2.37. The result rate calculation is summarized in Table 2.9. These data rates are further validated via a GEANT4 and FEE digitization simulation to be within 25% in relative accuracy. The FEE and DAM buffer usage is also simulated to show a very low probability for DAQ busy due to buffer full ($< 10^{-6}$).

At FY2019 Q2, two sets of DAM and EBDC test stands have been instrumented with ATLAS FELIX v2.1 cards. Data links with multiple prototype FEEs and prototype sPHENIX GTM have been demonstrated. Ten more FELIX v2.1 cards are in production following the

**Table 2.9:** TPC DAM and EBDC average data rate and event size in three running conditions based on the continouns-time TPC data stream simulation.

| Collision System | Au+Au (Year-1) | Au+Au (Year-5) | $p$+$p$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| Collision rate [kHz] | 100 | 170 | 12900 |
| Raw data rate [Gbps] | 1100 | 1800 | 1700 |
| After LVL-1 trigger [Gbps] | 290 | 400 | 260 |
| After lossless compression (Gbps) | 170 | 240 | 160 |
| Per-event size [MB/evt] | 1.4 | 2.0 | 1.3 |

sPHENIX advanced R&D plan with the aim of a large scale throughput test.

### 2.5.7 TPC readout plane

One consequence of pushing resolution through low diffusion regards the size of the cloud that hits the pad plane. The advantages of a charge-division pad plane are entirely lost if the charge from a single avalanche is confined to 1 single pad. This this reason, ”chevron” or ”zig-zag” pads have been developed as a means of ensuring charge division for even narrow avalanches.

Figure 2.38 indicates the chevron segmentation style applied to our pad planes. Charge sharing is driven by the fine part of the zig-zag pattern, while channel count is driven by the macroscopic pad-to-pad spacing.

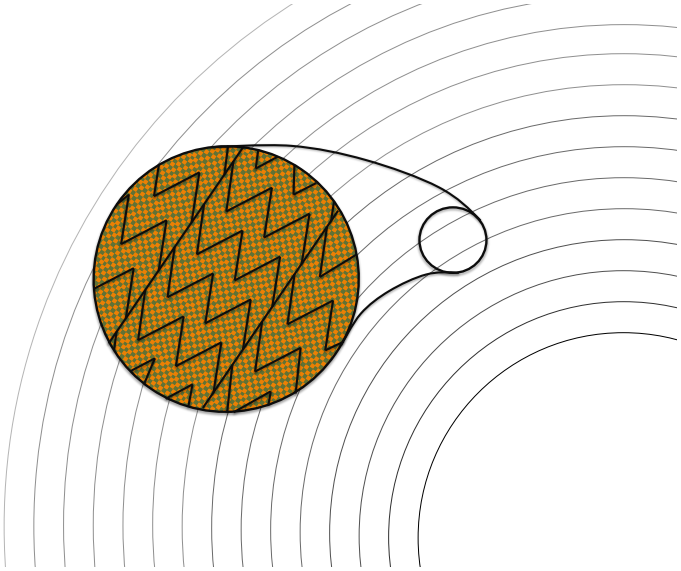


**Figure 2.38:** Schematic layout of the TPC pad rows and chevron pads.

The radial pad size is ∼1 cm. The transverse dimension of the pads varies with ∼1 mm spacing of rectangular pads in the R1 module and ∼2 mm spacing for the R2 and R3 modules.

The TPC amplification element is based on several layers of Gas Electron Multiplier (GEM) detectors. Traditional Muti-Wire Proportional Chamber (MWPC) technology is not considered because it a) cannot provide desired $r\phi$ resolution of 100 $\mu$m and b) the MWPC requires gating to stop ion back flow, and that significantly limits the data taking rate.

Four GEM layers are considered in the current scheme of the amplification element. Each GEM will provide gain in the range of typically a few thousand, suitable for the readout electronics considered for the TPC. The gain range is driven by two competing factors. Higher gains will improve the signal:noise and improve $\frac{dE}{dx}$ results, but will also increase the Ion Back Flow (IBF). ALICE intends to run at a gain of 2000 with SAMPA chip readout. ALICE results also demonstrate high stability of GEM operation in the environment of high energy heavy ion collisions.

The amplification element is shown in fig. 2.39.

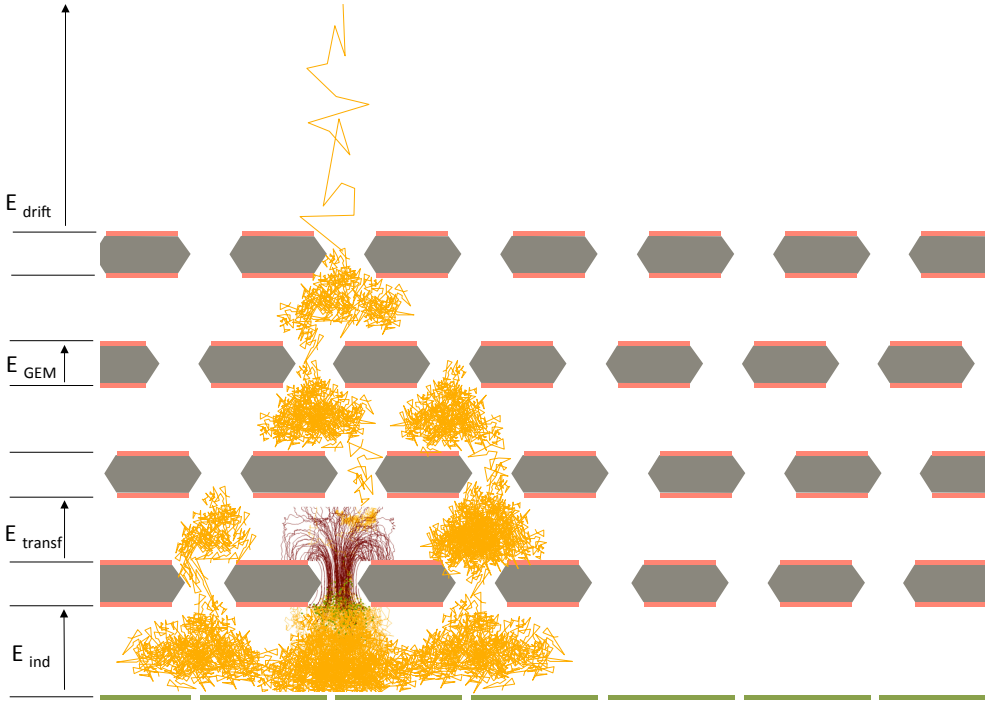



**Figure 2.39:** Schematic view not to scale of the readout element built with four layers of GEMs. Yellow lines show electron paths, brown lines show the ion paths for one single hole (simulation).

The development of the sPHENIX TPC is greatly aided by the multi-year effort put into development of detector technologies for the EIC. In particular, this program has allowed

studies of the complete suite of gas properties for all our candidate gases and many others that would be suitable for EIC, but not so much for RHIC.

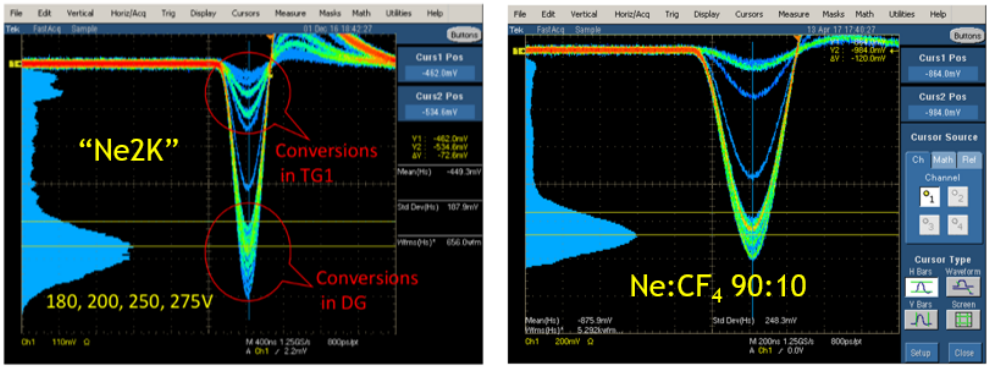



**Figure 2.40:** R&D results on our candidate gas mixtures (Ne:$CF_4$:$iC_4H_{10}$ demonstrate good energy resolution and excellent stability when operated with a quad-GEMstack.

Figure 2.40 shows the response of quad-GEM chambers to an X-ray source ($^{55}Fe$) in both the Ne2K and Ne:$CF_4$ gases current leading our choices. Experience in the lab showed excellent stability for both these gases over long running periods.

Furthermore, our R&D efforts have opened the door to BF measurements. Figure 2.41 shows an overlay of sPHENIX results on Ion Back Flow superimposed upon the iconic plot from ALICE, The agreement is excellent, opening the door to bench verification of some of the new ideas we have had for IBF suppression including the passive mesh concept. Currently we have **NOT** taken credit for this new effect in our simulations as a conservative measure to ensure that we do not over estimate the performance of our design.

One issue for all chevron pattern detectors is that of differential non-linearity. Typically the shape of the charge cloud folded together with the segmentation of the pad plane does not produce a linear response with position. Indeed, as shown explicitly in Figure 2.42 the correlation between true position and measured position shows a saw-tooth pattern whose spatial period matches the pad spacing. Although our R&D shows that the troublesome response can be removed from the data by simple and self-calibrating means, it is nonetheless quite desirable to design a pad plan that a priori would have little to no differential non-linearity.

Again under the guise of EIC R&D we have studied at a theoretical level the issue of non-linearity as a function of pad shape. Figure 2.43 shows the anticipated response of our new design. Unfortunately the line spacings used in simulation are not possible in industry at the present time and so a compromise was made to the best that can be manufactured today. This new pad board in in house and expected to produce DNL results very soon.

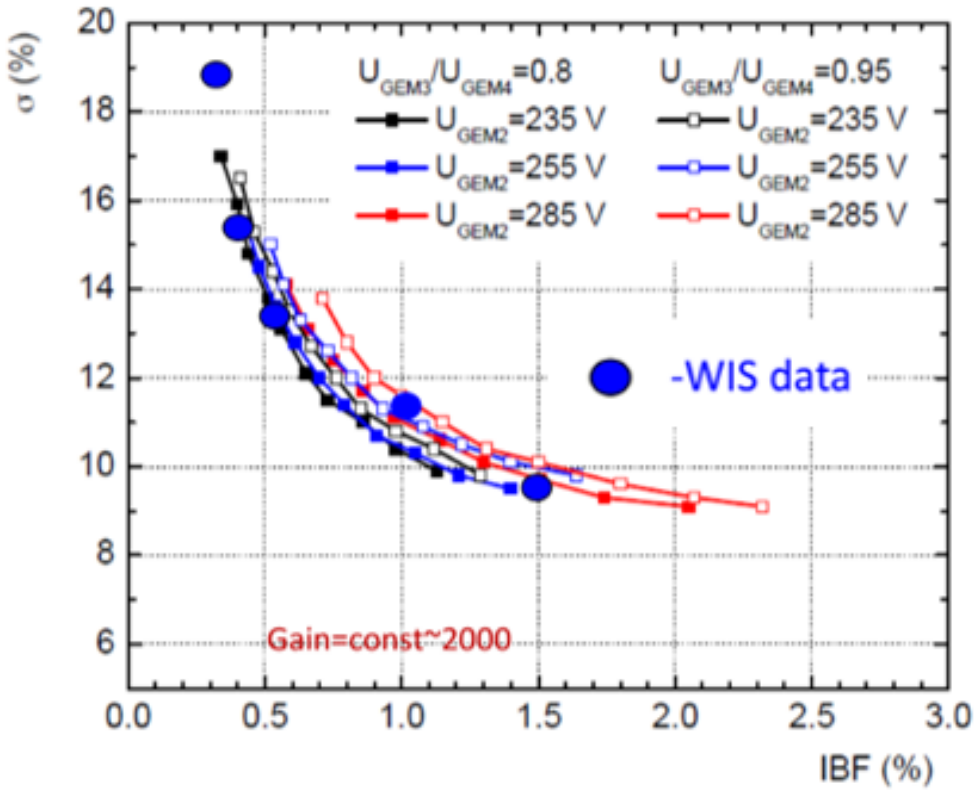



**Figure 2.41:** This figure shows results obtained on our labs (Weizmann Institute of Science) overlaid with the iconic ALICE results on IBF. These indicate that we are well positioned to experimentally investigate .

### 2.5.8 TPC field cage

The basic function of the TPC field cage is to provide a uniform drift field from the central membrane to the detector modules at each end. This field cage is traditionally defined by a series of conducting rings held at uniformly decreasing potential by a precision-matched chain of resistors. The field cage is then surrounded by a gas enclosure. Both for safety considerations and to avoid stray electric fields in neighboring detectors, the gas enclosure is usually grounded. Figure 2.44 shows the configuration found on the outer shell of the STAR TPC. Both the field cage and the gas enclosure are made structurally rigid using a hex cell honeycomb sandwich structure.

The field cage electrodes are made as a double-layer of staggered rings, one facing the operating gas and the other embedded in the field cage wall. The latter ring serves to shape the field and minimize nonuniformities in the drift volume. Dry nitrogen gas flows through the 5.7 cm gap, exceeding by slightly more than a factor of two the "rule of thumb" gap dielectric strength of $1\frac{kV}{mm}$ when operating at a central potential of 27 kV. Although in STAR the inner gas enclosure is skipped (exposing the field cage strips to outside air and stressing inner detectors with electric field) in the sPHENIX application we have more

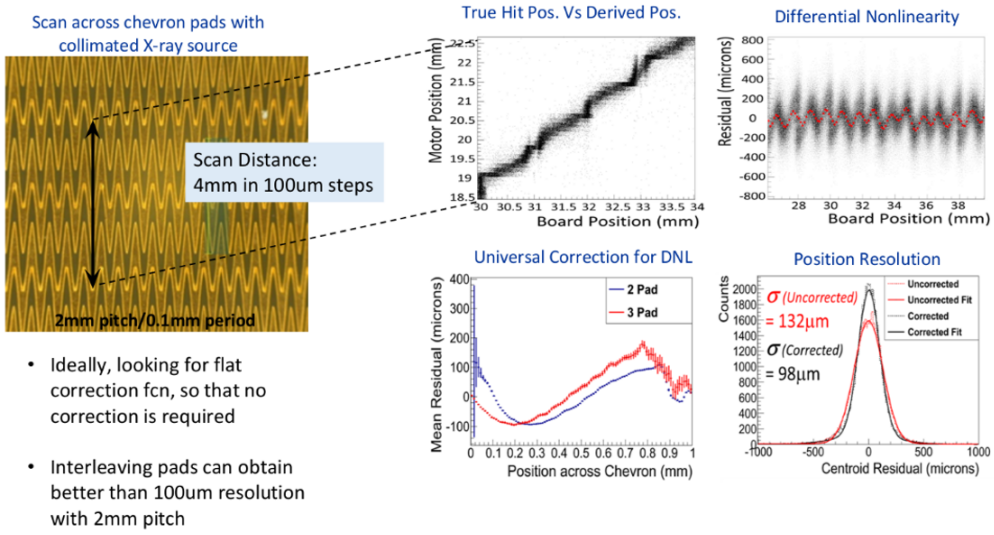



**Figure 2.42:** Extensive studies of various pad shapes have been performed to quantify and test reduction of differential non-linearity. These tests shows that after correction, resolution of the pad plane are easily achieved to better than 100 $\mu m$.

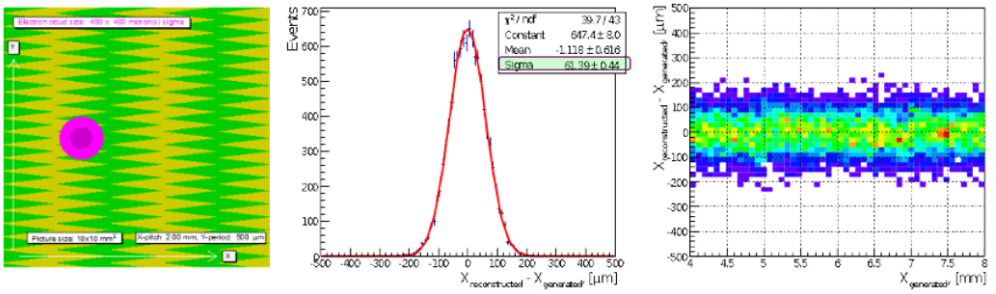



**Figure 2.43:** Theoretical studies of pad shape have been performed and indicate that significantly reduced non-linearity is achievable.

than enough room between the inner silicon pixels and the TPC active volume for an inner gas enclosure. Scaling to an identical safety factor as used by STAR, we would require a $5.7cm\frac{34kV}{27kV} = 7.2cm$ gap.

An "air" gap of this size would be undesirable for the outer TPC wall since it would limit the active volume and degrade the momentum resolution. Because the TPC is followed by the EMCAL, we can safely afford to solve the field issue using a solid of high dielectric strength. The concern over this solution is two-fold. First, the dielectric field strength of common materials is found to reduce with time in a variety of materials as shown in Figure 2.45. Much of this variation (*e.g.* FR4) is dominated by micro-gas bubbles within the material which can carbonize over time. Secondly, dependent upon material, solid material high voltage gaps can be subject to permanent failure during a discharge event or over-time corona current.

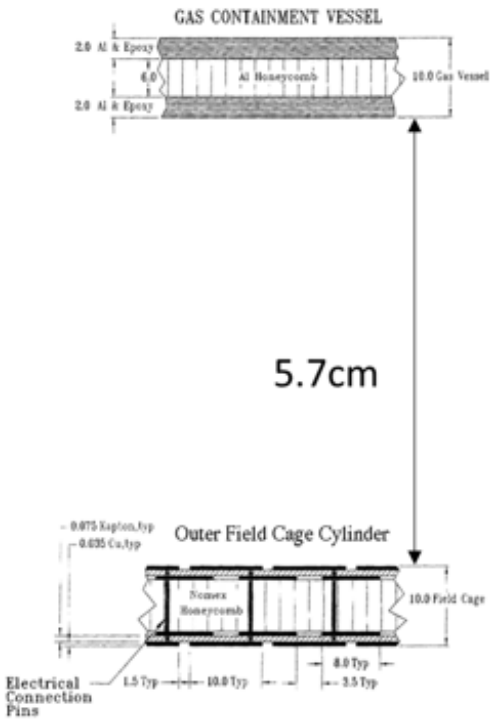



**Figure 2.44:** Scale drawing of the outer field cage and gas enclosure for the STAR TPC.

| Material Type | Max. Operating Temperature (°C) | T/G °C | Voltage (V/mil) Note 1 | Aged rating (V/mil) | W°C/m |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| FR4 | **105-130** | **160** | **800** | **300/150** | **0.21** |
| FR4 Hi-Temp. | **130-150** | **170** | **800** | **300/150** | **0.22** |
| BT Epoxy | **140-160** | **180** | **1300** | **600/400** | **0.40** |
| Polyimide | **150-190** | **200** | **900** | **700/500** | **0.25** |
| HVPF* | **180-200** | **210** | **3000 to 7000** | **3000/2000** | **0.28** |

***HVPF is a trademark of Sierra proto express.**

**Figure 2.45:** Dielectric strengths of various common circuit card materials, reproduced from figures by Sierra Proto Express, a Palo Alto-based circuitry company specializing in high voltage circuit card for both terrestrial and satellite applications.

sPHENIX is working with the Sierra Proto Express company to develop a robust solid core solution for the outer field cage that would maximize the reliability and longevity of the device. Although a multi-material, layered ultimate design is likely, the table below shows the required thicknesses for safety factors of 3X and 5X in the design assuming a single material type and neglecting contributions other than the insulator itself. Calculations here use the worst-case aging estimates from Sierra for each material type. These initial calculations seem promising, meaning that the ”air gap” solution is presently considered only as a fallback option. If the solid option realization has a sufficiently small radiation length, it can also be considered for the entrance window, thereby simplifying the design.

| Material | $\chi_0$ (cm) | Volt/mil | 3X Safety | 5X Safety |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| FR4 | 16.76 | 150 | 1.72 cm (10.3%$\chi_0$) | 2.88 cm(17.2%$\chi_0$) |
| Kapton | 28.58 | 500 | 0.52 cm (1.8%$\chi_0$) | 0.86 cm(3.0%$\chi_0$) |
| HVPF | 28.57 | 2000 | 0.13 cm (0.45%$\chi_0$) | 0.22 cm(0.75%$\chi_0$) |

After a complete suite of successful tests of the HVPF product we were disappointed to learn that Sierra could not expend their production process to pieces larger than 8″ x 8″ tiles. Fearing the worst for the many seams between these tiles we instead turned in the direction of lamination-in-place of multi-layer Kapton of the same base stock as is used for HVPF. Lab tests indicate that our design has a very large safety margin. We have designed a lamination tensioner system that will provide Kapton to the TPC shall at uniform tension to avoid trapper air pockets in the laminate.

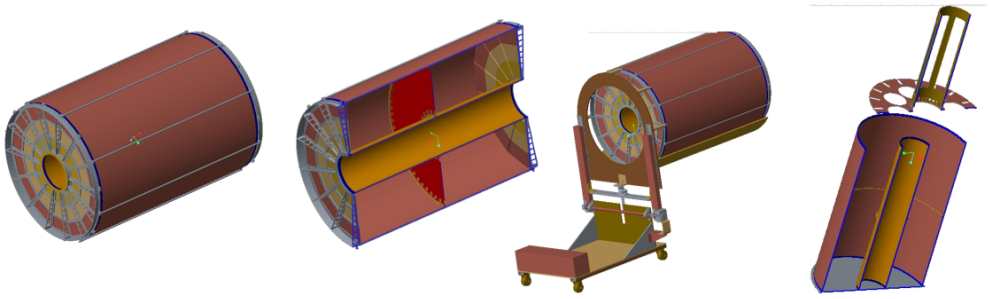


**Figure 2.46:** Mechanical modeling of the TPC is in an advanced stage including the device itself and also transportation/handling fixtures and assembly fixtures.

Mechanical designs for the TPC have reached an advanced stage. This advancement has been partly driven by our wise choice to prototype the TPC field cage at full size. Our budget allows for two complete field cage construction projects (prototypes v1 & v2), however, if the v1 device proves suitable for our needs the cost savings can be recovered. Figure 2.46 shows the advanced model concepts for the overall TPC including handling cart and central membrane installation tooling.

Figure 2.47 shows the plan for installation of the TPC into sPHENIX. Each wagon wheel has fittings for a rolling brace that will allow the TPC to roll in supported by a long cylindrical tube. The two ends of the tube will be held up by both the handling cart (delivery vehicle for the TPC and a second similar cart at the far end.The Handling cart falls within the scope and budget of the TPC, whereas the second cart is costed in the installation work package.

A conceptual holding fixture is also modeled for the TPC. We choose to hang the TPC from the HCal since the EMCAL walls are thinner material to reduce radiation length. Each side of the TPC accepts a ”1.4 top-hat” shape. Two top-hats (east and west) are used to hang the TPC form the HCAL and thereby in the sPHENIX aperture.

Because our momentum resolution depends critically upon the lever arm of the TPC tracking we wish to track as close to the TPC field cage as possible. One realizes immediately,

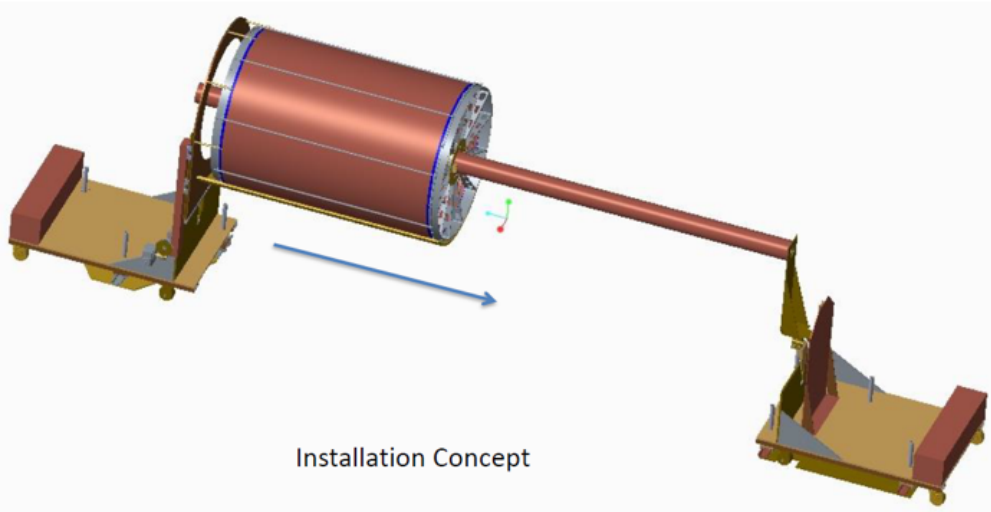



**Figure 2.47:** Installation of the TPC will include use of the handling cart and a second cart. The device will roll on temporary fixtures into place inside the already-assembled EMCAL.

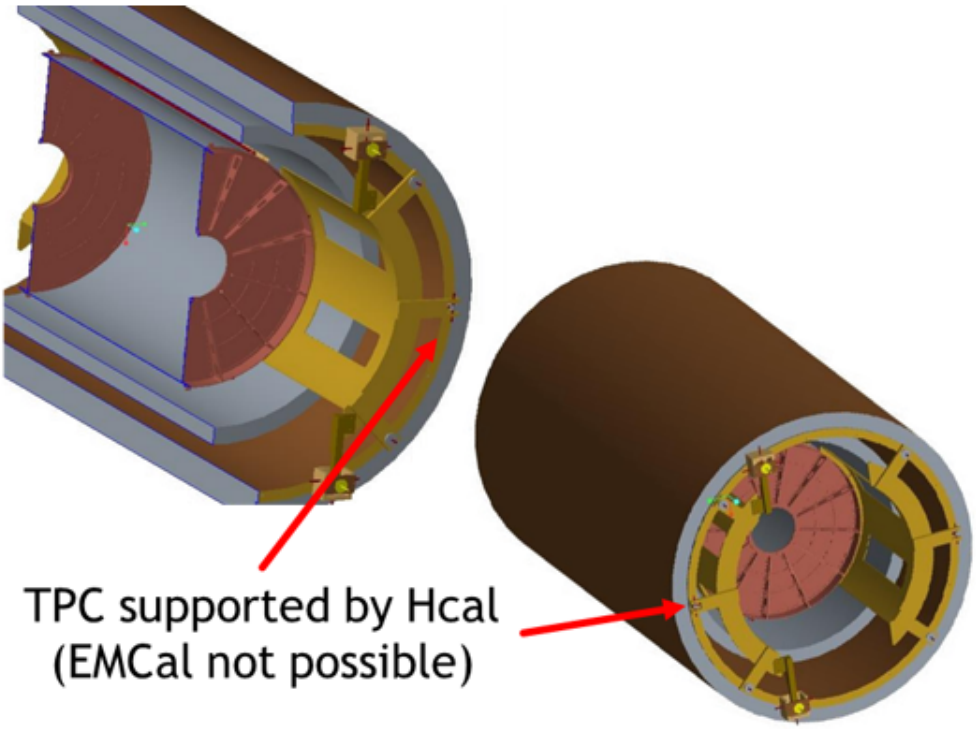



**Figure 2.48:** Because the EMCAL external structure does not provide sound support points for the TPC, we envision supporting the device from the inner HCAL.

however, that a step-function approximation to a uniformly decreasing potential creates non-uniformities in the electric field. These non-uniformities have a pitch that matches the segmentation of the electrode rings (colloquially called ”stripes”) and also a radial extent

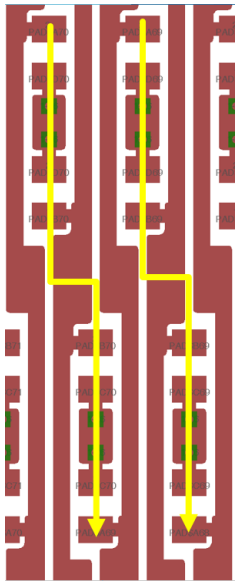


**Figure 2.49:** To improve field uniformity and bring the useful gas region as close as possible to the field cage, we have chosen a very fine field cage pitch (2.8 mm). This pitch is realized using SMD resistors of the HVPW (High Voltage Pulse Withstanding) variety. Current flow follows the yellow arrows.

that varies linearly with the pitch. It is therefore important to minimize the pitch of the striped electrodes.

Figure 2.49 shows the pattern we have chosen. Here a pitch of 2.8 mm is chosen and the resistive divider chains are made from surface mount components. Although physically small resistor packages are traditionally considered a failure risk, the resistors we have chosen are of a new type known as HVPW or High Voltage pulse Withstanding resistors. Each of the 1500 resistors in our multiple chains is rated to survive a 15 kV surge.

#### 2.5.8.1 TPC Mechanical Tolerances

We have undertaken and completed an exhaustive simulation program to allow us to accurately specify the mechanical tolerances for the TPC field cage. For each variant of ”mis-construction” (see Figure 2.50, we have used Ansys to create a full field map. Two such variants include modules that are out of plane from their desired alignment and having the central membrane out-of-plane.

Once the electric field distortions are known, we use GARFIELD with the distorted electric field map and an ideal magnetic field map to measure the average position error from the pad plane by allowing the electric field distortions to go uncorrected. The net result of this lengthy procedure is that we are able to derive a complete suite of mechanical tolerances to which the field cage must conform in order to minimize tracking errors. Examples of these distortions for different electron launch points under the condition of 1 mm tilt of

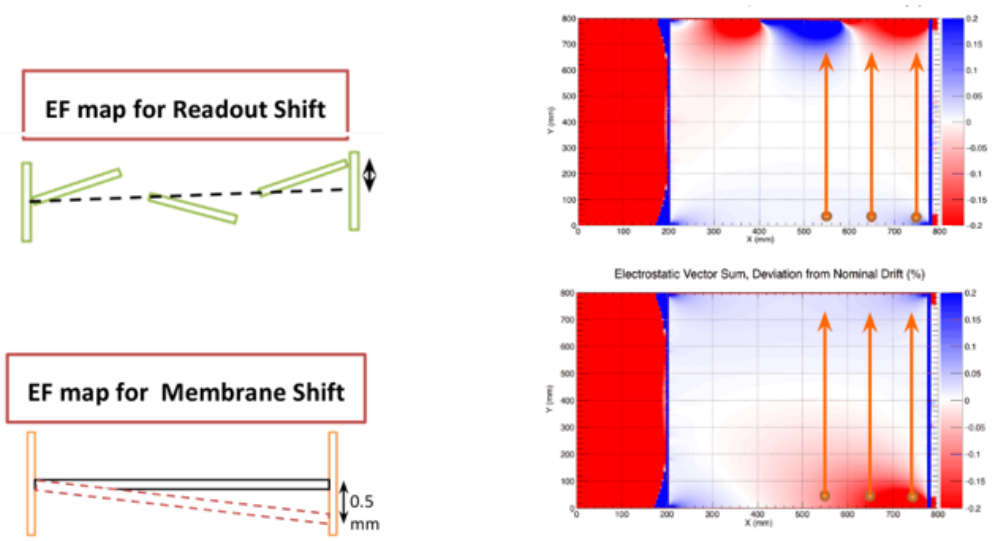



**Figure 2.50:** Ansys calculations have been performed to compare the electric field of an ideal TPC to that of a TPC build with manufacturing errors. These field calculations assist in defining the production tolerances.

the central membrane are shown in Figure 2.51. An interesting output from this study is the discovery of a local minimum in the field-induced distortions of the TPC us run under the conditions $\vec{v_{drift}} \times \vec{B} \sim \vec{E_{drift}}$. We are lucky at or very near this condition in both our candidate gases.

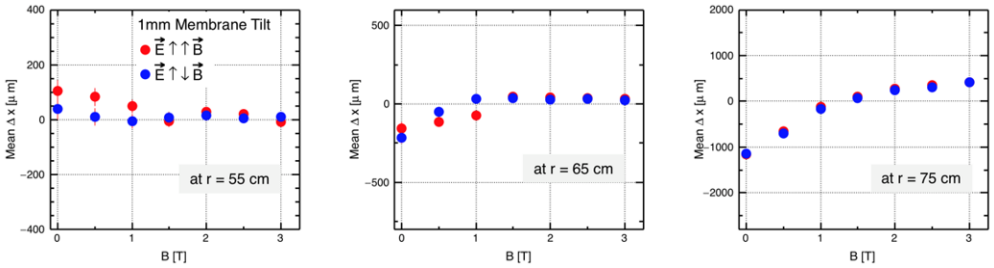



**Figure 2.51:** For each mechanical error calculated by Ansys, the distorted field us feed into GARFIELD so that position measurement errors can be deduced. Calculations not only yield a quantitative impact study of field cage errors, they also demonstrate a local minimum in tracking error when $\vec{v_{drift}} \times \vec{B} \sim \vec{E_{drift}}$, as is the case foe Ne2K gas.

Another substantive issue for the TPC is the size of the gas volume and maintaining cleanliness of the gas. Although it is true the PHENIX constructed an exceptional gas system for the old HBD detector (below 5 ppm and $O_2$ and $H_2O$ at all times, the sPHENIX TPC i a much larger gas volume and will require special care in defining its fittings.

Our designs that are presently under construction for the full-scale prototype call out making both the wagon wheels and their mating pieces from solid Al block. Although this

is by no means inexpensive, it allows for vacuum-quality seals at all places.

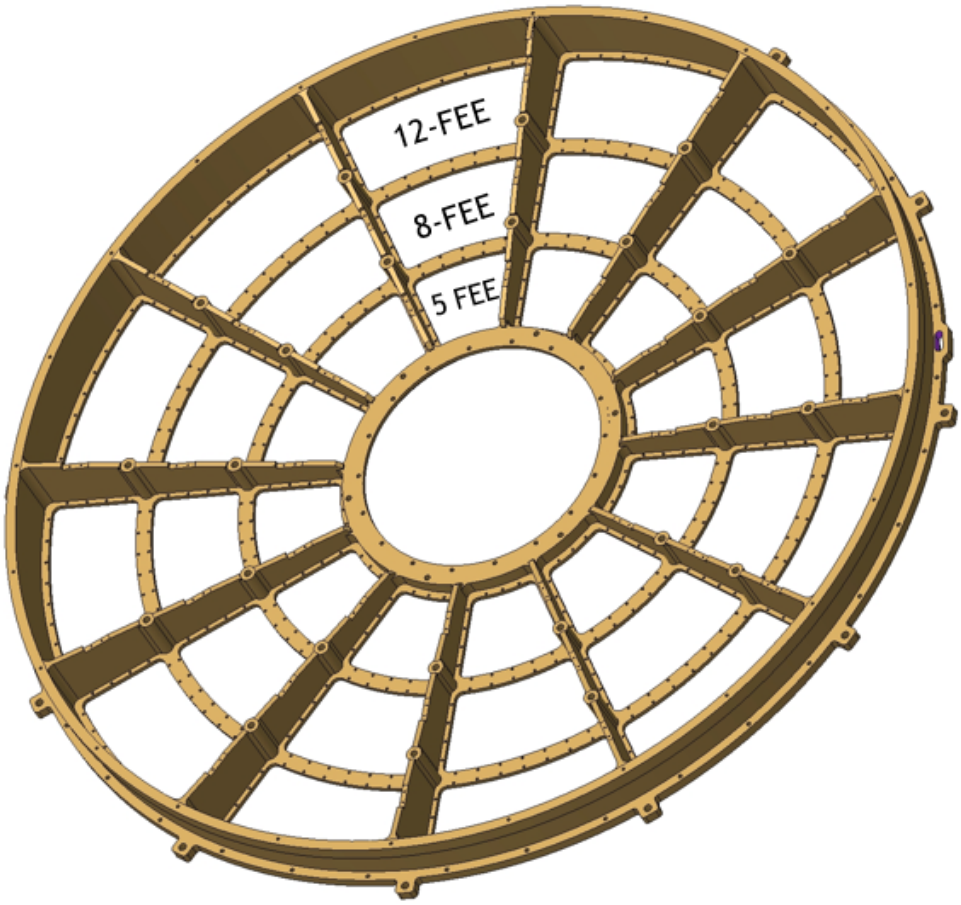



**Figure 2.52:** The TPC "wagon wheel" shall be machined from single piece Al to eliminate cracks and minimize leaks.

Figures 2.52 and 2.53 show the details for completing the seals. The wagon wheels shall seal to the field cages using spring-energizes elastomer gland seals. These will proceed for simple insertion thereby eliminating the need to excessive force applies to the field cage cylinders during assembly. Furthermore, each TPC avalanche module will achieve an O-ring seal against the wagon wheel pieces.

### 2.5.8.2 TPC Fabrication

Because of the size of the TPC, the fabrication of all parts could, in principle, be accomplished at any of our collaborating institutions worldwide. That said, it would nonetheless be simplest if the field cage assembly was done locally, with smaller parts made around the world. This model proved quite effective in building the PHENIX Hadron Blind Detector, wherein the individual parts were manufactured at the Weizmann Institute of Science in Israel, and the assembly was accomplished at Stony Brook University.

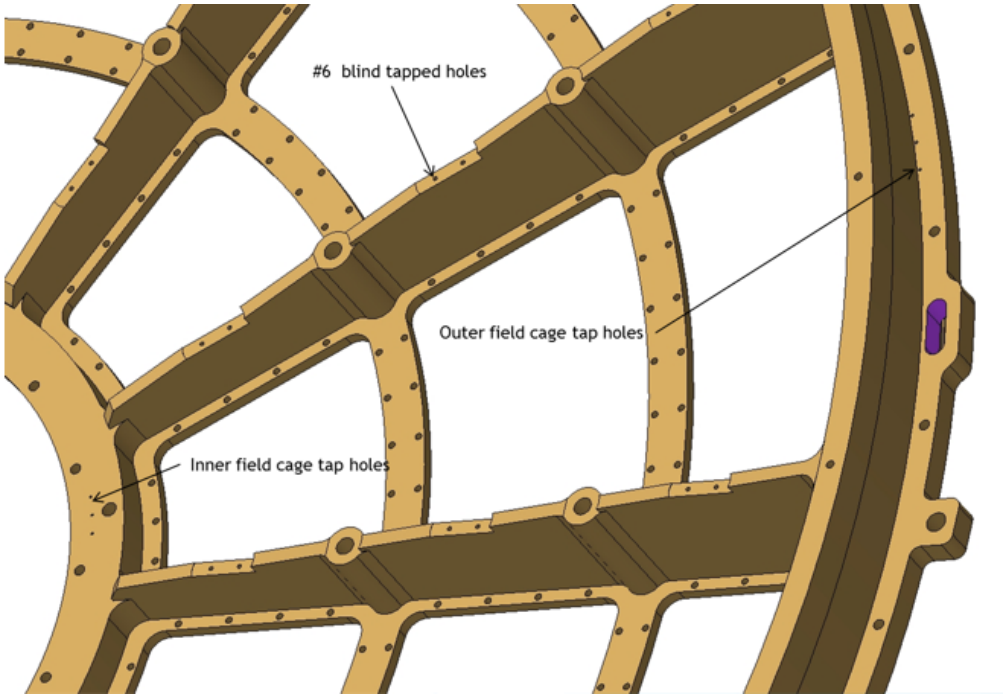



**Figure 2.53:** The "wagon wheel" includes allowances for all services, feedthroughs, installation fixtures, and support fixtures.

Because of the need to maintain active area to the largest radius, our designs for the TPC field cage and gas enclosure will be biased toward the thinnest of robust designs. Thus, the STAR and ILC field cage designs are the most appropriate as models for our work. Those devices were manufactured using large mandrels upon which layers of flexible circuit card and honeycomb were applied. Each mandrel is designed to release by "collapsing" to smaller radius after the TPC shell is cured, thereby releasing the shell. The completed shells are then outfitted with aluminum spoke-like end caps and a central membrane to form the completed field cage. We intend to design the field cage to safely hold the highest potential currently under investigation (ALICE gas $\sim 37\ kV$).

The open ports between the spokes of the end caps will be filled with "mechanical blank" modules to allow the field cage to become gas tight during the prototyping stage. This will allow full testing of the high voltage stability of the field cage without any of the gain stage modules in place.

During the prototyping stage, single items of the prototype gain stage module will be built. Because of the finite size of these units, there is a list of institutions that are capable of prototype construction, including Weizmann, Stony Brook, BNL, PNPI, Temple, and Vanderbilt. All of these institutions have past experience in the PHENIX HBD construction, or in the ongoing construction of the inner TPC layers for the ALICE upgrade. We envision two full sized prototypes whose design is driven by results from our ongoing TPC gain stage R&D, which has been funded by the EIC R&D program. As described below, we

have already garnered extensive experience in multiple gain stage technologies, as well as a number of clever readout scheme applications.

The so-called "pre-production prototype" will be the third and final stage of full sized prototype construction. Barring any discovered deficiencies, "production" would involve the manufacture of the remaining gain stage modules as well as spare units. As with the prior work, it is likely that much of this effort will take place "off site" from the location of the field cage itself, with working modules shipped via clean, dust-free packaging.

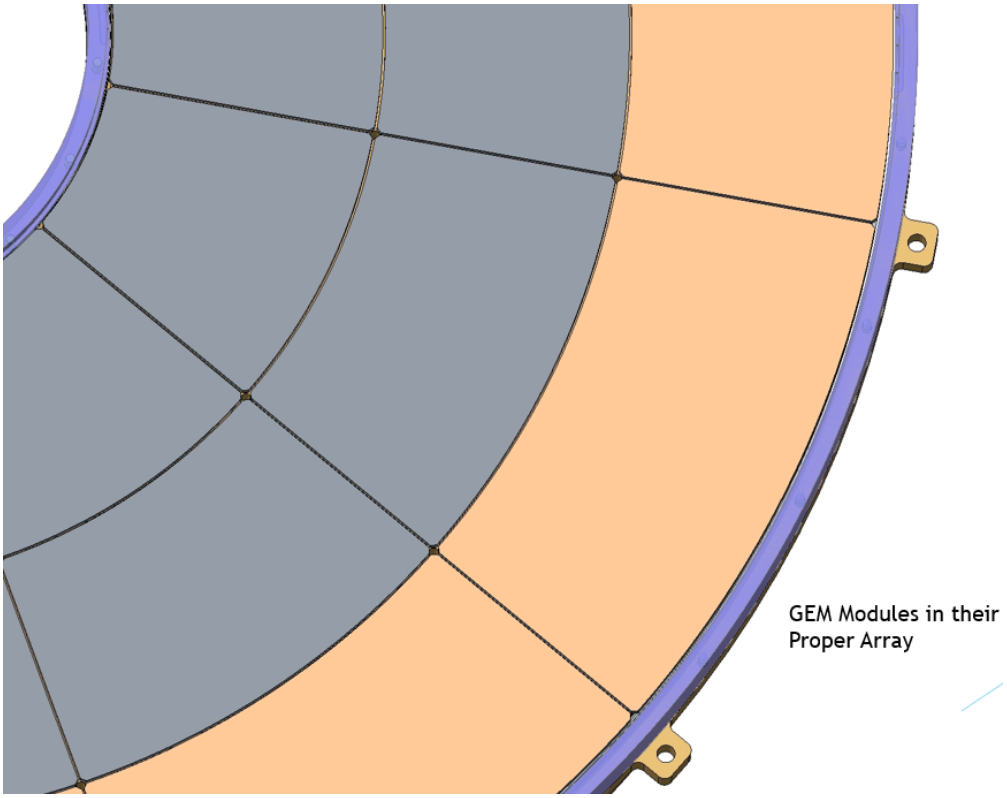



**Figure 2.54:** TPC modules have only $\frac{1}{16}$" gap and localize penetration services (gas, laser, temp, pressure, ...) at the "corner points".

Figure 2.54 shows the fit of the modules after assembly. a 1/6" gap is standard between all modules Furthermore at each corner junction, the modules allow for 1/4" feed-through allowing for gas in/out and laser signals.

Figures 2.55 and 2.56 highlight the gland seals.

### 2.5.9 TPC cooling and cabling

Our cooling requirements for the TPC electronics will be significant. Although we are only cooling $\frac{1}{2}$ as many channels as ALICE, these channels are distributed over only $\frac{1}{10}$ as much

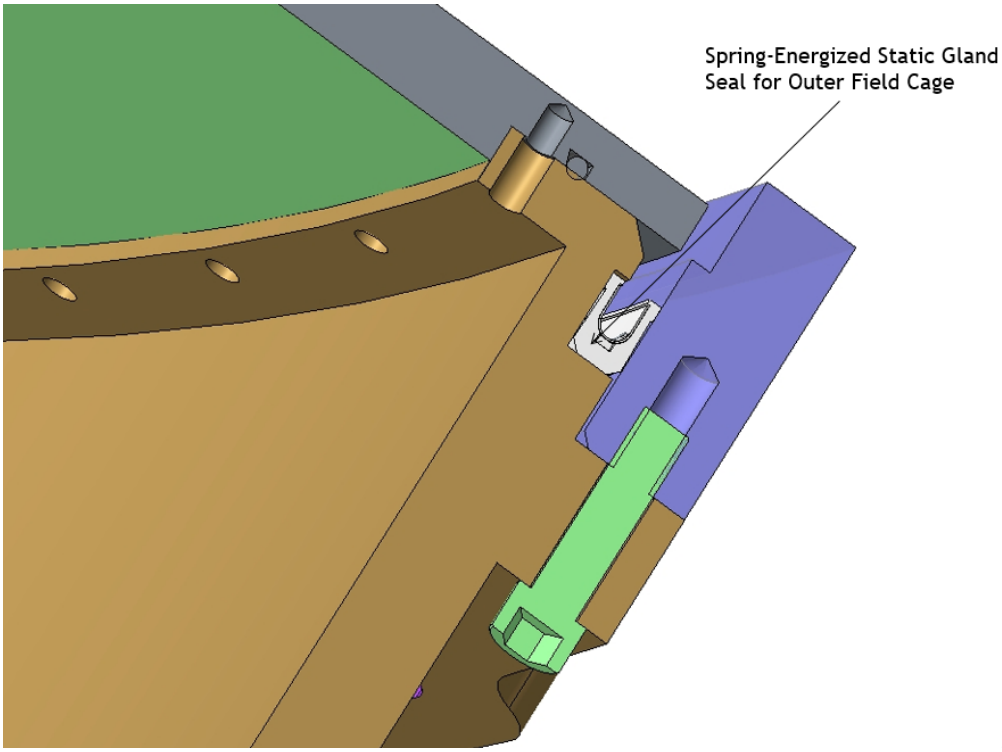



**Figure 2.55:** Both the inner and outer field cages avoid O-ring-induced distortions of the wagon wheel by making an annular seal. Stresses are further minimized using a spring-energized gland seal.

surface area. Therefore the power required from our cooling plant will be smaller overall, but we will need to design for very effective heat transfer to the cooling lines.

Figure 2.57 shows the configuration of the cooling plant currently in use by the ALICE experiment. The key feature of this cooling plant is that the coolant is delivered at pressures below one atmosphere so that in the event of a leak, gas is introduced into the coolant rather than coolant introduced into the gas. The ALICE resistor chains dissipate a significant amount of power (8W in each of 4 resistor bars). Higher power in the resistor chain is driven by the need for robust performance in the face of stray currents due to nearby ionization. Although the track density in sPHENIX and ALICE are very similar, the charge load onto the ALICE TPC frame is much higher. Among STAR, ALICE, and ILC, only ALICE water cools their resistor chain. Since our power dissipation will be the least of these three applications, we are safest to not water cool the resistor chain, and thereby preclude from the outset the risk of water leaking into the chamber. Our resistor chain design dissipates $\sim$1 Watt.

The cable plant for the TPC includes a pair of shielded coaxial high voltage leads whose diameter will be under $\frac{1}{2}$" (*e.g.* Dielectric Sciences 2125: 100 $kV$; $\varnothing$ 0.4"). Each sector will receive bias for the GEMstack as 8 independent voltages. The readout cards, will receive DC power input, optical connections for slow control and optical connections for data

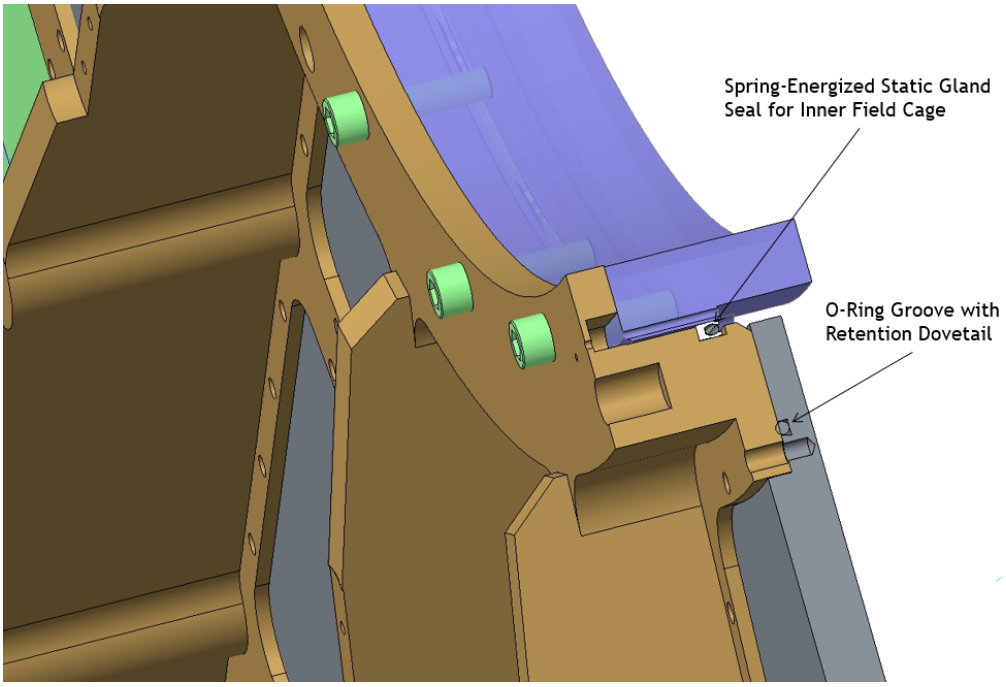



**Figure 2.56:** Schematic layout of TPC main elements.

output. To the extent possible, this significant cable plant will be localized so as to align with the end cap spokes, to minimize the radiation depth for the end cap detector systems.

## 2.6 TPC installation and calibration

The assembly order for sPHENIX specifies that the TPC will be inserted from the end after the calorimeters have already been installed onto the magnet.

TPC calibration will be achieved using a laser system, similar in philosophy to that used by STAR and prototypes for the ILC. Because the work function of aluminum is low, a UV flash will release electrons. Both the STAR TPC and the ILC TPC prototype used a pattern of aluminum applied to the central membrane to produce these reference tracks. The pattern used by STAR consists of lines shown in Figure 2.58, whereas that of the ILC was a pattern of dots. The laser system will not only provide an initial reference calibration, but can be fired at regular intervals (PHENIX fires their EMCAL laser at 1 Hz) during data collection to provide a continuous calibration of the drift velocity and space charge distortions. Gain calibrations can be roughly estimated using cosmic rays, but final calibration will use collision data. In addition to the central membrane pattern, we will shoot lasers directly through the gas at angles from the access points provides in the corner module meeting places.

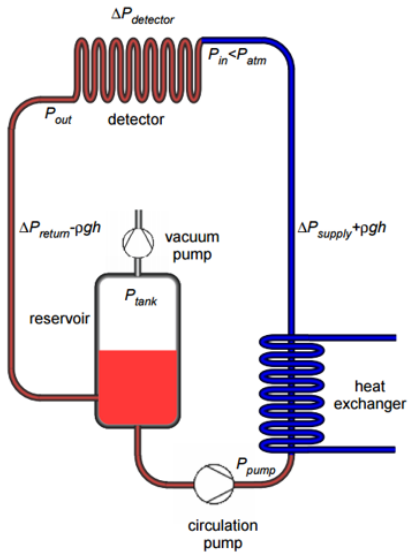



**Figure 2.57:** Diagram of the cooling plant in use the the ALICE TPC. The cooling plant is an under pressure system so that any leak results in gas bubbling into the coolant rather than coolant dripping into the detector.

**Figure 2.58:** Photograph of the central membrane of the STAR TPC. The pattern of Aluminum strips is used to release electrons via laser flash as a calibration signal.

# Chapter 3

# Electromagnetic Calorimeter

## 3.1 Physics Requirements

The EMCal performance is central to the direct photon and upsilon measurements and it is also a key component, along with the hadronic calorimeter, of the calorimetric jet reconstruction. In this section the photon and upsilon requirements for the EMCal are discussed.

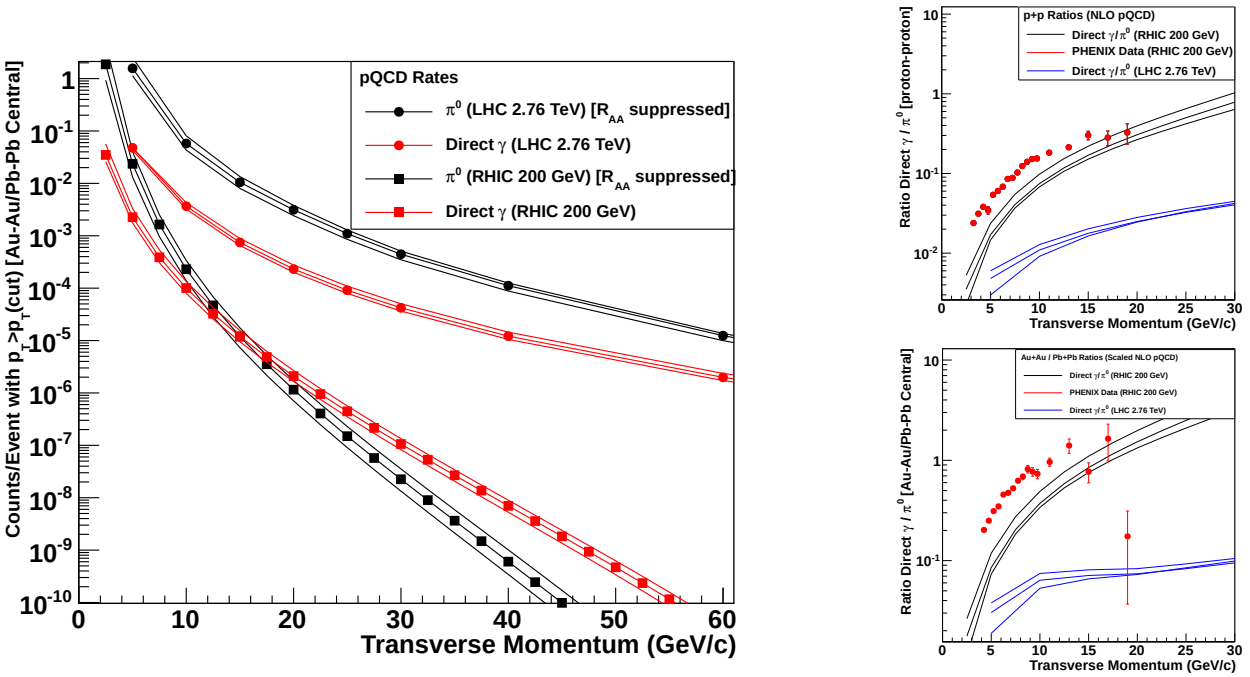



**Figure 3.1:** NLO pQCD calculations of direct photons and $\pi^0$ for RHIC and LHC. The plot on the left shows the counts per event in Au+Au or Pb+Pb collisions (including the measured $R_{\mathrm{AA}}$ suppression factor for $\pi^0$). The upper (lower) panel on the right shows the direct $\gamma$ to $\pi^0$ ratio in $p$+$p$ (Au+Au or Pb+Pb) collisions, in comparison with measurements from the PHENIX experiment at RHIC [5, 6].

Direct photons and their correlation with jets are a unique probe of partonic interactions in the QGP. Photons can be the result of a hard scatter (for example $gq \rightarrow \gamma q$). The photon, not carrying color charge, does not interact strongly with the QGP and thus provides a direct measure of the momentum transfer of the hard scatter itself that is accessible in the final state. This is in contrast to dijet systems where both jets interact strongly with the QGP. Direct photon measurements in heavy ion collisions are limited by the rate of the photon production and the efficiency and purity with which the photon can be identified. Therefore, the main requirements on the EMCal from photon measurements are on the size of the acceptance and the contamination of the photon candidate cluster by energy deposited near the photon from the underlying event. As illustrated in Fig. 3.1, the photon/$\pi^0$ discrimination is not a driver of the calorimeter performance at the momenta of interest at RHIC.

For heavy ion collisions, one goal is that the detector resolution and segmentation not be a limitation on the electron cluster reconstruction compared to the underlying event background in a central heavy ion event. A typical cluster size (a 3x3 tower array) contains about 320 MeV of underlying event energy in the EMCal (see Fig. 8.16). For an Y-electron cluster of 4 GeV, the underlying event blurring would produce a comparable contribution to the energy resolution with a detector resolution of $\Delta E/E \leq 16\%/\sqrt{E}$.

For the Y, the EMCal requirements are driven by the need to reject hadrons by a matching condition between the track momentum and the EMCal energy. Hadrons misidentified as electrons will lead to an increased combinatoric background in the Y mass distribution. The design goal is to optimize the electron identification efficiency with respect to the pion rejection by the calorimeter energy matching condition. As in the photon case, central Au+Au collisions are the most challenging environment and drive the detector specifications. The physics requirement is to be able to have sufficient statistical precision to measure the suppression of the three Y states separately.

## 3.2 Detector Design

### 3.2.1 Design Requirements

The design requirements for the sPHENIX electromagnetic calorimeter are based on the physics requirements described in the previous section. The calorimeter will play a major role in both the measurement of jets and single photons out to high $p_T$, as well as identifying and measuring the energies of the electrons from Y decays. In addition, the calorimeter must fit inside the BaBar magnet and allow space for the tracking system that will reside inside the calorimeter. The calorimeter should also be as compact as possible in order to minimize the overall size and cost of the hadronic calorimeter. The basic detector design requirements can be summarized as follows:

- Large solid angle coverage ($\pm$ 1.1 in $\eta$, $2\pi$ in $\phi$)
- Moderate energy resolution ($\leq 16\%/\sqrt{E} \oplus 5\%$)
- Fit inside BaBar magnet
- Occupy minimal radial space (short $X_0$, small $R_M$)
- High segmentation for heavy ion collisions
- Minimal cracks and dead regions
- Projective (approximately)
- Readout works in a magnetic field

- Low cost

The requirement for large solid angle coverage is driven by the need to accumulate high statistics for measuring jets and single photons out to the highest $p_T$ possible in an unbiased way using full jet reconstruction over the entire central rapidity region. The requirement for the energy resolution is determined by achieving the best resolution possible consistent with the contribution to the energy resolution from the underlying event in central heavy ion collisions. The energy from the underlying event also requires the tower size to be small ($\sim$1 $R_M^2$) in order to minimize the background contribution for measuring the jet energy or the electron energy from Y decays. This then also determines the minimum inner radius of the calorimeter and the required level of segmentation. The current design places the inner radius of the calorimeter at 90 cm and has a segmentation of $0.025 \times 0.025$ in $\Delta\eta \times \Delta\phi$, which leads to $96 \times 256$ = 24,596 towers over the full rapidity and $\phi$ range. Figure 3.2 shows the energy deposition in the sPHENIX calorimeter system as a function of the geometric position in the detector. In Figure 8.16, this is quantified in terms of the distribution of energy in single calorimeter towers and in 3x3 tower sums for central Au+Au HIJING events. The average energy for the tower sum is $\sim$320 MeV.

The requirement for minimal gaps and dead regions is driven by the need to measure jets over a large solid angle with good uniformity. Gaps are particularly undesirable since they can lead to missing energy for the electromagnetic component of the shower.

Projectivity in two dimensions (2-D proj.) is desired for the upsilon program. With a one dimensionally projective calorimeter (i.e., projective in $\phi$ only, or 1-D projective), the pion rejection at fixed electron efficiency degrades with increasing $|\eta|$, as electrons enter the calorimeter at increasing angles. The resulting shower is spread through a larger number of towers (Figure 8.13) and thus has higher contributions from the underlying event overlapping with the cluster, blurring the electron/hadron separation. At 70% electron efficiency the pion rejection degrades from a factor of 100 in the two dimensionally projective case to 60 for $0.7< |\eta| <0.9$ (see the discussion of Figure 8.20). This results in an increase in the combinatoric background and a corresponding decrease in the statistical power of the upsilon measurements.

The technology chosen for the EMCAL utilizes an absorber consisting of a matrix of tungsten powder and epoxy with embedded scintillating fibers (W/SciFi), similar to the SPACAL design that has been used in a number of other experiments [7, 8, 9, 10, 11]. In order to work inside the magnetic field, the readout will utilize silicon photomultipliers (SiPMs), which provide high gain and require minimal space. The readout will digitize the SiPM signals and also provide a trigger for high energy electrons and photons. The W/SciFi absorber matrix was developed at UCLA and has been tested several times in test beams at Fermilab [12, 13]. The matrix is formed by preparing an assembly of 0.47 mm diameter scintillating fibers, held in position by a set of metal meshes. The nominal center to center spacing of the fibers is 1.0 mm. The fiber assembly is encapsulated in a mixture of tungsten powder and epoxy, which is compacted by vibration to achieve a density $\sim$ 9-10 $g/cm^3$. This results in a sampling fraction $\sim$ 2.3% with a radiation length $X_0 \sim 7$ mm

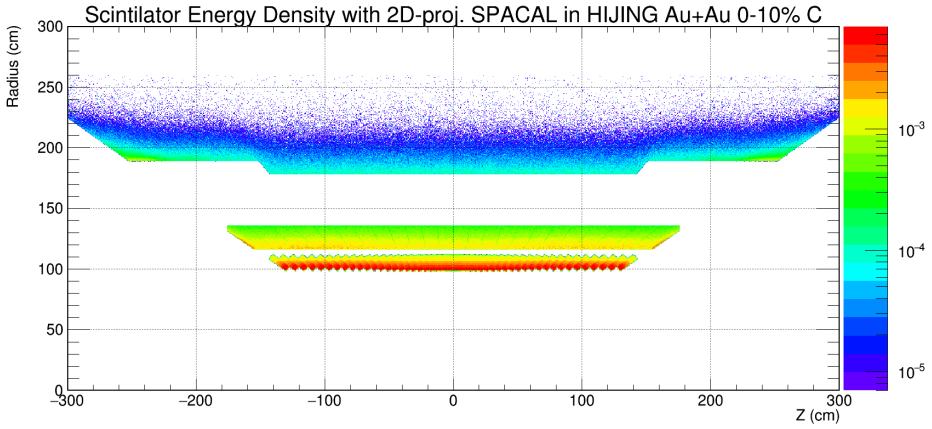



**Figure 3.2:** Visible energy density in the sPHENIX calorimeter systems in central Au+Au collisions. The electromagnetic calorimeter at radius of ∼100 cm observes a high amount of background energy density, which is quantified in Figure 8.16 in a later section. Each block of the EMCal consists of two towers in the z-direction.

and a Molière radius $R_M \sim 2.3$ cm.

The design of the EMCal has been developed with the use of simulations, tests of individual calorimeter components, development of a complete mechanical design, and the construction and evaluation of several prototype calorimeters that have been studied along with the hadronic calorimeter in a series of beam tests. These various efforts of the EMCal design are described in the sections below.

### 3.2.2 Block Design and Construction

The full scope of the EMCal will require a total of 24576 towers, in 6144 blocks, each of which contains $2 \times 2$ towers. The manufacturing of such a large number of blocks is at an industrial scale. The Nuclear Physics Group at UIUC has significant production capabilities and expertise in producing detector components of this type. They have, in fact, built a similar tungsten-scintillating fiber calorimeter in the past in connection with the g-2 experiment [14]. Through our R&D program they have now developed extensive expertise and experience in producing the absorber blocks (see Section 3.3).

The procedure to fabricate the blocks is as follows. First the fibers are cut to the desired length. Then the fibers are filled into the screens (see Figure 3.3 for a drawing of a typical

screen) as they are supported by a 3D printed holder placed at the top of a plastic cup which is used as a support structure (see Figure 3.4). Each block contains 2668 fibers. When the screens have been verified to be filled the fiber assembly is placed in a mold with machined slots to hold the screens in the proper place. The fibers are brought away from the edges of the mold near the read out end in order to make the area of the light collecting surface the same for all the block shapes (see Figure 3.5). This improvement allows for a single light guide size to be used for all block shapes. Additionally, it brings the fibers away from the edges of the light guides where the light collection efficiency is lower. The tungsten is then poured into the mold from the top. Vibration is used to ensure there are no voids in the tungsten filling. When the tungsten has been poured, the epoxy is poured over the top of the assembly as well as through the end caps and drawn through with a vacuum from the bottom of the mold. The block is left for at least 24 hours to allow the epoxy to dry. An example drawing of a block is shown in Figure 3.6. Table 3.1 lists some of the properties of the materials used in the fabrication.

When the epoxy is dry the block is removed from the mold. The edges of the screens are removed from the sides of the block and the top of the block is machined. The ends of the block are machined to expose the fibers. The quality of the end surfaces of the fibers is important for the performance of the calorimeter blocks since it directly affects the light output. A clean cut end with minimal fiber damage is required to maximize the scintillation light collection from the blocks. The ends are diamond-fly cut to provide such a surface. The blocks are tested locally for light transmission, density, and physical dimensions and then shipped to BNL for assembly into sectors.

### 3.2.3 Module and Sector Design

The EMCal will consist of 64 sectors (32 azimuthal $\times$ 2 longitudinal) that are supported by the inner HCal. Figure 3.8 shows the installation of an EMCAL sector on the Inner HCAL. Each sector will subtend 11.2 deg in $\phi$ and cover 1.1 units in $\eta$. They will be supported by rails that will be used for installing each sector one at a time and will allow removal of any sector for service or repair. A sector contains 96 modules that form 384 towers (96 in $\eta$ $\times$ 4 in $\phi$). Each module consists of an absorber block that is divided into 2 $\times$ 2 towers, each with its own light guide that is read out with 4 SiPMs. Table 3.2 gives the key parameters for the EMCAL modules and sectors.

The EMCal towers are projective in both $\eta$ and $\phi$ (i.e., 2D projective) but arranged so that they point slightly off the collision axis. This is done to minimize the effects of boundaries within the blocks and possible channeling of particles through these boundaries. In addition, since the collisions are distributed longitudinally with a $\sigma \sim \pm 10$ cm, the towers do not point directly to the interaction point. The pointing of the blocks back toward the interaction point is shown in Figure 3.9. This configuration ensures a minimal EMCal thickness of about 18 $X_0$ when viewed from the vertex region in the sPHENIX acceptance of $|\eta| < 1.1$. The average thickness of the active components of the EMCal is 20.1$X_0$ and

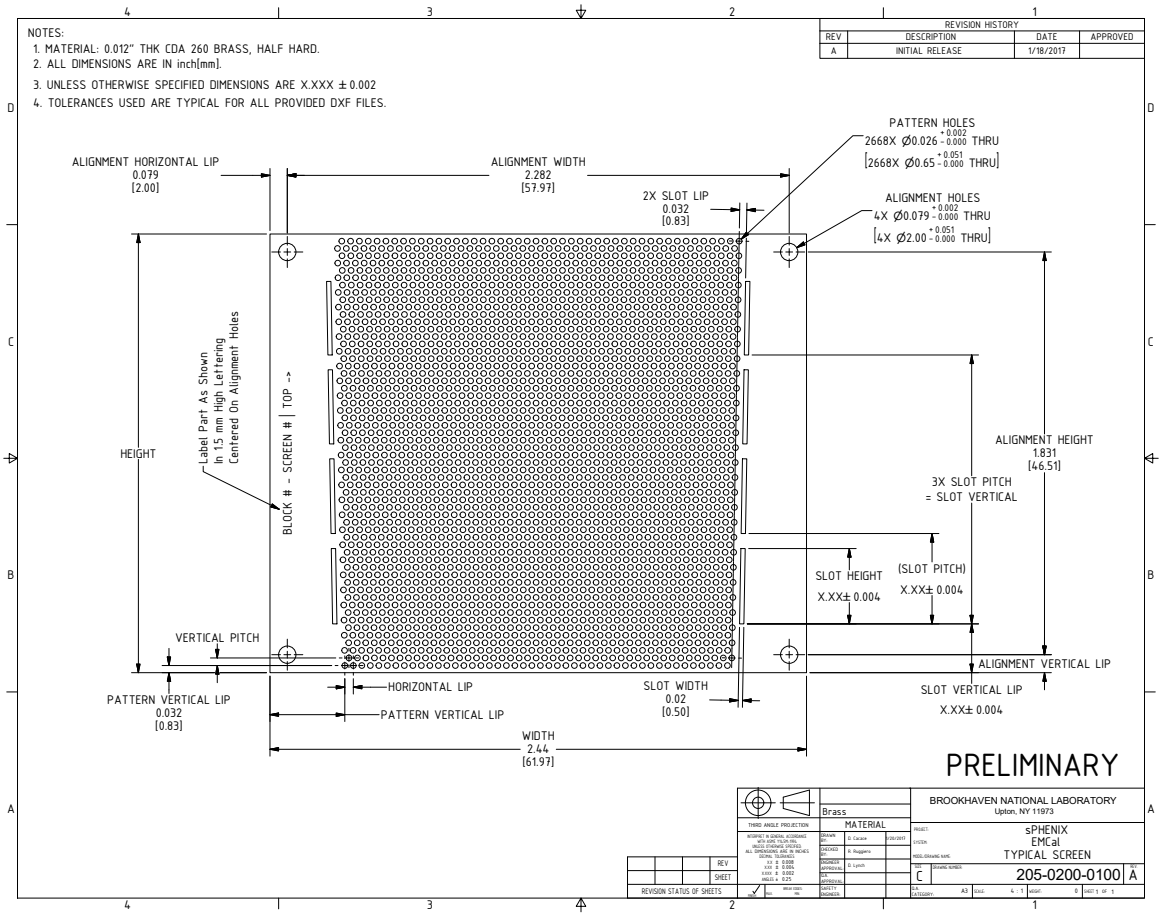



**Figure 3.3:** Drawing of a typical screen for the 2D projective EMCal modules.

$0.83\lambda_{int}$.

Figure 3.10 shows the layout of the absorber blocks inside an EMCAL sector along with the internal electronics and cooling. Each module forms a slice in $\phi$ that gradually tilts along the z axis in order to project back to a position near the vertex at larger rapidity. The 96 blocks for each sector are glued to a sawtooth support structure, shown in Fig. 3.11, that is attached to a metal plate (strong back) that is attached to the rail system which is mounted on the inner surface of the Inner HCal. The entire sector is enclosed in a thin walled stainless steel box that provides overall support and light tightness. Figure 3.12 shows a cross section of the sector showing the location of the absorber, the light guides, front end electronics and cabling. The towers are read out from the front at the inner radius of the detector. This allows access to the electronics from inside the magnet through a removable cover on the sector enclosure.

**Figure 3.4:** Photo of the fiber filling assembly.

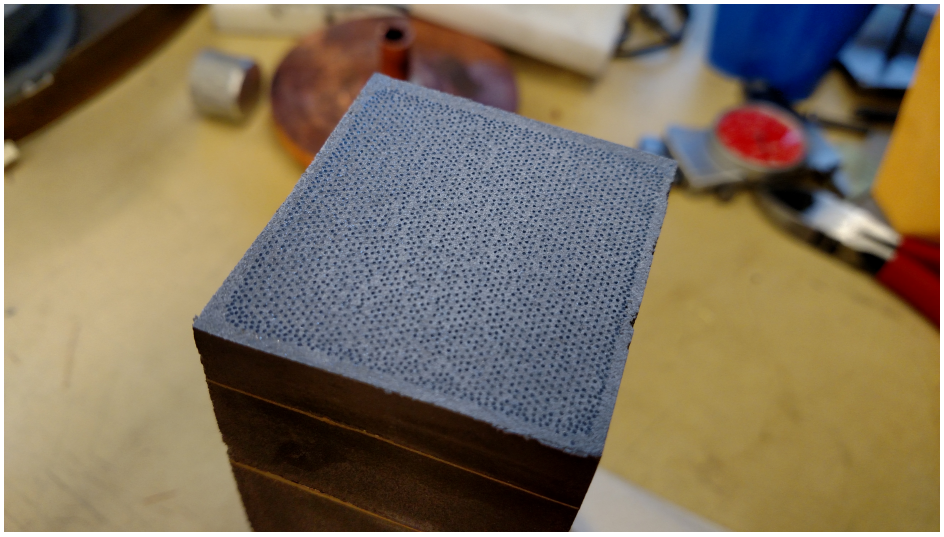


**Figure 3.5:** Photo of a cast block with the fibers on the read out end of the block moved away from the edge of the block to make the size of the light collection area the same for all block shapes.

### 3.2.4 Light Guides

Light guides are used to optically couple the SiPMs to the readout surface of the calorimeter blocks. Each light guide will define a readout tower. The surface area of a single tower is roughly 19.8 mm x 19.8 mm = 392 $mm^2$, while the combined active area of the 4 SiPMs

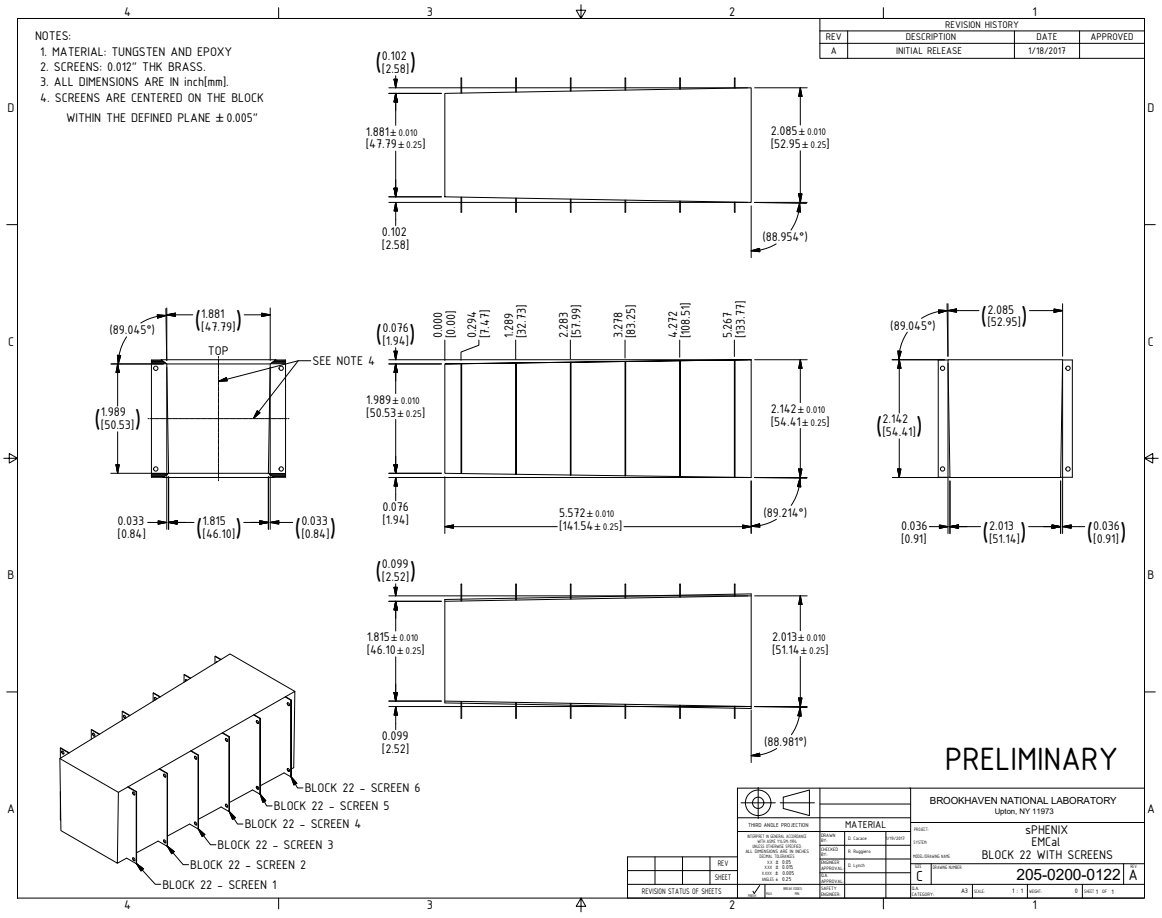



**Figure 3.6:** Technical drawing of a 2D projective block produced at UIUC.

is 4x (3 mm x 3 mm) = 36 mm$^2$, so only 9 % of the active area is covered by the optical sensors. The severe space limitations inside the sector require the use of a very short light guide, and considerable effort was spent by using optical ray tracing simulations and actual measurements in the lab to optimize its design.In the end, it was found that a simple trapezoidal design gave the best overall light collection efficiency ($\sim$ 15 % for the 4 SiPMs) and was the simplest to construct. Figure 3.13 shows the final design of the light guide.

However, because we require $\sim$ 25K individual light guides for all the towers, and the cost for machining such a larger number was prohibitive, it was necessary to find a cost effective method for producing them. The solution in the end was to produce them by injection molding using a UV transmitting acrylic, but it required a very specialized process to produce optical quality parts using this method. This process was finally successfully developed by a company that specializes in high precision injection molding (NN, Inc. in East Providence, RI). The result was very high quality light guides at a price of $\sim$ \$10 a piece. Figure 3.14 shows some samples of the light guides after they are produced with the injection molding sprue still attached, after machining and finally glued onto the absorber

| Material | Property | Value |
|---|---|---|
| Tungsten powder | HC Starck 230 mesh | |
| | Particle size | $\leq 230$ $\mu$m |
| | bulk density (solid) | $\geq 18.50$ $g/cm^3$ |
| | tap density (powder) | $\geq 10.4$ $g/cm^3$ |
| | purity | $\geq 99.5$ percent W |
| | impurities ($\leq 0.1$ percent) | Fe, Ni, Co, Cr, Cu, Mo |
| Scintillating fiber | Saint Gobain: BCF12 SC | |
| | fiber diameter | 0.47 mm |
| | cladding | single |
| | core material | polystyrene |
| | cladding material | Acrylic |
| | emission peak | 435 nm |
| | decay time | 3.2 ns |
| | attenuation length | $\geq 1.6$ m |
| Epoxy | Epo-Tek 301 | |
| | pot life | 1-2 hours |
| | index of refraction | 1.519 at 589 nm |
| | spectral transmission | $\geq 99$ % at 382-980 nm |

**Table 3.1:** EMCal module component materials

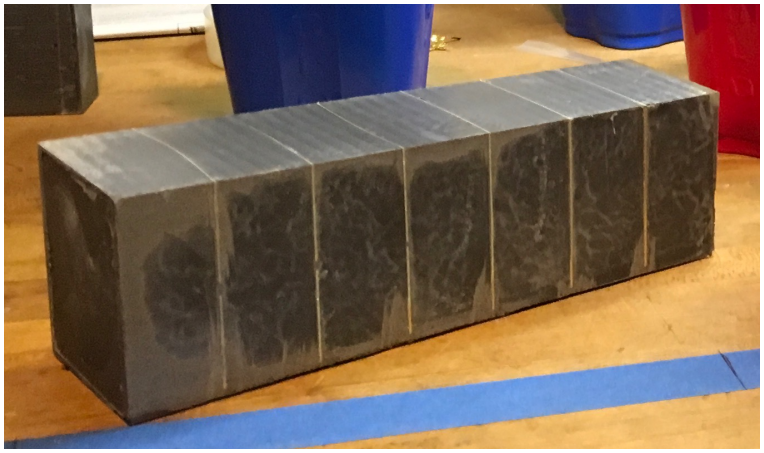


**Figure 3.7:** 2D projective block produced at Illinois.

block. Silicone cookies are then used to optically couple the SiPMs to the light guides.

| Parameter | Units | Value |
|---|---|---|
| Inner radius (envelope) | mm | 900 |
| Outer radius (envelope) | mm | 1161 |
| Length (envelope) | mm | $2 \times 1495 = 2990$ |
| tower length (absorber) | mm | 144 |
| Number of towers in azimuth ($\Delta\phi$) | | 256 |
| Number of towers in pseudorapidity ($\Delta\eta$) | | $2 \times 48 = 96$ |
| Number of electronic channels (towers) | | $256 \times 96 = 24576$ |
| Number of SiPMs per tower | | 4 |
| Number of towers per sector | | 384 |
| Number of sectors | | $2 \times 32 = 64$ |
| Sector weight (estimated) | kg | 326 |
| Total weight (estimated) | kg | 20890 |
| Average sampling fraction | | 2.3% |

**Table 3.2:** Key parameters of the EMCal modules and sectors

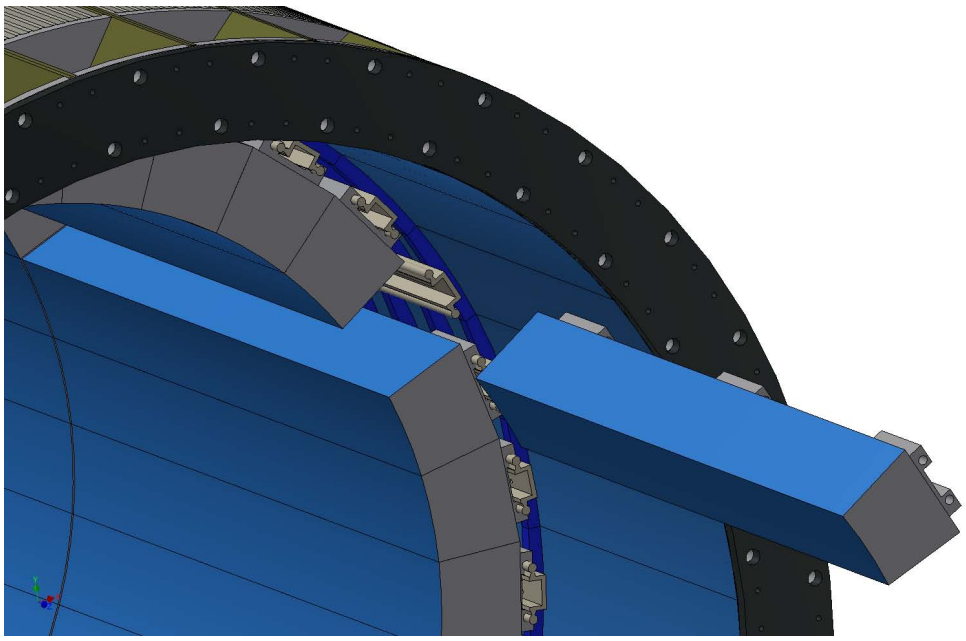


**Figure 3.8:** EMCal sector showing installation on the Inner HCal.

### 3.2.5 Sensors

The photosensor selected for the EMCal is the Hamamatsu S12572-015P SiPM, or Multi Pixel Photon Counter (MPPC), described in detail in the Electronics - 5.1 Optical Sensors section of this document. This device will be used for both the HCal and EMCal. The EMCal will use a 2x2 arrangement of 4 SiPMs per tower, passively summed into one

**Figure 3.9:** Drawings showing the projectivity of the EMCal blocks along the beam direction (left) and in $\phi$ (right).

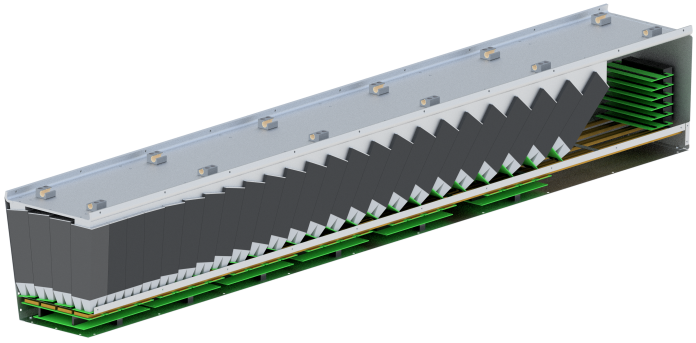


**Figure 3.10:** EMCAL sector showing internal block layout, electronics and cooling.

preamp/electronics readout channel. Figure 3.15 shows the four-tower SiPM pcb and ribbon cable. The 4 SiPMs will be gain-matched (selected) and will share a common bias voltage.

### 3.2.6 Electronics

The readout electronics for the EMCal consists of the analog front end, slow controls, digitizers and power distribution system. The EMCal Preamp Board consists of an $8 \times 2$ array of preamplifier circuits that are laid out to match the geometry of the light guides. The Preamp Boards are mounted directly to the light guides. The analog signals from each of the four SiPMs associated with an EMCal tower are passively summed into one readout channel. The analog sum signal is amplified with a common-base transistor amplifier, shaped with a 30 ns peaking time and driven differentially to digitizer electronics located near the detector. The analog signals are digitized with a Flash ADC operating at 6 times the beam crossing (BCO) frequency and stored in a digital pipeline with a 40 BCO latency. Upon receipt of a Level-1 (L1) trigger, the digital wave form is transferred to a readout

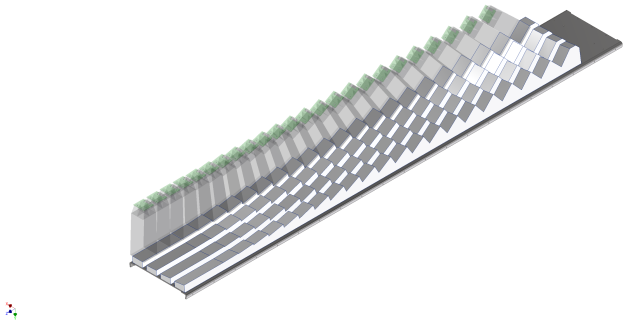


**Figure 3.11:** Sawtooth support structure used to support the blocks inside the EMCAL sector.

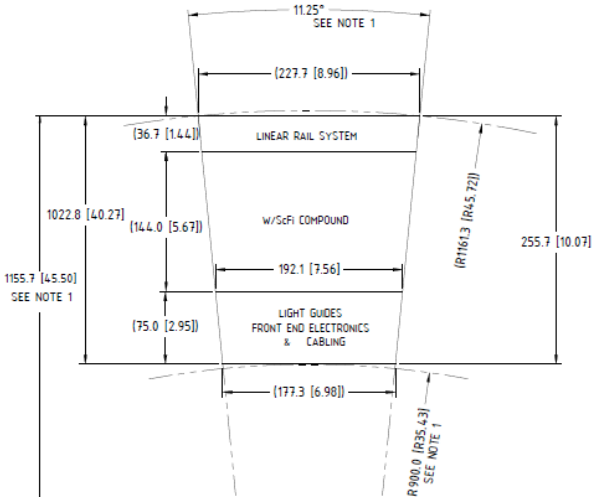



**Figure 3.12:** Cross sectional drawing of an EMCal sector.

buffer capable of buffering up to 5 events for readout to the data acquisition system via a high speed optical link. The digitizer boards also compute trigger primitives which are transmitted to the Level-1 trigger system through independent optical fiber links. Full details of the calorimeter electronics can be found in Chapter 5.

### 3.2.7 LED Calibration

Pulsed LEDs (450 nm), mounted on the SiPM side of the preamp PCB, and projecting light into the lightguides, will be used to calibrate the detector channels and monitor gain drift.

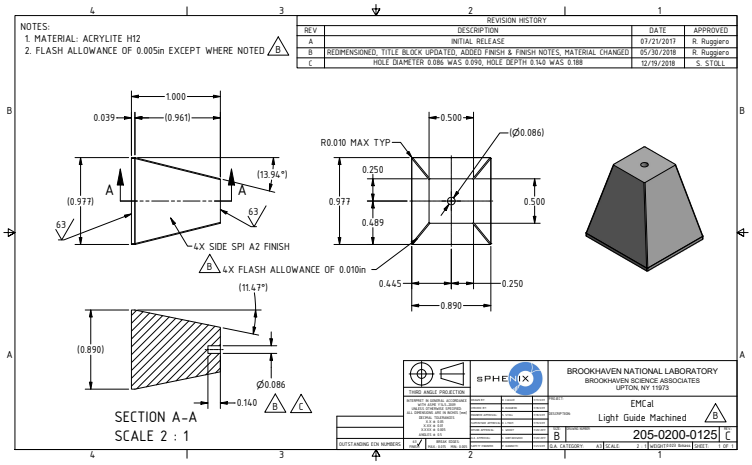



**Figure 3.13:** Final design for the EMCal light guides.

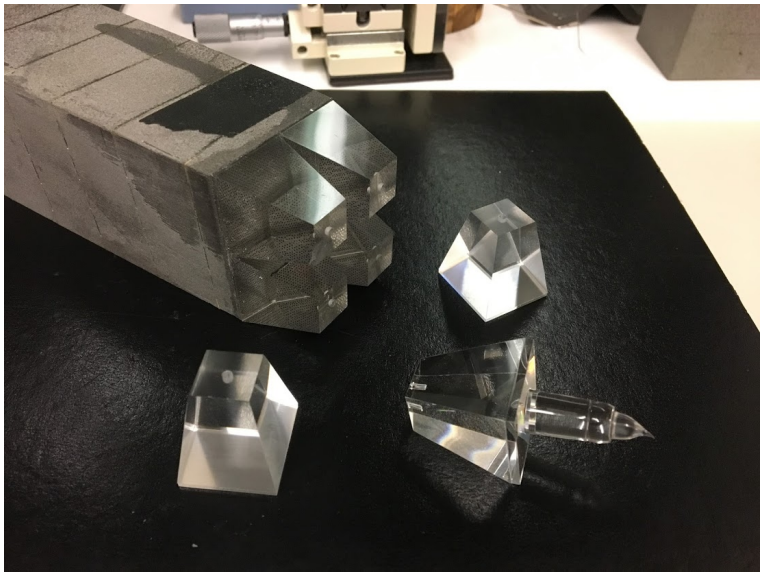


**Figure 3.14:** Light guides produced by injection molding showing parts after removal from the mold, after machining and finally glued onto absorber block.

### 3.2.8 Cooling

The gain of the SiPMs have a strong dependence on temperature and we therefore need to stabilize and monitor their temperature during operation. In addition, we expect the dark current in the SiPMs to increase significantly due to exposure to neutrons over the course of running for several years. From simulations of the expected neutron fluence and measurements done in the PHENIX experimental hall, we expect that the total neutron exposure in five years of running may reach $\sim 10^{11}$ n/cm$^2$ and the dark currents to reach

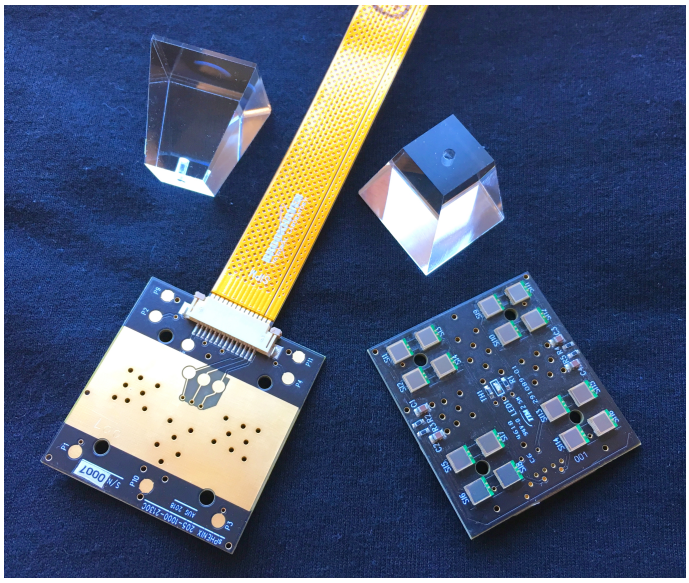


**Figure 3.15:** Four-tower SiPM PCB and lightguides. Each tower is read out with four SiPMs. The SiPMs will be optically coupled to the narrow end of the light guide using a clear silicone adhesive.

up to several hundred $\mu$A per device. We therefore need to provide additional cooling to reduce the noise as it increases over time. A liquid cooling system is being designed that will cool both the preamps and the SiPMs themselves This system is integrated with the readout electronics and cabling scheme inside the sector and is designed to fit in the $\sim$ 7.5 cm of radial space, as shown in Fig 3.12. A prototype version of this cooling system has been designed and implemented in the V2.1 EMCAL prototype described below and was tested along with the detector in the test beam in the spring of 2018.

## 3.3 Prototyping and Testing

Over the past 3 years, several prototypes of the EMCAL have been built and tested in order to study its design and improve its performance. These prototypes have evolved from the original 1D projective UCLA design to the 2D projective design that is in the current design of the sPHENIX detector. Each of these prototypes was tested in the beam at the Fermilab Test Beam Facility (FTBF) in order to measure their energy resolution, linearity and other key performance parameters. They each were tested in a stand alone configuration where the EMCAL prototype was studied in detail by itself, and also in combination with prototypes of the Inner and Outer HCALs to simulate the final sPHENIX configuration. The sections below give a brief description of the results from these tests.

### 3.3.1 1D Projective Prototype (V1)

The first EMCAL prototype (V1) consisted of 1D projective blocks similar to the blocks that will be used in the detector for the most central rapidity range. The blocks were essentially copied from the original UCLA design and consisted of a combination of blocks produced at UIUC and by the company that supplied the tungsten powder for all of the blocks (Tungsten Heavy Powder). The prototype consisted of an $8\times8$ array of 64 towers made up of $1\times2$ tower 1D projective blocks. The detector was tested at the FTFB in the winter of 2016 and the results from this test have been published [15]. As an overall summary of the results, Figure 3.16 shows the energy resolution measured for this prototype for the beam centered on a single tower. For the UIUC blocks at an incident beam angle of 10°, the measured energy resolution was $12.7\%/\sqrt{E} \oplus 1.6\%$ after unfolding a 2% momentum spread of the beam, which agrees well with tests done by the UCLA group with similar prototypes of their design [12, 13].

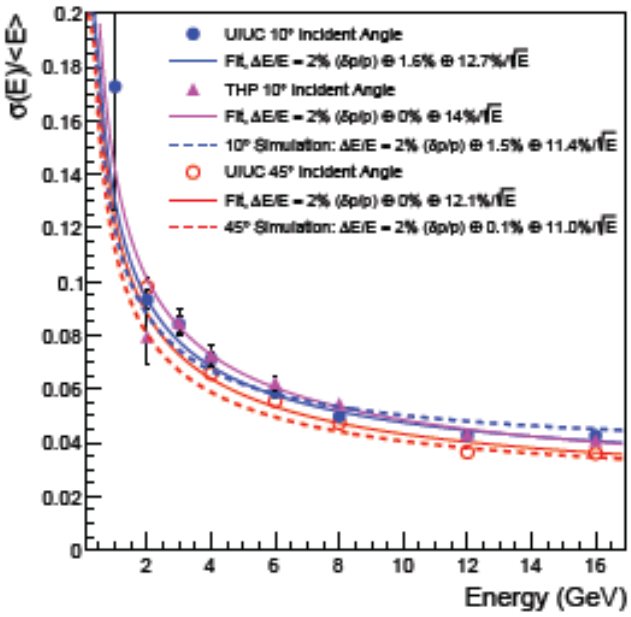



**Figure 3.16:** Energy resolution measured for the first EMCAL prototype (V1) consisting of 1D projective with the beam centered on a single tower.

An additional important test in the 2016 test beam results is shown in Fig. 3.17, which shows the hadron rejection of the EMCal as tested and described in Ref. [15]. The measured rejection factor compares well to three different GEANT4 simulation configurations as shown in the bottom panel of Fig. 3.17. For electrons in the range of 4-5 GeV, where electron and positron pairs from Y decays are expected to be measured in the sPHENIX acceptance, the hadron rejection as measured with the 1D projective prototype will provide

the required discriminatory power for electron identification.

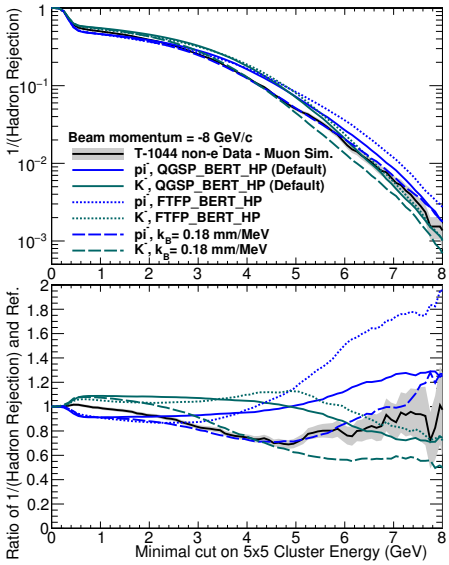



**Figure 3.17:** The hadron rejection is shown as a function of the minimal energy cut for a 5x5 tower cluster for a negatively charged beam of momentum 8 GeV/$c$. The test beam data are shown as a black curve, with uncertainties in grey, and are compared with several $pi^-$ and $K^-$ simulation configuration curves.

### 3.3.2 2D Projective Prototypes (V2 and V2.1)

The second EMCAL prototype (V2) consisted of 2D projective blocks that represented the large rapidity region ($\eta \sim 1$) of the sPHENIX calorimeter. It consisted again of an 8×8 array of 64 towers which was made up of 16 2D projective blocks, each having 2×2 towers. These were the first 2D projective blocks ever produced and allowed us to develop the numerous new procedures required to produce these blocks. The prototype was tested at Fermilab in 2017, again in stand alone mode to measure its detailed performance parameters, and also in combination with prototypes of the Inner and Outer HCAL. These results have been presented at various conferences and appear in the proceedings [16].

We observed a strong position dependence to the shower response due to non-uniformities in the light collection and dead material near the block boundaries. We corrected for this using two methods. One was using a scintillation hodoscope in the beam to measure the beam position and the other was to use the measured shower position from the calorimeter itself. Both methods gave similar results and are shown in Fig.3.18 The energy resolution measured over a 4×4 cm region of one of the blocks, which included the boundaries between 4 light guides but not the boundaries between different blocks, was $\sim 13.0\%/\sqrt{E} \oplus 1.5\%$ after unfolding a 2% momentum spread of the beam at an incident beam angle of 10°, which is well within the sPHENIX specs. However, when the beam spread was

expanded and block boundaries were included, the energy resolution degraded slightly as shown in Fig. 3.19. In this figure, the simulation does not exactly reproduce the test beam measurements since the poor non-uniformities have not been implemented into the simulation. We believe this degradation in the resolution was mainly due to initial problems in producing the first 2D projective blocks that have now been corrected, and we have also implemented additional improvements in the light collection as well. A new version of the 2D projective prototype (V2.1) with the improved blocks has been tested in the test beam at Fermilab in early 2018, and preliminary results show improvements in the overall light collection around the block boundaries.

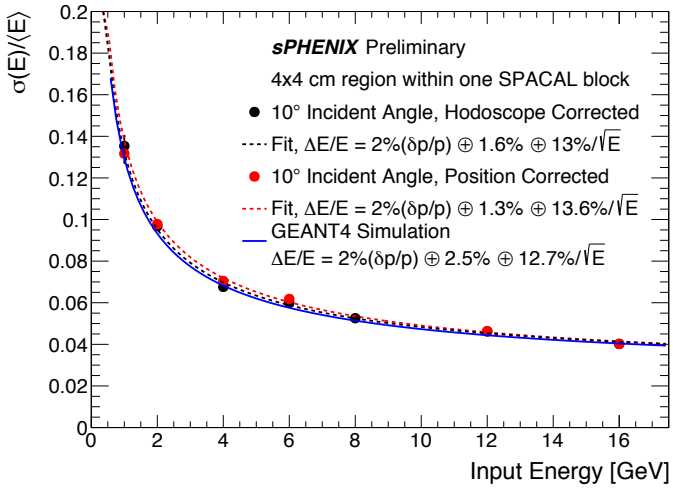



**Figure 3.18:** Energy resolution measured for the second EMCAL prototype (V2) consisting of 2D projective towers with the beam centered on a region containing several towers but excluding block boundaries. Curves show two methods used for position dependent corrections

### 3.3.3 2D Projective Prototype 2.1 Test Beam Results

As stated in a previous section, improvements in the production of 2D projective blocks were made to create V2.1 which were tested in the Fermilab test beam in early 2018. In particular the test beam probed the resolution and linearity of full towers as a function of energy up to 28 GeV, including the block boundary.

Similar to what was seen with V2 blocks in the test beam, a position dependence to the shower response was observed. This effect was corrected for using two methods, one using a scintillation hodoscope to measure the beam position and the other used the self determined shower position from the calorimeter. The energy resolution was measured over a $2.5 \times 2.5 cm^2$ region, which corresponds to the size of a tower, on two blocks using

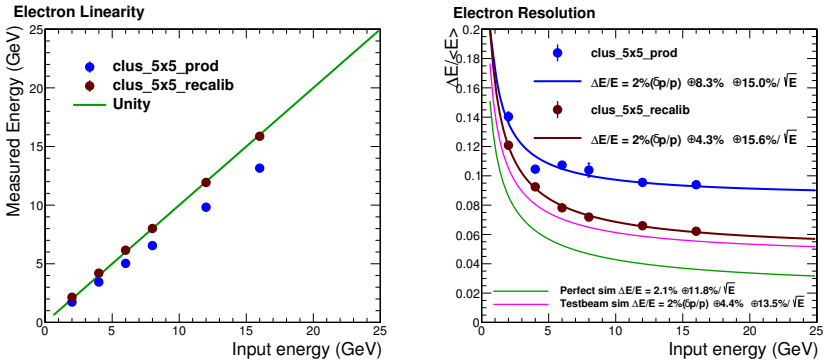



**Figure 3.19:** The linearity (left) and energy resolution (right) of the 2D SPACAL prototype including the block boundaries as measured in the 2017 test beam. The blue points show the energy before the hodoscope position calibration, and the brown points show the energy after the hodoscope position calibration. The resolution degrades slightly due to the inclusion of the block boundaries, which contain non-uniformities.

the two methodes as shown in figure 3.20. The regions were selected in such a way to model tower locations, including the boundaries between the blocks. Utilizing the hodoscope based correction the energy resolution was measured to be $15.5\,\%/\sqrt{E} \oplus 2.9\%$ after unfolding a 2% momentum spread of the beam, as seen in figure 3.21.

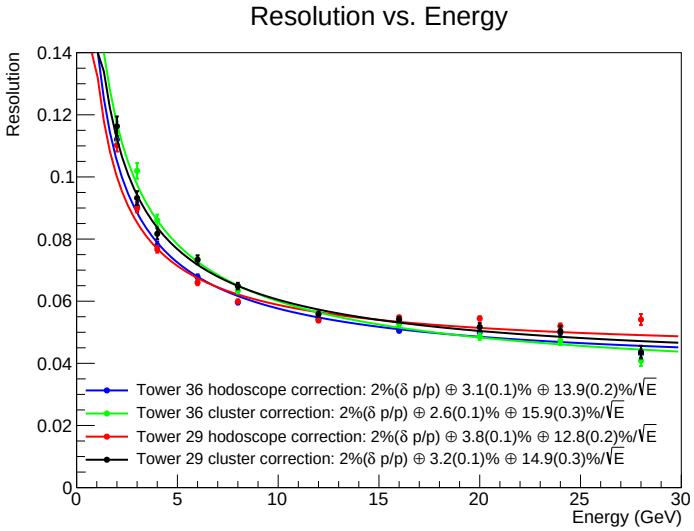



**Figure 3.20:** Energy resolution measured for the EMCAL prototype V2.1 consisting of 2D projective towers with the beam centered on the corresponding tower. Curves shown correspond to the beam centered on two towers each looked at using the two methods used for position dependent corrections

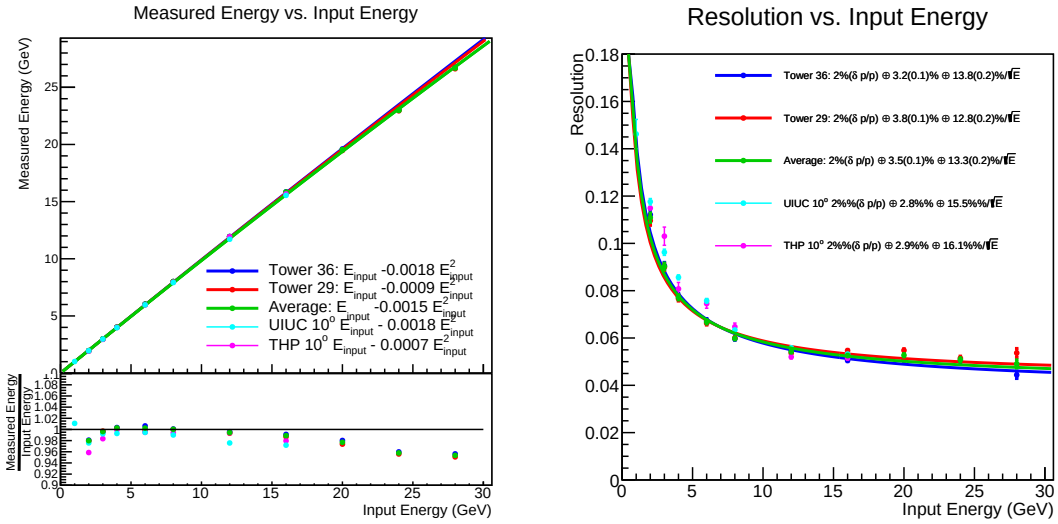



**Figure 3.21:** Energy resolution (right) and linearity (left) measured for the EMCAL prototype V2.1 consisting of 2D projective towers with the beam centered on the corresponding tower. Curves shown correspond to the beam centered on two towers using the hodoscope based positional correction

# Chapter 4

# Hadronic Calorimeter

x

The hadronic calorimeter (HCal), essential for the measurement of jets, is a steel-scintillator sampling calorimeter. The HCal also serves as the flux return of the solenoid and provides mechanical support for the solenoid and the detector components inside the solenoid. This chapter describes the design of the HCal detectors, prototypes of these detectors, test beam performance, and simulation results.

## 4.1 HCal Requirements and Overview

The performance requirements for the sPHENIX HCal are driven by the physics requirements related to measuring jets in relativistic heavy ion collisions and the need to realize the HCal in an efficient, cost-effective manner.

A uniform, hermetic acceptance is required between $-1.1 < \eta < 1.1$ and $0 < \phi < 2\pi$ to minimize the systematic errors associated with energy that is not measured by the detector. For similar reasons, the calorimeter system is required to absorb >95% of the incident hadronic energy, which sets the required depth of the calorimeter system to 4.9 nuclear interaction lengths[1]. The modest single hadron energy resolution requirement of $\frac{\sigma}{E} \sim \frac{100\%}{\sqrt{E}}$ for the HCal is adequate in heavy ion collisions since, for low energy jets, the jet energy resolution is dominated by the subtraction of the underlying event and not the energy resolution of the HCal.

Key design aspects of the HCal are determined by the mechanical and practical limitations. To limit civil construction in the 1008 interaction region at RHIC, it is highly desirable that the sPHENIX detector fit through the existing shield wall opening. In addition, the engineering challenge of supporting the HCal increases with the radius of the detector, which drives a design that makes use of the HCal as the magnet flux return. For these reasons we have chosen a novel tilted plate calorimeter design, which is described more fully in the following sections.

In earlier phases of the design, the HCal comprised two compartments, called the inner (inside of the solenoid) and the outer (outside thereof and acting as the flux return). While the inner HCal as a detector subsystem is no longer part of the MIE configuration for sPHENIX, the collaboration is working to realize an inner HCal through other funding sources. Specifically, a consortium of collaborating institutions has submitted a "Major Research Instrumentation" proposal to the NSF to purchase the active material and electronics to convert the aluminum frame (which is still part of the MIE) into an active detector subsystem. In this chapter, the phrase "inner HCal" generally refers to the uninstrumented aluminum frame, except in cases where earlier versions of the design are being discussed, such as in the section on the prototype.

[1] for a typical 30 GeV jet where the leading particle carries 2/3 of the jet energy

## 4.2 Detector Design

The design of the hadronic calorimeter has been developed by a program of simulation and prototyping. The basic calorimeter concept is a sampling calorimeter with tapered absorber plates tilted from the radial direction. Extruded tiles of plastic scintillator with an embedded wavelength shifting fiber are interspersed between the absorber plates and read out at the outer radius with silicon photomultipliers (SiPMs). The tilt angle is chosen so that a radial track from the center of the interaction region traverses at least four scintillator tiles. Each tile has a single SiPM, and the analog signal from each tile in a tower (five tiles per tower) are ganged to a single preamplifier channel to form a calorimeter tower. Tiles are divided in slices of pseudorapidity so that the overall segmentation is $\Delta\eta \times \Delta\phi \sim 0.1 \times 0.1$.

### 4.2.1 Scintillator

| Property | |
|---|---|
| Plastic | Extruded polystyrene |
| Scintillation dopant | 1.5% PTP and 0.01% POPOP |
| Reflective coating | Proprietary coating by surface exposure to aromatic solvents |
| Reflective layer thickness | 50$\mu$m |
| Wrapping | one layer of 100 $\mu$m Al foil, one layer of 30 $\mu$m cling-wrap, one 100 $\mu$m layer of black Tyvek |
| Attenuation length in lateral (with respect to extrusion) direction | $\sim$2-2.5 m |
| Wavelength shifting fiber | Single clad Kuraray Y11 |
| Fiber size | 1 mm round |
| Fiber core attenuation length | $>$ 3.5 m |
| Optical cement | EPO-TEK 3015 |

**Table 4.1:** Properties of HCal scintillating tiles.

The scintillating tiles are similar to the design of scintillators for the T2K experiment by the INR group (Troitzk, Russia) who designed and built 875 mm long scintillation tiles with a serpentine wavelength shifting fiber readout [17]. The MINOS experiment developed similar extruded scintillator tiles. The properties of the HCal scintillating tiles are listed in Table 4.1.

The wavelength shifting fiber used is the Kuraray Y11 [18] single clad fiber. It was chosen due to its flexibility and longevity, which are critical in the geometry with multiple fiber bends. The properties of the HCal wavelength shifting fibers are listed in Table 4.2.

| Property | |
|---|---|
| Fiber diameter | 1.0 mm |
| Formulation | 200, K-27, S-Type |
| Cladding | single |
| Cladding thickness | 2 percent of d (0.02 mm) |
| Numerical Aperture (NA) | 0.55 |
| Emission angle | 33.7 ° |
| Trapping Efficiency | 3.1 percent |
| Core material | polystyrene (PS) |
| Core density | 1.05 g/cc |
| Core refractive index | 1.59 |
| Cladding material | Polymethylmethacrylate (PMMA) |
| Cladding density | 1.19 g/cc |
| Cladding refractive index | 1.49 |
| Color | green |
| Emission peak | 476 nm |
| Absorption Peak | 430 nm |
| Attenuation length | $>$ 3.5 m |
| Minimum bending radius | 100 mm |

**Table 4.2:** Properties of Kuraray Y-11 (200) wavelength shifting fibers.

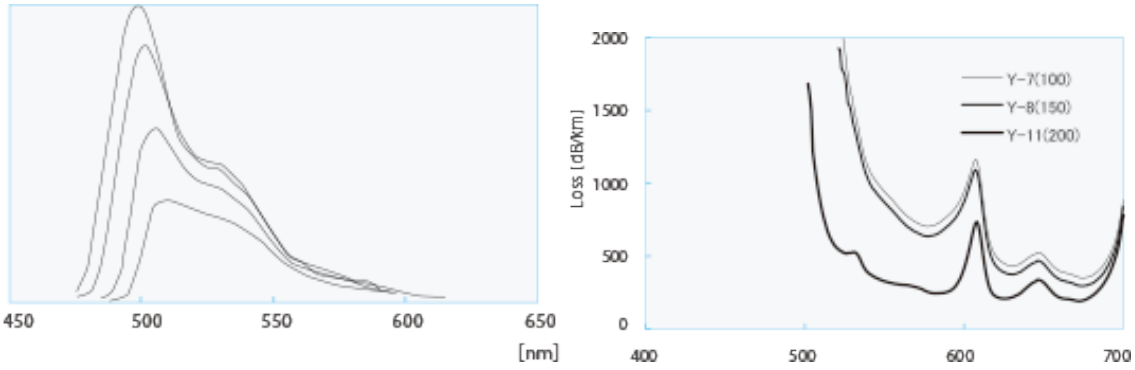



**Figure 4.1:** Y-11 (200) WLS fiber emission spectrum for various fiber lengths (10, 30, 100, 300 cm, from top to bottom) (left) and transmission loss (right).

The fiber emission and absorption spectra are shown in Figure 4.1. The fiber routing was designed so that all energy deposited in the scintillator is within 2.5 cm of a WLS fiber, and the bend radius of any turn in the fiber has been limited to 35 mm based on T2K and our own experience with test tiles. The two ends of a fiber are brought to the outer radius of a tile where a small plastic holder carries a $3 \times 3$ mm$^2$ SiPM at 0.75 mm from the end of the polished fibers. The HCal is north-south symmetric and requires 24 tiles along the $\eta$ direction. The design requires 12 different shapes for tiles. Fig. 4.2 shows the tile and

embedded fiber pattern.

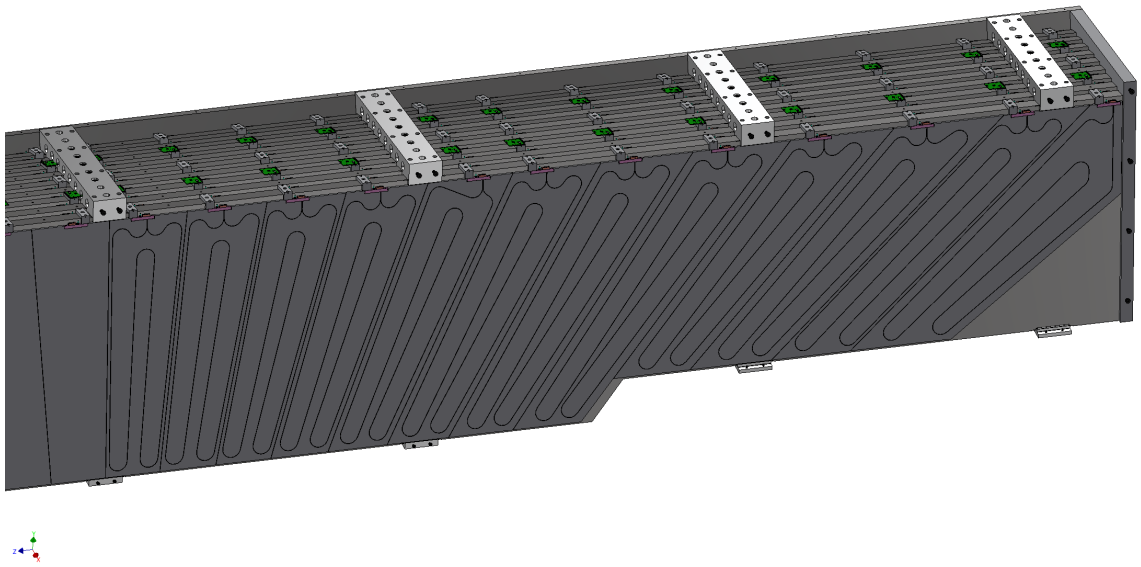


**Figure 4.2:** Scintillator tiles in a layer of the HCal.

### 4.2.2 Detector design

The major components of the HCal are tapered steel absorber plates and 7680 scintillating tiles which are read out with SiPMs along the outer radius of the detector. The detector consists of 32 modules, which are wedge-shaped sectors containing 2 towers in $\phi$ and 24 towers in $\eta$ equipped with SiPM sensors, preamplifiers, and cables carrying the differential output of the preamplifiers to the digitizer system on the floor and upper platform of the detector. Each module comprises 9 full-thickness absorber plates and 2 half-thickness absorber plates, so that as the modules are stacked, adjoining half-thickness absorber plates have the same thickness as the full-thickness absorber plates. The tilt angle is chosen to be 12 degrees relative to the radius, corresponding to the geometry required for a ray from the vertex to cross four scintillator tiles. Table 4.3 summarizes the major design parameters of the HCal, which is illustrated in Figure 4.3.

Since the HCal will serve as the flux return of the solenoid, the absorber plates are single, long plates running along the field direction. The HCal SiPM sensors and electronics are arranged on the outer circumference of the detector.

The SiPMs attached to the tiles in a given tower must be gain matched, because we plan to provide the same bias voltage on all five of the SiPMs in a tower. This should be possible by sorting the SiPMs according to the manufacturer's measurements. The SiPM sensors,

| Parameter | Units | Value |
|---|---|---|
| Inner radius (envelope) | mm | 1820 |
| Outer radius (envelope) | mm | 2700 |
| Length (envelope) | mm | 6316 |
| Material | | 1020 low carbon steel |
| Number of towers in azimuth ($\Delta\phi$) | | 64 |
| Number of tiles per tower | | 5 |
| Number of towers in pseudorapidity ($\Delta\eta$) | | 24 |
| Number of electronic channels (towers) | | $64 \times 24 = 1536$ |
| Number of optical devices (SiPMs) | | $5 \times 1536 = 7680$ |
| Number of modules (azimuthal slices) | | 32 |
| Number of towers per module | | $2 \times 24 = 48$ |
| Total number of absorber plates | | $5 \times 64 = 320$ |
| Tilt angle (relative to radius) | $^\circ$ | 12 |
| Absorber plate thickness at inner radius | mm | 10.2 |
| Absorber plate thickness at outer radius | mm | 14.7 |
| Gap thickness | mm | 8.5 |
| Scintillator thickness | mm | 7 |
| Module weight | kg | 12247 |
| Sampling fraction at inner radius | | 0.037 |
| Sampling fraction at outer radius | | 0.028 |
| Calorimeter depth | $\lambda$ | 3.8 |

**Table 4.3:** Mechanical design parameters for the Outer Hadronic Calorimeter.

preamplifiers, and cables are arranged on the outer circumference of the HCal, with cables exiting the two ends of the modules. Interface boards mounted at the ends of the modules monitor the local temperatures and leakage currents, distribute the necessary voltages, and provide bias corrections for changes in temperature and leakage current. As part of the production QA, we have a requirement that tile plus SiPM pairs in each tower must have a response within 10% of each other.

### 4.2.3 Mechanical Design

The mechanical design concept for the HCal relies on a load transfer scheme where the tilted steel plates in the HCal form the primary structural members for transferring loads. The concept further requires the HCal to support the solenoid independently from the EMCal. The EMCal support structure is joined at its longitudinal ends by stainless steel rings, which in turn are mounted to the HCal by mounting rings. The HCal sectors are joined at their longitudinal ends by steel splice plates between adjacent sectors into a single unit, which is mounted on the Central Platform. The reference design for the HCal support

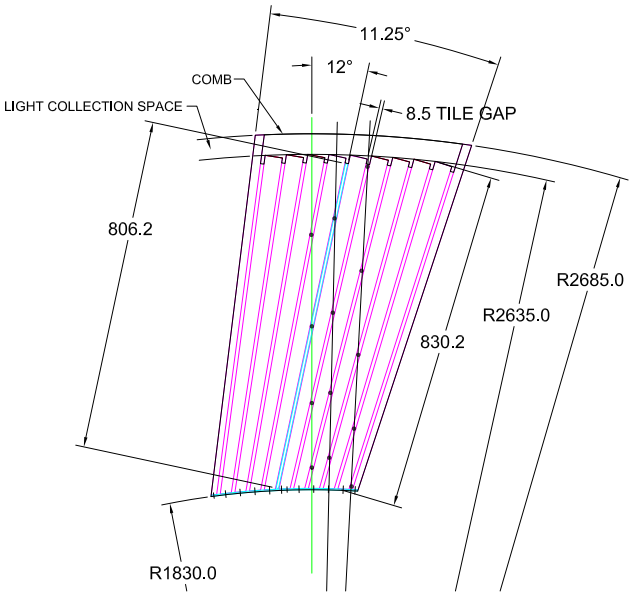



**Figure 4.3:** Transverse cutaway view of an HCal module, showing the tilted tapered absorber plates. Light collection and cabling is on the outer radius at the top of the drawing.

structure is shown in Figure 4.4.

Validation of this mounting scheme has been demonstrated using finite element modeling and analysis to calculate the stresses and displacements of the design concept.

## 4.3 Prototype construction

To verify the design performance, HCal prototypes have been assembled at Brookhaven National Laboratory and tested at the Fermilab Test Beam Facility (FTBF) as experiment T-1044.

- The first beam test was performed in February of 2014. It was during the preliminary stage of the detector development. The goals included characterization of the light yield of the full detector for hadronic showers, as well as an investigation of the energy response and calibration procedures. This prototype reflects an earlier iteration of the design, where both the Inner and Outer HCal were located outside of the solenoid magnet. In addition, fiber routing from this earlier design has since been further optimized.

- The second beam test was performed in April of 2016. The prototype configuration was intended for mid-rapidity configuration in the sPHENIX detector and reflects the current positions of the Inner and Outer HCal.

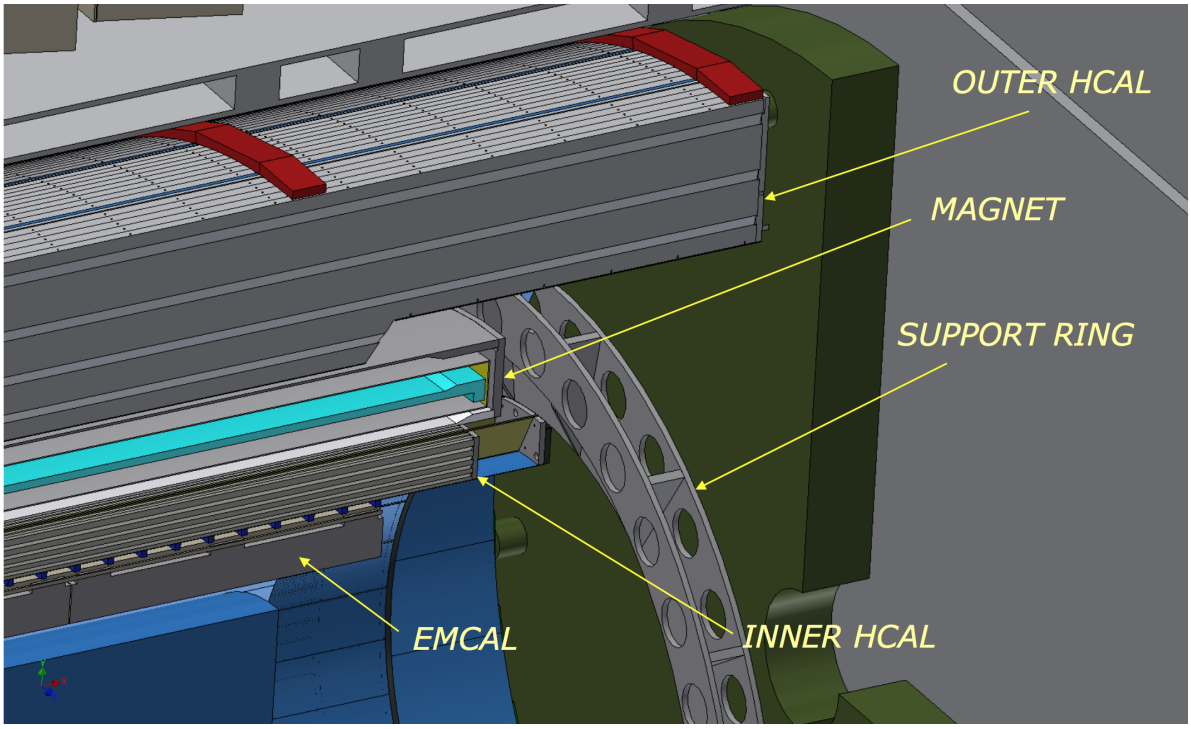



**Figure 4.4:** The HCal with support structure.

- The third beam test was performed in January 2017. The calorimeter was configured in a manner that mimics the high-rapidity configuration of sPHENIX. The same steel was used as in the 2016 test. The main goal for this phase was to understand the performance in the high-rapidity configuration.

- Additional beam test data was collected in 2018 with the high-rapidity HCal configuration with improved EMCal blocks and testing an aluminum frame for the inner HCal.

This section will focus on the set-up and results from the 2016 and 2017 prototype tests. The T-1044 test beam configurations include both sections of Inner and Outer HCal prototypes as well as an EMCal prototype. The Inner and Outer HCal prototypes are constructed as a small pseudorapidity and azimuthal segment ($\Delta\eta \times \Delta\phi = 0.4 \times 0.4$) of the full scale sPHENIX design. A mock cryostat, comprising three vertical plates of aluminum, was placed between the Inner and Outer HCal to provide as many radiation lengths of material as a particle would encounter traversing the sPHENIX solenoid (approximately 1.4 $X_0$).

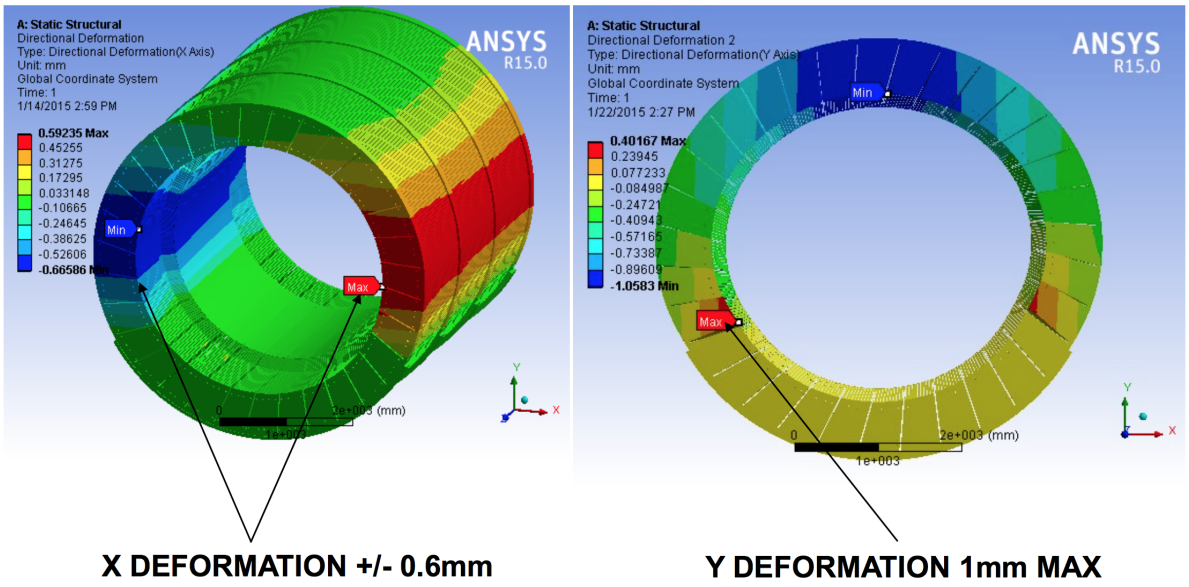
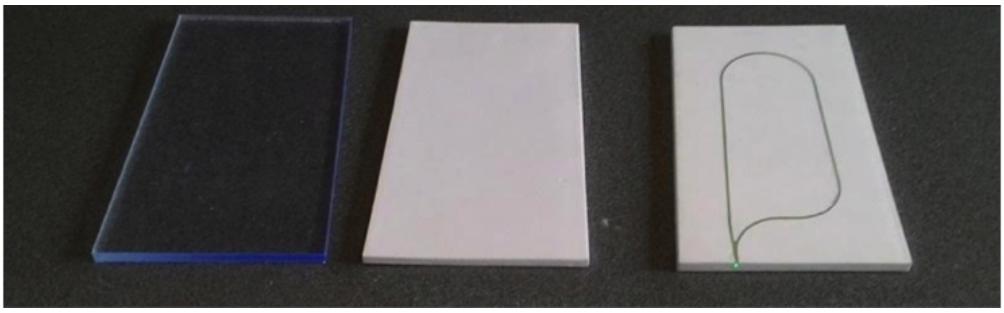



**Figure 4.5:** Results of finite element analysis of the HCal after final assembly, showing the maximum deformation of the structure.

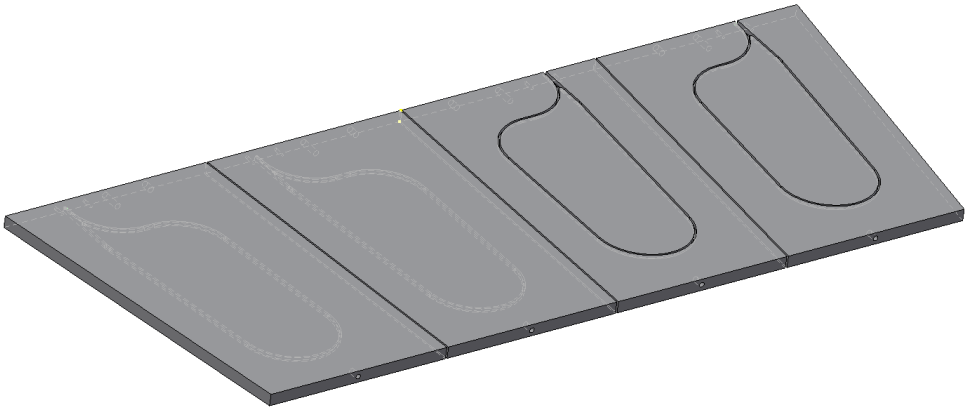
### 4.3.1 Tile Construction

Figure 4.6 (a) shows the tile production steps for the Inner HCal. The design of the Outer HCal tiles are similar, but the Outer HCal tiles are larger to accommodate the larger radius of the Outer HCal. The scintillation light produced in the tiles by ionization from charged particles is contained within the tile and reflected diffusely by a reflective coating and reflective tile wrapping. The light is absorbed by the fiber embedded in the scintillator. Figure 4.6 (b) shows the fiber routing patterns for the tiles used in the 2016 study. As shown in Figure 4.6 (c), the two ends of the fiber are brought together at the outer radius of the tile where a small plastic mount supports a $3 \times 3$ mm$^2$ SiPM at the fiber exit. The fiber exit is orthogonal to the tile edge and glued at a depth in the tile that allows for installation of the SiPM centered around the fiber exits. The air gap between the fiber ends and the face of the SiPM allows the emitted light to spread over the face of the SiPM, reducing the probability of optical saturation resulting from two or more photons impinging on the same pixel. A gap of 0.75 mm satisfies the following two requirements: (1) there be no more than a 5% variation in the SiPM response when fibers and SiPM are misaligned by 0.2 mm; (2) no more than 20% loss of light outside of SiPM sensitive area.

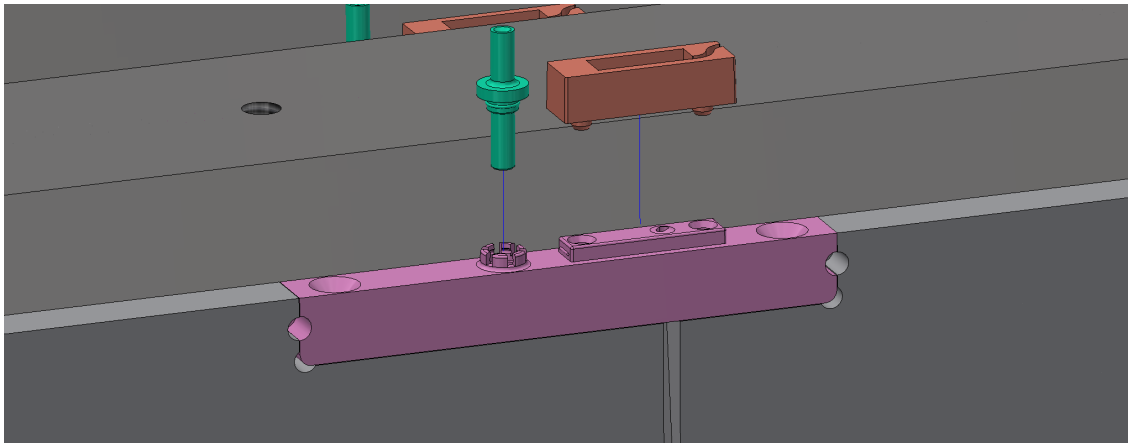
Scintillating tiles for the calorimeter are manufactured by the Uniplast Company in Vladimir, Russia. A dry mix of polystyrene granules, PTP, and POPOP is melted and extruded, producing a continuous band of hot scintillating plastic 25 cm wide. The



**(a)** Inner HCal scintillator tiles at different stages of production. The tiles shown are after the extruded scintillator is cut to size (left), after application of the reflective coating (middle) and after the groove for the fiber is cut.



**(b)** Inner HCal tile design patterns



**(c)** Plastic coupler to attach the SiPM at the fiber exit

**Figure 4.6:** HCal tile production. (a) Inner HCal scintillating tiles in several stages of production. From left to right tiles are machined, then coated, and then the WLS fiber is embedded. (b) 4 scintillating tiles arranged symmetrically around $\eta = 0$ to be inserted between the steel absorber plates. (c) SiPM installation at the fiber exit using a plastic coupler.

scintillator is then cut into 2 m long pieces. After passing inspection for defects and discolorations, these pieces are mechanically machined into the tiles according to the specified dimensions. The tiles are then placed in a bath of aromatic solvents resulting in the development of a white diffuse reflective coating over the whole tile surface with an average thickness of 50 $\mu$m. This process also removes microscopic non-uniformities normally present on the surface of extruded plastic, which decreases aging and improves the ability of the tile to withstand pressure without crazing. It also enhances the efficiency of light collection in tiles with embedded fibers. The coated tiles are then grooved and WLS fibers are embedded. The fibers are glued using optical epoxy (EPO-TEK 301) with special care given to the fiber position at the exit from the tile. The fibers are cut at the tile edge and polished by hand.

### 4.3.2 Tile Testing

To determine the light response across the tiles, various studies have been performed. In one study, an LED with a collimator is attached to a mount on a two-dimensional rail system with very accurate stepper motors. This allows an automated analysis with very high positional precision. The LED scans of the Outer HCal tiles consist of 174 points in the long direction ($X$) and 54 points in the short direction ($Y$) for a total of 9,396 points. The scan positions are 0.5 cm (approximately the LED spot size) apart in each direction. The principal disadvantage of an LED scan is that light is inserted into the tile directly rather than being induced by ionizing radiation. During the FTBF test beam running, a "tile mapper" was constructed and placed on a two-dimensional motion table. The motion table moves up/down and left/right, keeping the position along the beam direction fixed. The tile mapper included four Outer HCal tiles placed perpendicular to the beam direction, so that movement on the motion table corresponds to different positions on the tile face. Each tile is read out individually, which enables a detailed study of the light response as a function of position. The scan consists of 20 total positions, 10 positions focused on the inner part of the tile and 10 focused on the outer part of the tile. A few of the outer scan positions fall near the edge and are excluded from the analysis. This study was performed with a 16 GeV negative pion beam.

Figure 4.7 shows the LED scan of an Outer HCal tile using a 405 nm UV LED. Additional scans were performed using 375 and 361 nm UV LEDs with similar results. The overlaid black circles indicate the positions on the tiles used in beam scan described in the previous paragraph. The relative positional accuracy of the points is 0.2-0.3 cm. The numbers show the ratio of the average ADC value of the 16 GeV pion data to the average ADC value of the LED scan for that position. Note that the same tile was not used in the two studies and the normalization is arbitrarily chosen so that the numerical values are near unity.

Most of the points have ratio values close to unity, indicating good agreement between the 16 GeV pion data and the LED data. The points close to the SiPM, which can be seen as the red region in the upper left, show a downward trend in the ratio values, suggesting

that the intense bright spot in the LED data is not as significant in the 16 GeV pion data. Additionally, the set of five points near 150 mm in the Y position and less than 200 mm in the X position, are systematically lower than the LED data and their positions appear to overlap the embedded WLS fiber. This is most likely due to the fact that, in the LED scan, some of the light from the LED is captured directly by the fiber, so there is a modest enhancement at the fiber that is not present in the 16 GeV pion data. Both sets of five inner points, however, show a decreasing trend as the points get close to the SiPM.

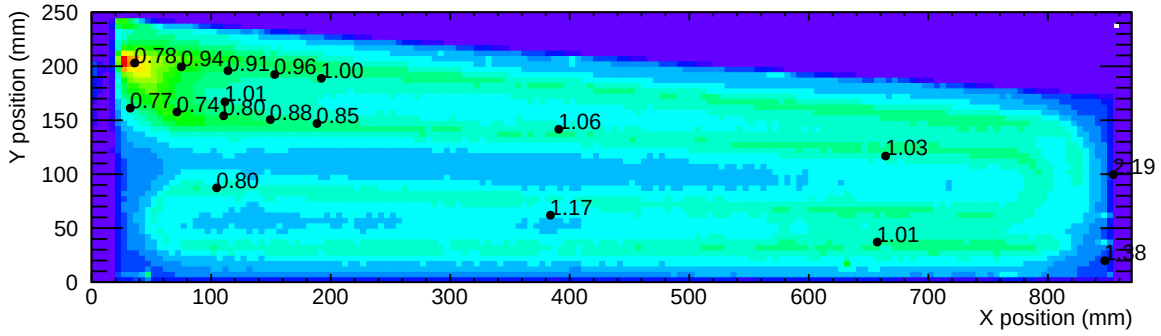



**Figure 4.7:** LED response of a scintillation Outer HCal tile with tile mapper scan data overlaid as black points. The numerical value shown at each point is the normalized ratio of the response to the beam to the response to the LED.

Figure 4.8 shows the average ADC value for each scan position as a function of the distance from the SiPM. While the 16 GeV pion data do not show as much of an enhancement near the SiPM as the LED scan, it can be seen that for points less than 15 cm away from the SiPM that there is a strong rise in the average ADC as the distance to the SiPM decreases. This is most likely due to the fact that some of the light in the fiber is carried in the cladding, which has a very short attenuation length, and is therefore lost for most positions in the tile. Studies of small double-ended scintillating tiles have indicated that up to 50% of the light is carried in the cladding, though this is with LED light rather than scintillation light. Here the results indicate that about 33% of the light is carried in the cladding. The area in which more light is collected due to light being present in the cladding is of order 5 $cm^2$ right around the SiPM mounting, which is at the back of the calorimeter. The spatial density of shower particles is lowest at the back of the calorimeter and therefore this small amount of additional light has a negligible effect on the determination of the shower energy.

### 4.3.3 Assembly

Figure 4.9 (a), (b) shows the fully assembled Inner and Outer HCal prototypes. The major components are 20 steel absorber plates and 80 scintillating tiles which are read out with SiPMs along the outer radius of the detector. The 2016 and 2017 prototype Inner HCal was based on an earlier design with tapered plates and five tiles per tower. The 2018 prototype

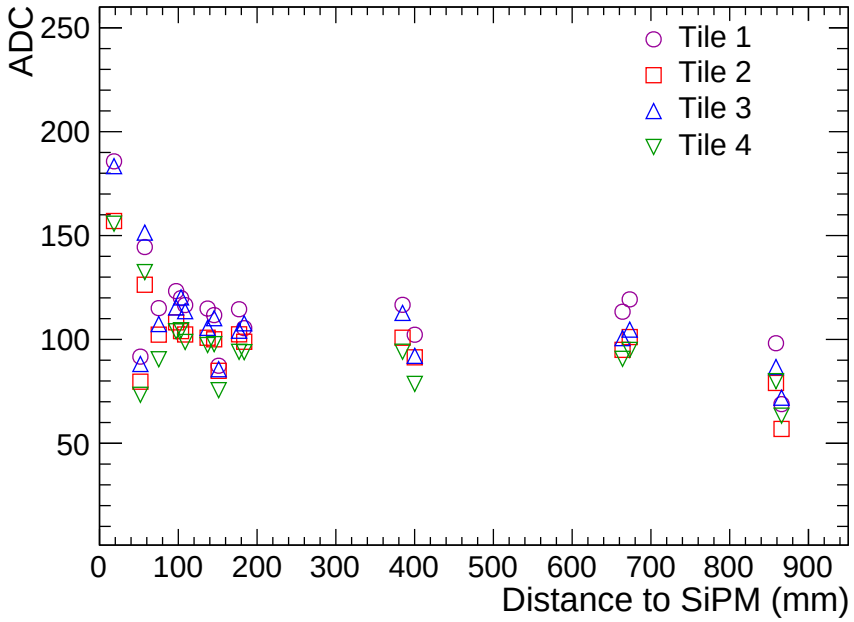
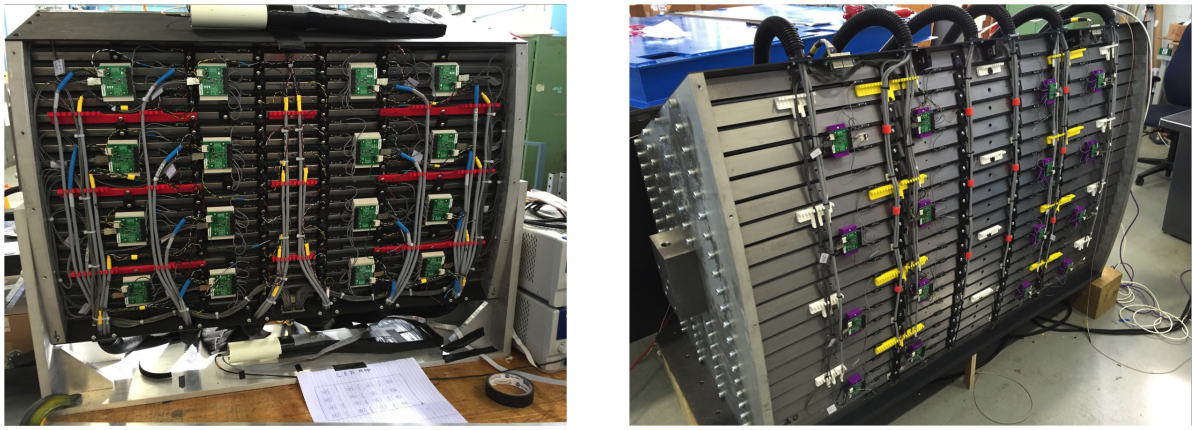



**Figure 4.8:** Outer HCal tile scan using 16 GeV pion beam. Average ADC value in the tile plotted as a function of distance from the SiPM. The points below 150 mm indicate an enhancement close to the SiPM.

tested the design for the Inner HCal with flat plates and four tiles per tower. The Outer HCal prototype is unchanged.

The SiPMs from five tiles are connected passively to a preamplifier channel. This resulted in a total of 16 towers, 4 in $\phi$ by 4 in $\eta$, equipped with SiPM sensors, preamplifiers, and cables carrying the differential output of the preamplifiers to the digitizer system. Sixteen preamplifier boards corresponding to the 16 towers are visible. In order to make the whole system light tight, the front and back sides were covered with electrically conductive ABS/PVC plastic. This material quickly diverts damaging static charges if there is a buildup. Corners were sealed with light tight black tape. No light leaks were observed during the entire data taking period.

Since the same bias voltage is supplied to all five SiPMs in a given tower, the SiPMs must be gain matched so that their responses are the same. The SiPMs are sorted and grouped to towers according to the manufacturer's measurements. The SiPM sensors, preamplifiers, and cables are arranged on the outer radius of the Inner HCal. The interface boards mounted on the side of the modules monitor the local temperatures and leakage currents, distribute the necessary voltages, and can provide bias corrections for changes in temperature and leakage current.



(a) (b)

**Figure 4.9:** Fully assembled (a) Inner and (b) Outer HCal test beam prototypes. Each section has 20 steel absorber plates stacked together and 80 scintillating tiles are inserted between them. SiPM read out from five tiles are ganged together as a tower. This results in a total of 16 towers equipped with SiPM sensors, preamplifiers, and cables carrying the differential output of the preamplifiers to the digitizer system.

### 4.3.4 Prototype Calibration

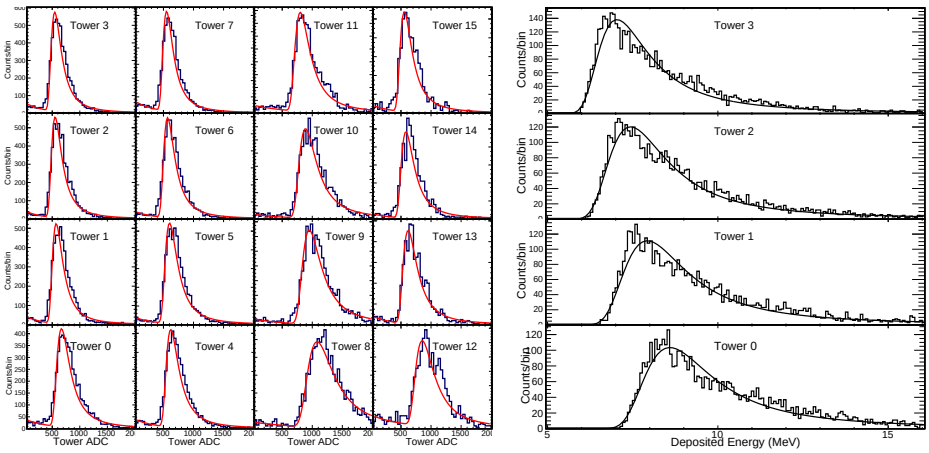
The initial HCal calibration was performed using cosmic MIP events in order to equalize the response of each tower. A set of cosmic MIP events was recorded prior to the test beam data taking in order to calibrate the detector. The cosmic MIP events were triggered with scintillator paddles positioned at the top and bottom of the HCal (in the $\phi$ direction as seen from the interaction point). In each run, four vertical towers are scanned from top to bottom (e.g. Tower 0-3 in Figure 4.10). This yields eight individual runs in order to fully calibrate both the Inner and Outer HCal sections. Figure 4.10 (a) shows the ADC distributions in the $4 \times 4$ Inner HCal towers. Each spectrum is fit with a function that is the sum of an exponential and a Landau distribution, where the exponential function corresponds to the background and the Landau function represents the MIP events. As seen in Figure 4.10, the background component is relatively small. Clear cosmic MIP peaks are observed in all towers.

The corresponding simulation of cosmic muons is performed with 4 GeV muons (the mean muon energy at sea level) moving from the top to bottom of the HCal prototype with the standard GEANT4 setup discussed in Section 8. Figure 4.10 (b) shows energy deposition in only one column of towers. The mean energy deposited by the cosmic muons in the active material of each tower is approximately 8 MeV for the Inner HCal. Because of the tilted plate design, towers at the bottom of the Inner HCal have more deposited energy than the top ones. This feature was first observed in data and then confirmed by the simulations. This simulation was used to calibrate the ADC signal in each tower to the corresponding

energy loss in the test beam. Once the ADC signal height, $I(ch)$, is determined by a functional fit to the ADC timing samples, the energy deposited is calculated by:

$$E(ch) = I(ch)\frac{E_{dep}^{cosmic}(ch)}{E_{dep}^{ADC}(ch) \times SF(muon)}, \tag{4.1}$$

where $E_{dep}^{cosmic}(ch)$ is the total deposited energy extracted from the GEANT4 simulations, $E_{dep}^{ADC}(ch)$ is the ADC signal height measured from cosmic data, and $SF(muon)$ is the muon sampling fraction.




**(a)** **(b)**

**Figure 4.10:** Tower to tower calibration for the Inner and Outer HCal was done with cosmic muons. (a) Measured raw ADC spectra of cosmic ray muon events in the Inner HCal. (b) Inner HCal cosmic muon energy deposition in simulation in one column. Muons were simulated at 4 GeV moving from the top to bottom. Energy depositions in the bottom towers are higher due to the tilted plate design where muons have to go through a longer path through the scintillating tiles.

## 4.4 Prototype performance

### 4.4.1 HCal Standalone Measurements

HCal standalone data were collected with only the inner and outer sections of the HCal in the beam line and no EMCal in front. In this configuration, electromagnetic showers generally start earlier in the calorimeter and deposit most of their energy in the Inner HCal. The hadronic showers, however, are typically deeper than the electromagnetic showers and deposit most of their energy in the Outer HCal. The beam is adjusted to

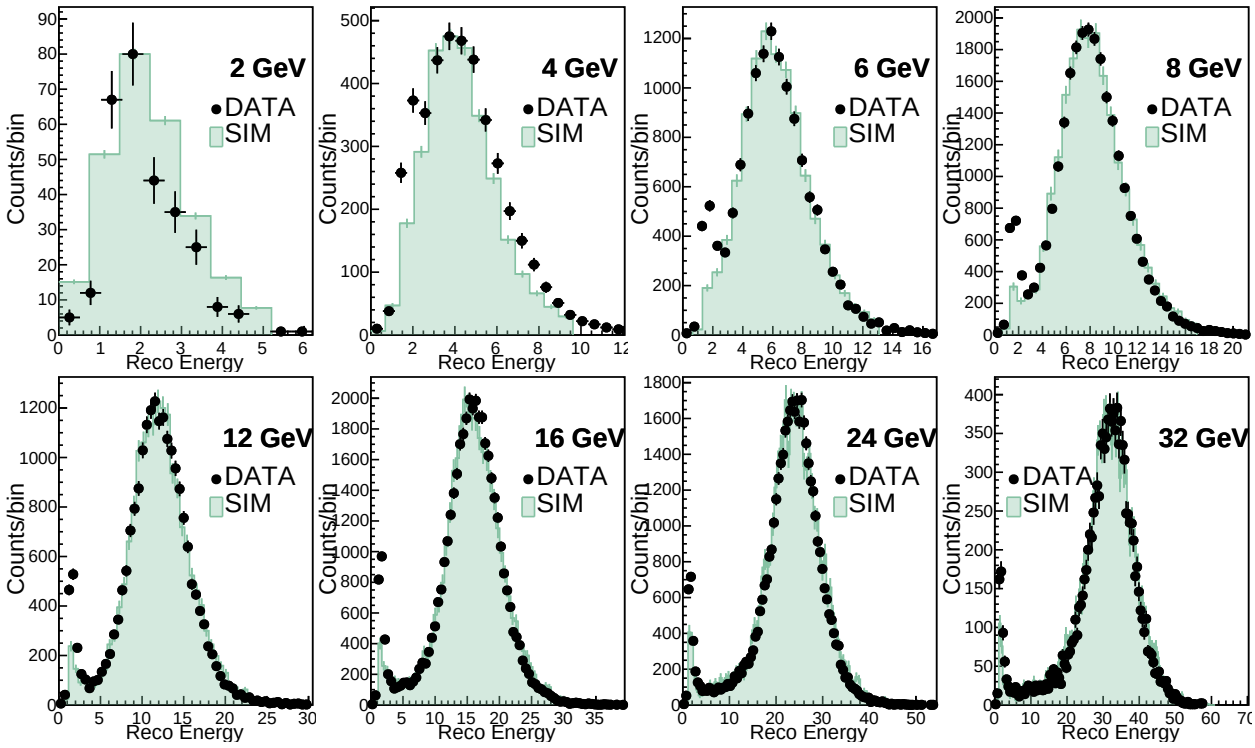



**Figure 4.11:** Hadron reconstruction in the standalone HCal setup. Calibrated $4 \times 4$ tower energies were added together from the inner and the Outer HCal. The simulation is shown by the filled histogram, and the solid points are the data. Both are in good agreement. The peak at the lower energies in the data corresponds to the small fraction of muon events that pass through the HCal leaving only the minimum ionizing energy, which were not simulated.

be in the middle of the prototypes in order to maximize the hadron shower containment in the $4 \times 4$ Inner and Outer HCal towers. Data were collected with negatively charged particle beams with energies between 2 GeV and 32 GeV, which contain an admixture of mainly electrons and pions. Electron and pion events were tagged using the two beamline Cherenkov counters. Hodoscope and veto cuts based on the beam location were applied but no significant effect on the energy resolution due to the beam position was found. Both high and low gain signals from the HCal towers were collected but only low gain channels are used for analysis.

The energy from all of the towers of both the Inner and Outer HCal are summed to determine the reconstructed energy:

$$E_{HCAL} = Gain_{inner} E_{inner} + Gain_{outer} E_{outer}, \tag{4.2}$$

where $E_{inner}$ and $E_{outer}$ are the sum of the calibrated tower energy ($\Sigma_{ch} E(ch)$) of the Inner and Outer HCal, respectively. The asymmetry between the two sections is defined as

$$A_{HCAL} = \frac{E_{inner} - E_{outer}}{E_{inner} + E_{outer}}. \tag{4.3}$$

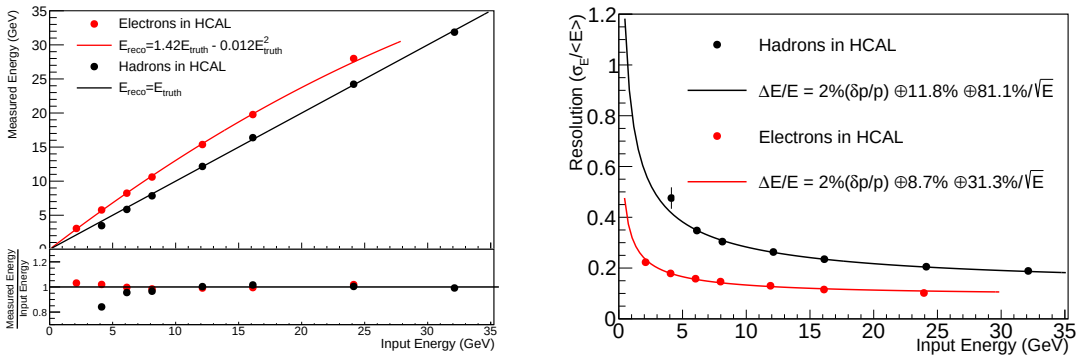



**Figure 4.12:** HCal standalone measurements without the EMCal in front. (a) HCal linearity for electrons and hadrons. The lower panel shows the ratio of reconstructed energy and the fits. (b) Corresponding HCal resolution for hadrons and electrons. The beam momentum spread ($\delta p/p \approx 2\%$) is unfolded and included in the resolution calculation.

The gain calibration constants, $Gain_{inner}$ and $Gain_{outer}$, are determined in order to minimize the dependence of $E_{HCAL}$ on $A_{HCAL}$ and the deviation of $E_{HCAL}$ from the beam energy. The same gain calibration constants are used in analysis of all beam energies.

Figure 4.11 shows a comparison of the reconstructed hadron energy between data and simulation. The simulation (filled histogram) and data (solid points) are in excellent agreement for 6-32 GeV beam energies. The data have a beam momentum spread of 2% which has been included in the simulations as well. At lower energies, hadron measurements are poor due to lower fractions of hadrons in the beam as well as the increased beam size. The peak at the lower energies in the data corresponds to the small fraction of muon events that pass through the HCal leaving only the minimum ionizing energy. The corresponding energy resolution and linearity for hadrons are shown in Figure 4.12. The data are fit with the function, $\Delta E/E = \sqrt{(\delta p/p)^2 + a^2 + b^2/E}$, as labeled on the plot. A beam momentum spread ($\delta p/p \approx 2\%$) is unfolded and included in the resolution calculation. The hadron energy resolution is $11.8 \oplus 81.1\%/\sqrt{E}$, which matches the expected resolution from simulations very well. The HCal was calibrated for hadronic showers and then used to measure electron showers. The electron resolution for the standalone HCal is $8.1 \oplus 31.3\%/\sqrt{E}$. This demonstrates that the HCal can assist the EMCal by measuring the electron energy leaking from the EMCal into the HCal.

As seen in Figure 4.12 (a), the hadron energy response is well described by a linear fit where the reconstructed energy is the same as the input energy. The bottom panel shows the ratio between the reconstructed energy and the fit. The 4 GeV hadron measurement is poor because the hadron peak is difficult to distinguish from the muon MIP peak due to their proximity, as seen in Figure 4.11. The response of the electrons is described well with a second order polynomial due to non-linear e/h response.

### 4.4.2 Hadron Measurement With The Full Calorimeter System (sPHENIX Configuration)

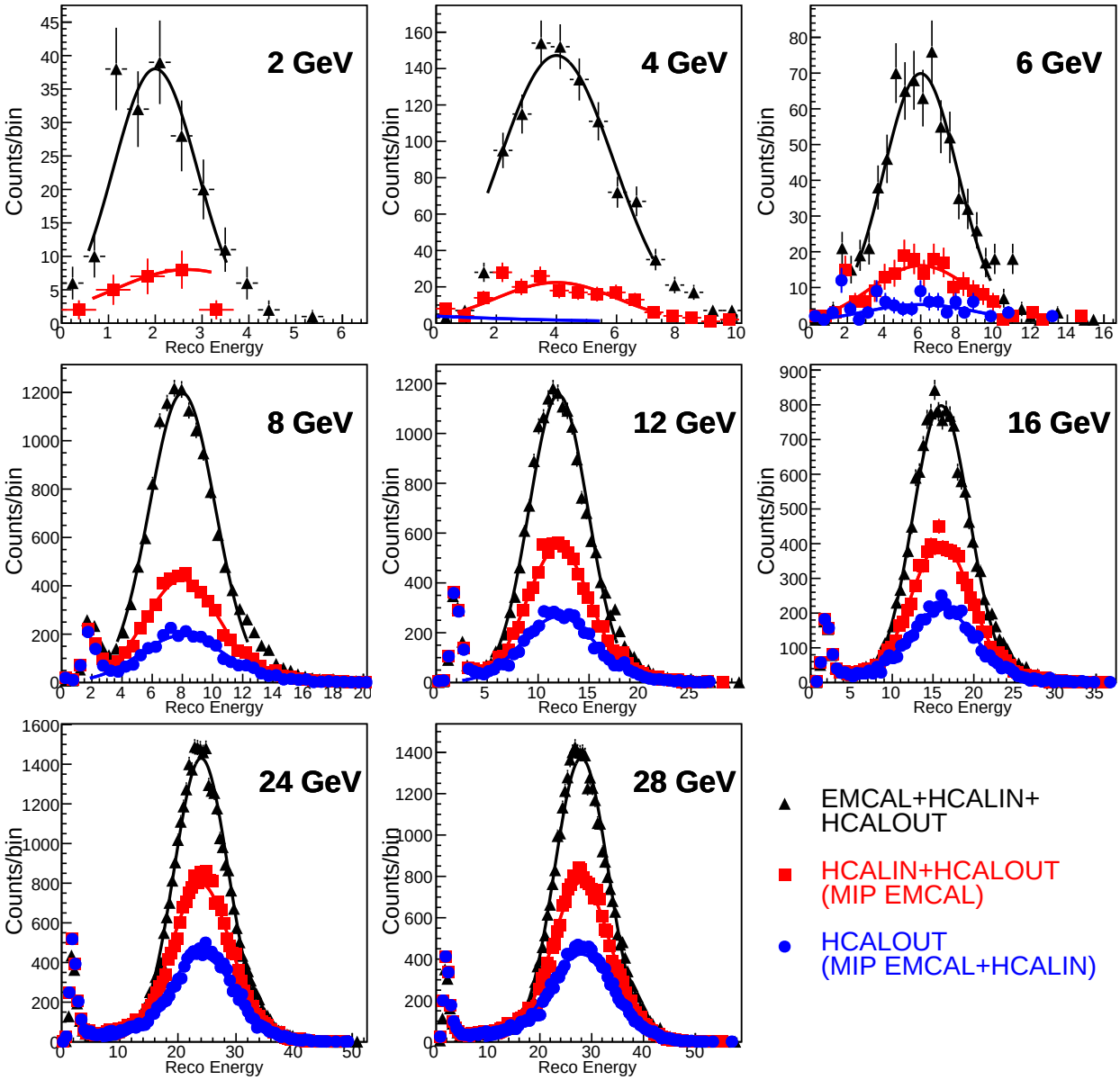
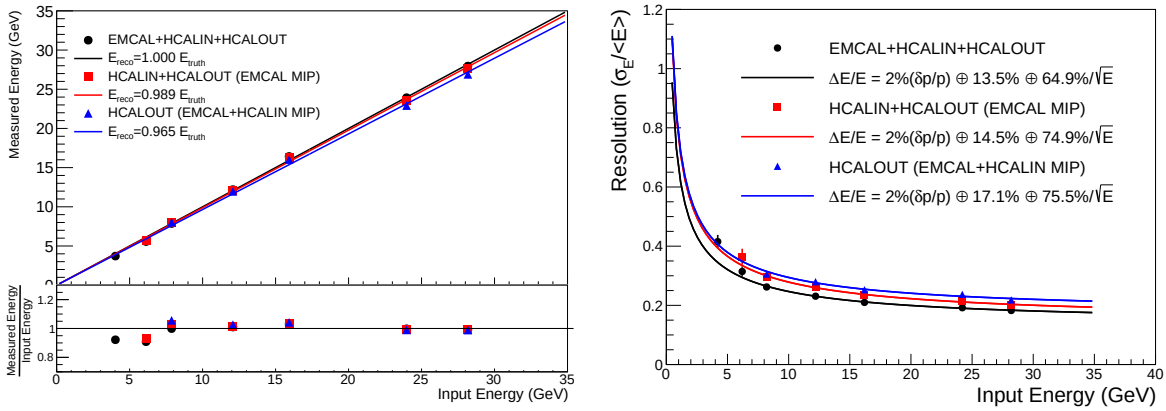



**Figure 4.13:** Hadron energy measurements with combined EMCal+HCal detector. Events were sorted into three categories: 1) HCALOUT where particles pass through the EMCal and Inner HCal and then shower in the Outer HCal; 2) HCALIN+HCALOUT where particles pass through the EMCal and then shower in either HCal; 3) EMCAL+HCALIN+HCALOUT which includes all showers irrespective of their starting position.

The full hadron measurement is done in a configuration that includes all three segments of calorimeters including the EMCal in front of the HCal. In this configuration the total energy will be reconstructed by summing up the digitized data from both the EMCal




**(a)** **(b)**

**Figure 4.14:** Hadron (a) linearity and (b) resolution measured with the combined EMCal+HCal (sPHENIX configuration) detector setup. Three sets of data points corresponds to the event categories shown in Figure 4.13. The bottom panel of (a) shows the ratio of the measured energy and corresponding fits.

and the HCal. The development of hadronic showers is a complicated process with significant fluctuations in the reconstructed energy compared to electromagnetic showers. Determining the shower starting position helps to understand the longitudinal shower development fluctuations. Therefore, in this analysis, the events are sorted into three categories depending on their longitudinal shower profile:

- HCALOUT: Events where hadrons pass through the EMCal and Inner HCal and primarily shower in the Outer HCal alone or pass through the full calorimeter system without showering. These events are shown as the blue points in Figure 4.13.
- HCAL: Events where hadrons pass through the EMCal. In these events, hadron showers start in the Inner HCal, or the Outer HCal, or pass through all three calorimeters. These events are shown as red points in Figure 4.13.
- FULL: This represents all hadrons irrespective of when they start showering. They are shown as black points in Figure 4.13. These include hadron showers that start in the EMCal, Inner HCal, Outer HCal, or pass through all three calorimeter systems.

These event categories help diagnose each calorimeter independently as well as improve our understanding of the leakage variations, shower containment, and longitudinal fluctuations of particle showers depending on their starting position. The EMCal energy was balanced with respect to the HCal in a similar way, by changing the gain factors described in the previous section. As expected, Figure 4.13 shows the fraction of HCAL or HCALOUT events increases as a function of beam energy. The peaks at the lower

measured energy correspond to the small fractions of muon events that pass through the calorimeters leaving only the minimum ionizing energy.

The corresponding hadron resolution is shown in Figure 4.14 (b). Data are fit in a similar manner with $\Delta E/E = \sqrt{(\delta p/p)^2 + a^2 + b^2/E}$, i.e. with a fixed beam momentum spread term of $\delta p/p \approx 2\%$ subtracted from the constant term in quadrature. HCALOUT showers that pass through the EMCal and Inner HCal have a resolution of $17.1 \oplus 75.5\%/\sqrt{E}$. HCAL showers that pass through the EMCal have a resolution of $14.5 \oplus 74.9\%/\sqrt{E}$. A combined resolution of all the showers irrespective of their starting position (FULL) is $13.5 \oplus 64.9\%/\sqrt{E}$. The hadron resolution improves without the MIP cuts because it reduces the overall shower fluctuations and leakages.

The linearity is shown in Figure 4.14 (a). The bottom panel shows the ratio of the measured energy and the corresponding fits. The FULL reconstructed showers are normalized to the input energy. This results in the HCAL and HCALOUT reconstructed showers linearity falling slightly below the input energies, due to higher leakage in those event categories. In all cases the single hadron energy response exceeds the sPHENIX performance specifications.

## 4.5 Ongoing developments

### 4.5.1 Test Beam in 2018

Building on the success of the three HCal prototypes, a fourth prototype was tested in the FNAL test beam in 2018. In addition to a new EMCal prototype and the same Outer HCal reused from the 2017 beam test, the 2018 prototype consisted of two prototype Inner HCal sectors with the flat plate design, one with hardened aluminum alloy and the other with steel. Previous beam tests used the tapered plates for the Inner HCal prototype, as it was designed and built prior to the design change to flat plates and four tiles per tower. Simulations studies have demonstrated the change from tapered to flat plates has little effect on the performance; nevertheless, such a change in design warrants confirmation with a beam test. The 2018 beam test tests the final designs for all components of the calorimeter system and is expected to be the final beam test. Analysis of the 2018 data is ongoing.

### 4.5.2 Self Trigger

This prototype was calibrated with cosmic muon events triggered with external scintillator paddles positioned at the top and bottom of the HCal. As noted in the previous section, this procedure successfully equalized the response of each tower. The calibrated energy sum agrees with the simulation very well. However, because of the cylindrical geometry

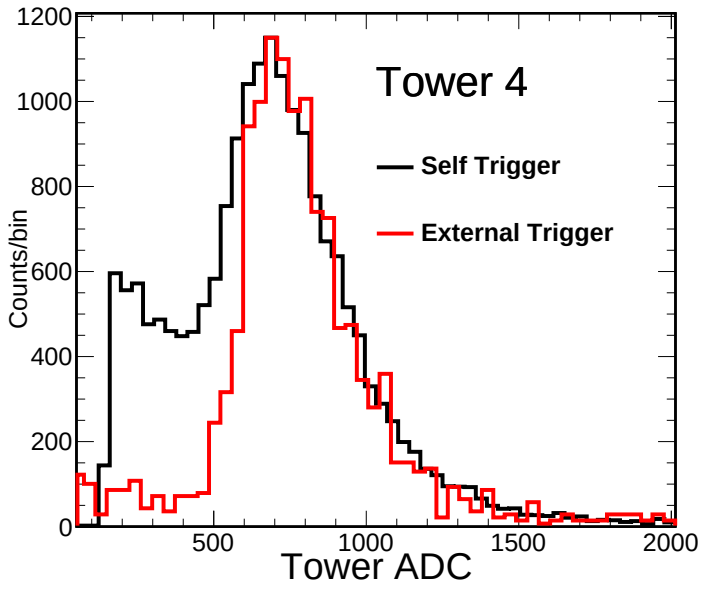



**Figure 4.15:** ADC distribution in a inner HCAL tower for cosmic muons. Two trigger configurations are compared: the two scintillator paddle cosmic trigger and the self trigger.

of the completed sPHENIX and the time required for collecting enough cosmic ray events, this triggering method can not easily be scaled to the full geometry, which includes 1536 towers (64 in $\phi$ × 24 in $\eta$) for each HCal.

A self trigger configuration has been tested with the HCal prototype. This trigger configuration removes the single tower backgrounds, improving the rejection factor. The algorithm is based on requiring at least $N$ towers with signal greater than some threshold, thus removing a lot of single tower noise events. The trigger algorithm is executed by the FPGA on the data buffer. The steps of the algorithm are as follows:

- Get an 8 bit signal amplitude. For each tower in the HCal, take the 12 bit post sample minus the pre sample to get a signal amplitude. The separation of the post and pre samples is user definable, but was set to be 5 samples. If the amplitude is below 0, it is set to 0. If the amplitude is above 2040, it is set to 255. Otherwise, the bottom 3 bits are dropped from the amplitude to produce an 8 bit amplitude value. Note that since we use a bipolar ADC, the 12 bits are effectively only 11 bits. The above 0 and 2040 limits are to check for over and underflow of those 11 bits, which can happen since we operate on 12 bits.

- Get the number of towers above single tower threshold. Sum up the number of towers above the single channel threshold.

- Scale by the gain factors. Scale the 8 bit amplitude for each tower by the gain scale

factors. The gain factor allows one to gain-balance the towers at the trigger level. After the scaling, the amplitude is a 16 bit value. To return to an 8 bit value, the top 2 bits and bottom 6 bits are dropped, i.e. the amplitude is divided by 64.

- Sum tower amplitudes. Sum up all the tower amplitudes to get the total sum in a HCal module. Since the sum is a 8 bit number, if the sum is above 255 it gets set to 255.

The above algorithm is run for Inner and Outer HCal independently. We require at least three out of the sixteen towers to be higher than a common threshold to define a self trigger. Figure 4.15 shows a comparison of the energy deposited in a tower when triggered with self trigger and external trigger. A clear Landau distribution is seen in both setups. The self trigger configuration contains a small number of noise events which can be further cleaned with appropriate geometry cuts. This method also confirmed our calibrations for both sections of the HCal prototypes. While this is still in a developmental phase, the self trigger can be very useful calibrating the full HCal detector.

### 4.5.3 LED System

A LED pulser system has been developed for tracking short term gain changes caused by temperature compensation of the SiPMs and effects of increased leakage current caused by radiation damage. The system has been integrated into the Slow Controls system to eliminate additional cabling and circuitry on the detector. In the HCal prototype from January 2017, five UV LEDs were located on the controller. Since each tower has five individual tiles, each tile was connected to distinct LEDs via optical fibers. The tower response was measured when each tile was illuminated separately or in some combination. It helps to quickly identify the dead channels and stability of their light outputs during data taking.

### 4.5.4 Tile testing setup

Since the first prototype productions of tiles, the need for additional quality control tests at Uniplast was realized. The final thickness of each tile produced for the 2017 prototype was measured and recorded at several locations along the tile to ensure they satisfied the tolerance requirements to fit cleanly between the steel plates. Additional quality control tests to ensure fibers where not damaged and could provide light output were also performed. The results of each test were provided to BNL along with the tiles.

In addition, a tile tester is being prepared by collaborators at Georgia State University and Debrecen which will further test the light output by the fibers at Uniplast prior to shipping. The tester will measure the signal output by a particular set of SiPMs when cosmic rays

pass through a stack of tiles. This will allow Uniplast to confirm that the tiles and fibers are emitting a consistent amount of light throughout the final production.

### 4.5.5 Setup of assembly and testing factory

Space in Bldg. 912 (AGS floor) has been set up for assembly and testing of the outer HCal (HCal factory). The factory contains four assembly tables to work on four sectors in parallel, storage for all 32 sectors, and a tent for storage of scintillating tiles and equipment needed for the assembly and testing. The electronics used for the beam tests of the prototypes has been set up in the factory and will be used to test the sectors after assembly. The test will be comprised of a live test of each individual tile with help of the LED calibration system, as well as a cosmics calibration based on the electronics self trigger described earlier. A mock-up of the cable routing of a half-sector has successfully been carried out in order to determine cable length, find the best routing, and demonstrate feasibility give the space constraints on the back face of the detector. Assembly and testing of the first six sectors will be carried out this summer and fall.

# Chapter 5

# Calorimeter Electronics

The sPHENIX design for electronics is based on a common electronics design for both the EMCal and HCal detectors using off the shelf components. This approach will reduce the overall cost and minimize the design time for the electronics. A block diagram of the calorimeter readout chain is shown in Fig. 5.1. The technical specifications for the calorimeter electronics are set by physics requirements and are summarized in Table 5.1. For the EMCal, the expected energy range for photons is expected to be 1 GeV to 50 GeV. For a 1 GeV photon incident on the center of an EMCal tower, 80% of the energy will be deposited in the central tower with 20% of the energy shared among the 8 surrounding towers. This implies a minimum energy of 25 MeV and a dynamic range of $10^3$ to cover the range of expected energy deposition in a single tower of the EMCal.

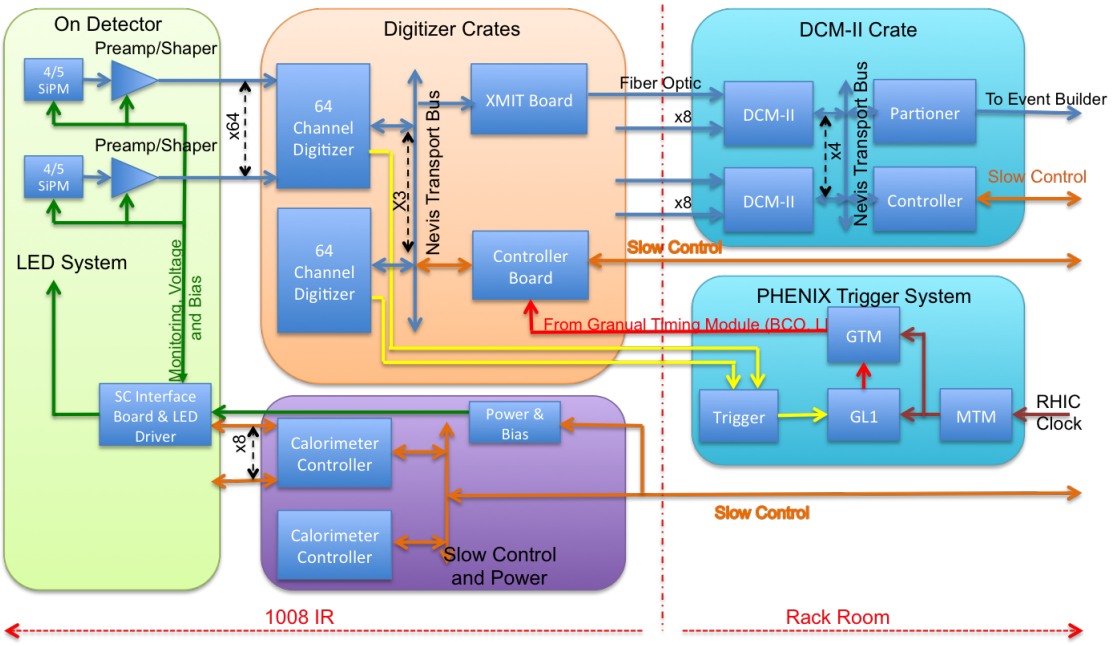



**Figure 5.1:** Block diagram of the calorimeter readout chain. The optical signals are amplified locally and driven as differential analog signals to the digitizers located near the detector. Upon receipt of a level one trigger, the digital data for triggered event is transmitted via optical fiber to the sPHENIX data acquisition system. for recording.

The reference design uses multiple Silicon Photomultipliers (SiPMs) as the optical sensors for the calorimeters. The Analog signals from the SiPMs associated with a single tower in the calorimeters are passively summed, amplified, shaped and differentially driven to digitizer boards located in racks near the detector. The differential analog signals are received by 64 channel digitizer boards and digitized by a 14 bit ADC operating at a sampling rate 6 times the beam crossing frequency. Upon receipt of a Level-1 (L1) trigger signal, the digitized data is optically transmitted to the PHENIX DAQ.

The EMCal front end electronics for an EMCal sector module consists of $2 \times 2$ SiPM Daughter Boards which mount directly on the EMCal light guides for 4 towers, $2 \times 8$ Preamplifier Boards which connect to 4 SiPM Daughter Boards via flex cable, and an

**Table 5.1:** Technical Specifications for the Calorimeter Electronics.

| Component | Requirement | Specification |
|---|---|---|
| Optical Sensor | Pixel Size | $15 \times 15 \mu m^2$ |
| | Dynamic Range | $10^4$ |
| | PDE | 25% |
| | Gain | $10^4$ |
| | Pixels/GeV: EMCal | 1600 |
| | Pixels/GeV: HCal | |
| Amplifier/Shaper | Gain | 100 mV/pC |
| | Signal-to-Noise | 10:1 |
| | Peaking time | 30nSec |
| Digitizer | Resolution | 14 Bit (13 Bit effective) |
| | Maximum Sampling Frequency | 65 MHz |
| | Latency | 40 BCO |
| | Multi-event Buffering | 5 Events |

Interface Board which plugs into 4 Preamplifier Boards. Located in a crate near the detector are the Calorimeter Controllers, capable of controlling 8 Interface Boards. The amplified differential analog signals are driven directly to the nearby digitizers. There are a total of 384 EMCal front end channels in a EMCal 1/2 sector module.

The HCal front end electronics for an HCal module consists of SiPM Daughter Boards with a single SiPM which couples directly to an HCal tile fiber and an HCal single channel Preamplifier Board mounted next to the tower. Mounted in the center of an HCal module are two electronics interface boxes that each contain an Interface and Backplane board which provides the voltage distribution, monitoring and gain corrections. Also mounted in each box is an LED Driver board that distributes a calibration/monitoring light pulse via optical fiber to each of the tiles in an HCal module. The differential analog signals are brought directly to connectors located in one of the boxes

The analog analog signals from both the EMCal and HCal are waveform digitized using identical electronics. The digitizer system consists of a 64 channel digitizer board with 14 bit ADCs running at 6 times the beam crossing frequency (BCO), a crate controller which provides slow control for the crate, and an XMIT module which transmits the triggered data from the digitizer boards to the sPHENIX Data Acquisition System. The system is designed to read an event out in 40$\mu$Sec and operate at a level 1 trigger rate up to 15kHz. In addition to digitizing all the channels, the digitizer board is capable of producing trigger primitives which are transmitted every beam crossing over dedicated optical links to the sPHENIX trigger system.

Detailed descriptions of each of the modules for the EMCal and HCal front end electronics and digitizer system are given in the following sections. A summary of the number of boards for the full detector is given in Table 5.2.

**Table 5.2:** Electronics Component Count.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| EMCal Front End Electronics | SiPMs | 98304 |
| | SiPM Daughter Boards | 6144 |
| | Preamp Boards | 1536 |
| | Interface Boards | 384 |
| | Controller Boards | 64 |
| | Controller Crates | 4 |
| HCal Front End Electronics | SiPMs | 7680 |
| | Preamp Daughter Boards | 1536 |
| | Interface Boards | 64 |
| | LED Driver Boards | 64 |
| | Controller Boards | 8 |
| | Controller Crates | 2 |
| Digitizer Electronics Electronics | Signal Cables | 1728 |
| | Digitizer Boards | 432 |
| | XMIT Modules | 144 |
| | Controller Boards | 36 |
| | Clock Master | 36 |
| | Crates | 36 |

## 5.1 Optical Sensors

The compact nature of the EMCal and HCal detectors and the location of the EMCal and Inner HCal being inside the 1.5T solenodial field require that the optical sensors be both physically small and immune to magnetic effects. A device with large gain is also desirable in order to reduce the demands on the performance specifications of the front end analog electronics. For both the EMCal and HCal detectors, silicon photo-multipliers (SiPMs) from Hamamatsu have been chosen as optical sensor. SiPMs have the advantage that they are immune to magnetic fields, have large gain and are small in size.

### 5.1.1 Device Characteristics

SiPMs are inherently limited in their dynamic range by the number of micro-pixels in the device, as shown in Figure 5.2. Due to the digital nature of the SiPM, the usable dynamic range is significantly less than the the total number of micro-pixels. Each micro-pixel fires once per event regardless of how many photons hit it. Distributing the incident light uniformly across the active area maximizes the useful range, but for large signals it is still limited by optical saturation, that is more than one photon hitting the same micro-pixel. While increasing the number of micro-pixels would increase the dynamic range, there are trade-offs in that more micro-pixels typically means lower gain and lower photon detection efficiency, PDE.

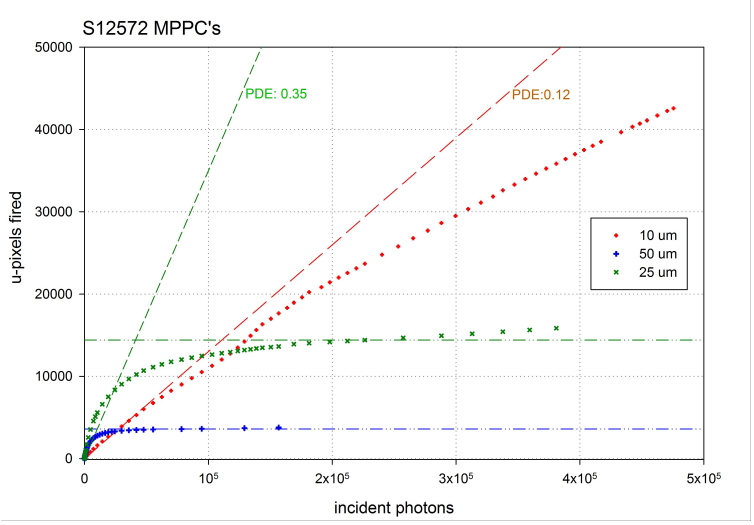



**Figure 5.2:** Optical saturation in Hamamatsu S12572 MPPCs. 10$\mu$m, 25$\mu$m, and 50$\mu$m micro-pixels

In order to achieve the required dynamic range, a device with a large number of micro-cells is required, which limits the number of devices that meet the technical specifications for the optical sensors. Hamamatsu has a number of devices with high pixel counts, high gain, and good PDE which meet the sPHENIX technical requirements. For both the EMCal and HCal detectors, the design is based on the Hamamatsu S12572-33-015P MultiPixel Photon Counters (MPPC). The device is a $3 \times 3\,\mathrm{mm}^2$ device with 40K pixels each $15 \times 15\,\mu\mathrm{m}^2$ in size. A photograph of the device is shown in Figure 5.3 and a technical drawing is shown in Figure 5.4. The properties of this device are summarized in Table 5.3. The 40K pixels of the Hamamatsu S12572-15P device limit the dynamic range of device to be $\sim 10^4$. However, the optical saturation at the upper end of the range is difficult to correct for as the device response deviates from linearity as the number of activated pixels approaches the total number of pixels in the device, so the effective pixel count is significantly less than 40K. With a PDE of $\sim$ 25% it should therefore be possible to adjust the light level to the SiPM using a mixer to place the full energy range for each tower ($\sim$ 25 MeV–50 GeV)

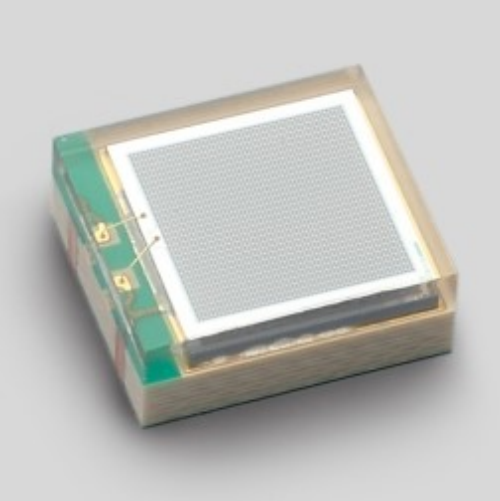


**Figure 5.3:** Hamamatsu S12572 MPPC (SiPM). The device is $3 \times 3\,\mathrm{mm}^2$ with 40,000 pixels $15\mu\mathrm{m}^2$.

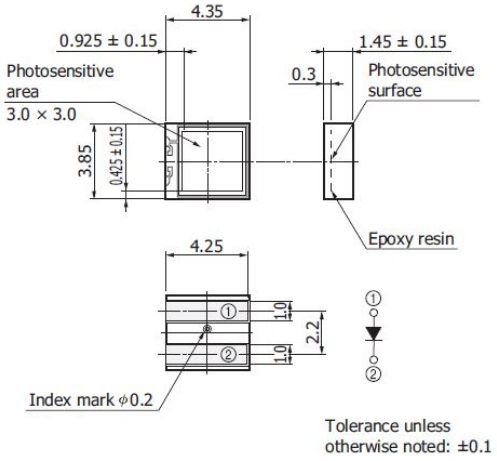



**Figure 5.4:** Hamamatsu S12572 MPPC surface mount package dimensions.

in its useful operating range. For example, if the light levels were adjusted to give 10,000 photoelectrons for 50 GeV, this would require only 200 photoelectrons/GeV, which should be easily achieved given the light level from the fibers entering the mixer.

The performance of a SiPM is affected by the temperature of the device. SiPMs show an increasing dark current and a diminishing gain with increasing temperature. Figure 5.5 shows the dependence of gain on temperature for different SiPMs and the dependence of device leakage current on temperature for Hamamatsu S12572 SiPMs of different pixel sizes. Devices with larger pixel sizes typically have higher gain, but also higher leakage current. The leakage current increases rapidly above 30 °C, suggesting the benefit of operating in 5-20 °C range. While in principle cooling could be used to mitigate the increased dark current due to radiation damage, the scale of the increase (orders of magnitude) greatly exceeds the potential benefits of cooling (factors of 2) over the temperature range 0-40 °C. Figure 5.6 shows the leakage current, signal amplitude, and signal noise performance of a S12572-015P SiPM and an sPHENIX preamp as a function of temperature.

## 5.2 Readout Electronics

The EMCal and HCal readout electronics consist of the analog front end electronics mounted directly on the detectors, and the digital back end system mounted in racks near the detector in the sPHENIX Interaction Region. The analog front end system consists of the SiPM daughter boards, Preamplifier boards, calibration and monitoring systems, and power distribution. The analog front end electronics is functionally the same for both the EMCal and HCal detectors with different packaging to account for differences in the

| Property | |
|---|---|
| active area | 3mm x 3mm |
| number of micro-pixels | 40,000 |
| micro-pixel pitch | 15 $\mu$m |
| geometric fill factor | 0.53 |
| package | surface mount |
| window | epoxy resin |
| window refractive index | 1.55 |
| operating temperature | 0-40 deg C |
| spectral response range | 320-900 nm |
| peak sensitivity wavelength | 460 nm |
| photon detection efficiency (PDE) | 0.25 |
| Dark Count Rate (typ) | 1 Mcps |
| Terminal capacitance | 320 pF |
| Gain | 230,000 |
| Gain temp coefficient | 3500 / °C |
| Breakdown voltage ($V_{br}$) | $65 \pm 10$ V |
| Recommended Operating Voltage | $V_{br}$ + 4V |
| Temp coeffic at $V_{op}$ | 60 mV / °C |

**Table 5.3:** Properties of Hamamatsu S12572-015P MPPC.

mechanical design of the 2 detector subsystems. The digitizer and power systems are common to both subsystems

### 5.2.1 HCal Electronics

An HCal module consists of $2 \times 24$ towers covering the full range in $\eta$ and 2 $\phi$ slices with the electronics mounted in the center of the module. Each of the 5 tiles that form a tower have single SiPM mounted on the SiPM Daughter Board that is attached to the edge of the tile where the wave shifting fiber ends are. The SiPMs for a tower are connected to a Preamplifier Board located in the center of the tower with a shielded cable. The signals are received on the Preamplifier Board where they are passively summed, amplified, shaped and driven differentially to the digitizer system. Located in the center of the HCal module are the HCal Backplanes, Interface Boards and LED Driver Boards. The Interface Board distributes the SiPM bias voltage and low voltage to the Preamp Boards for 24 of the towers in an HCal module. The HCal Interface Board also has ADCs for monitoring the SiPM temperatures, bias currents and voltages. The HCal Interface Board also has 24 DAC channels, 1 per tower, that is used to provide a voltage adjustment to the SiPM bias voltage to compensate for temperature variations and changes in the bias current due to increased leakage current as a result of neutron damage to the SiPM. The Interface Board plugs directly into an HCal Backplane Board, which is a passive board

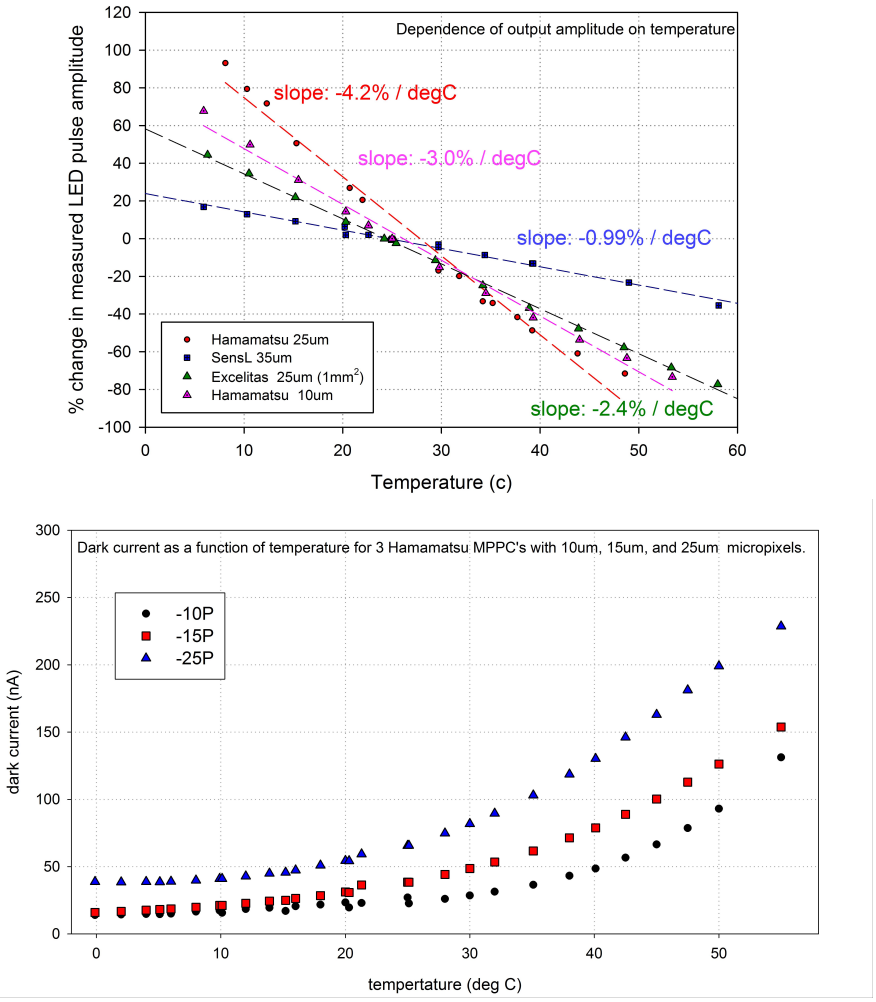



**Figure 5.5:** Percent change in LED signal amplitude vs temperature for Various SiPMs. (top) and Dependence of leakage current on Temperature in Hamamatsu S12572 MPPCs with 10$\mu$m, 15$\mu$m, and 25$\mu$m micro-pixels (bottom).

containing the cable connections for 24 towers. This arrangement allows for an HCal Interface Board to be replaced with minimal disturbance to the preamp power cables. Also connected to the HCal Interface Board is an LED Driver Board. The LED Driver Board consists of an LED driver circuits, 5 LEDs, and light mixing blocks. Twenty-four light fibers, one per tile per tower are connected to a light mixing block. Digital circuitry allows selection of which LED is pulsed and the pulse amplitude. This arrangement allows for a single tile in each of 24 towers to be illuminated independent of the other tiles in a tower for testing and calibration purposes. A bi-directional serial link connects the HCal Interface Board to a Calorimeter Controller board in a nearby crate. The Controller board transmits to the Interface Board the parameters for the temperature compensation and gain control, LED enables, pulse amplitudes and pulse triggers, and reads back the monitoring information from the Interface Board. Each Controller is capable of controlling 8 HCal

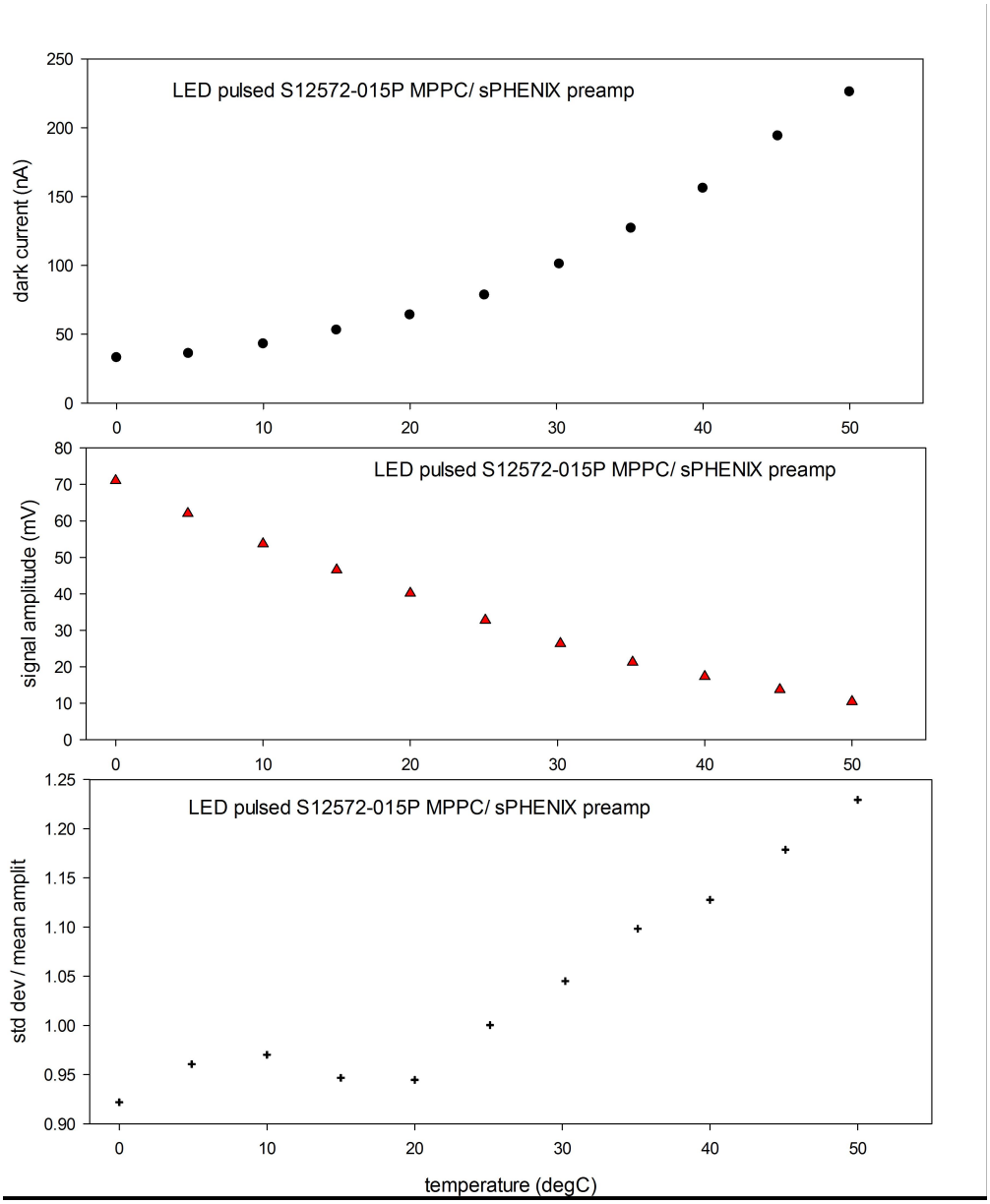



**Figure 5.6:** Performance as a function of temperature - Hamamatsu S12572-015P MPPCs with an sPHENIX preamp. Dark current as a function of temperature (top), signal (LED pulse) amplitude vs temperature (center), and for the LED signal, stddev/mean vs temperature (bottom)

Interface Boards. Each Controller board has an Ethernet connection for communications with the sPHENIX Slow Control computer. A block diagram of the HCal electronics chain is shown in Figure 5.7.

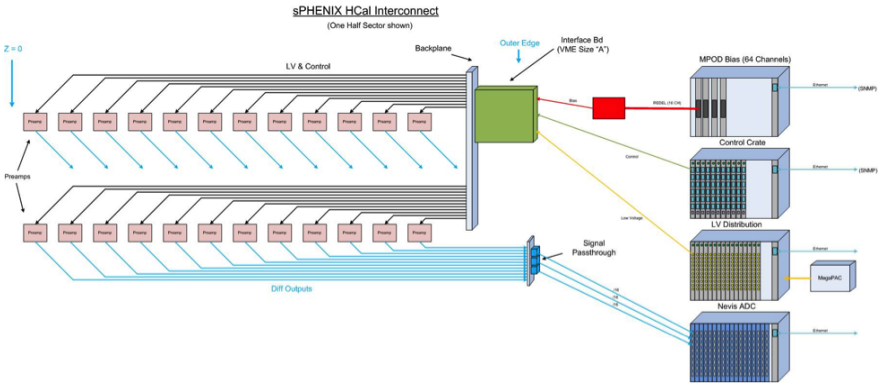



**Figure 5.7:** A block diagram showing the overall design of the HCal electronics for one half sector of the HCal. There are a total of 128 half sectors for the inner and outer HCal combined. Not shown are the connections for the LED monitoring system.

### 5.2.2 EMCal Electronics

A half sector of the EMCal consists of 384 towers in a $8 \times 48$ ($\phi \times z$) configuration. To match the mechanical layout of the EMCal towers, the EMCal analog channels are arranged in a $8 \times 2$ array on a Preamp Board matching the EMCal tower geometry. The 16 SiPMs (4 per tower) for a $2 \times 2$ array of towers are surfaced mounted on a small daughter board that also has an LED mounted in the center of the 4 towers and a thermistor for monitoring the local temperature. Four SiPM daughter boards are connected to a Preamp Board by a short flex cable. The signals from the 4 SiPMs associated with an EMCal tower are passively summed, amplified, shaped and differentially driven over shielded cable to the digitizer system located in nearby racks. Four EMCal Preamp Boards plug into an EMCal Interface Board which distributes the bias voltage and preamp low voltage. The EMCal Interface board also provides monitoring for the voltages, currents, and temperatures, alone with 64 DAC channels for bias gain adjustment and programmable LED drivers. The six EMCal Interface boards in a half sector are connected with a bi-directional serial connection to a Calorimeter Controller board. The EMCal control system is identical to the HCal control system described earlier. A block diagram of the front end electronics for one EMCal half sector is shown in Figure 5.8.

### 5.2.3 Amplifier, Shaper Driver Circuit

To improve light collection, four SiPMs will be used in parallel for the EMCal and the Inner HCal, and five for the Outer HCal. This paralleling of devices also leads to a total input capacitance into the Preamplifier that can exceed 1.5nF. Preamp circuits that use feedback to obtain linearity are prone to oscillation due to the significant input pole presented by this source capacitance. Other approaches which amplify signal voltage developed across a source resistor produce nonlinearity due to the inherent dynamic source impedance of

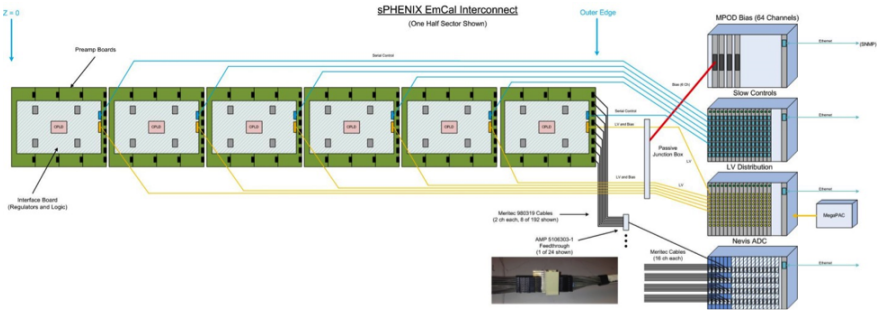



**Figure 5.8:** A block diagram showing the overall design for the EMCal electronics for one half sectors for the EMCal. There are a total of 384 towers per half sector and 32 half sectors for the EMCal.

SiPMs and an excessively long wave shape. A common-base transistor amplifier (CBA) was chosen to address these concerns. The CBA acts as a transresistance amplifier or current to voltage transformer without the need for feedback. The result is a stable circuit with an input impedance of less than 4 ohms.

A differential output amplifier is required to drive the signals through 10 meter Meritec cables to the inputs of the Digitizer Boards which are located in rack mounted crates near the detector. The shaper/driver is a differential driver amplifier configured as a multiple-pole feedback filter with a corner frequency of 5 MHz which provides a peaking time of 30 nS for ADC sampling at 65 MHz. In order to observe signals from Minimum Ionizing Particles for calibration of the EMCal and HCal detectors, a second high gain output stage is provided. This stage is identical to the normal gain output stage with the exception of the stage gain. Selection of which output stage is used, is determined through the slow control system at the time the readout is initialized for readout, providing control on a run-by-run basis. A schematic diagram of the front end amplifier/driver circuit is shown in Figure 5.9.

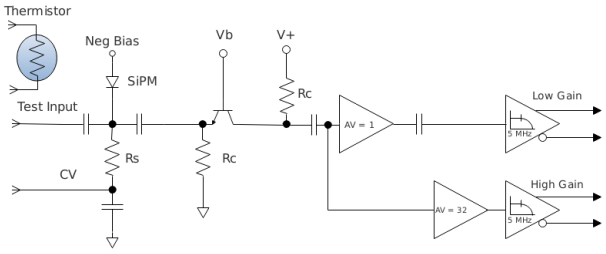



**Figure 5.9:** Schematic diagram of the EMCal and HCal Preamplifier/shaper/driver circuit. Selection of the normal gain or high gain output is made through the slow control system (not shown) at the time the system is configured for data taking. For standard data taking, the normal gain is used.

The SiPM delivers nominally 37 fC for a single micro-cell fired and the CBA produces an Equivalent Noise Charge of about 43 fC, as shown in Figure 5.10, so the signal to noise

ratio is approximately 0.86 at the single micro-cell level. A Minimum Ionizing Particle is expected to produce approximately 35 photoelectrons which would yield 9 micro-cells fired given a PDE of $\sim$ 25%.

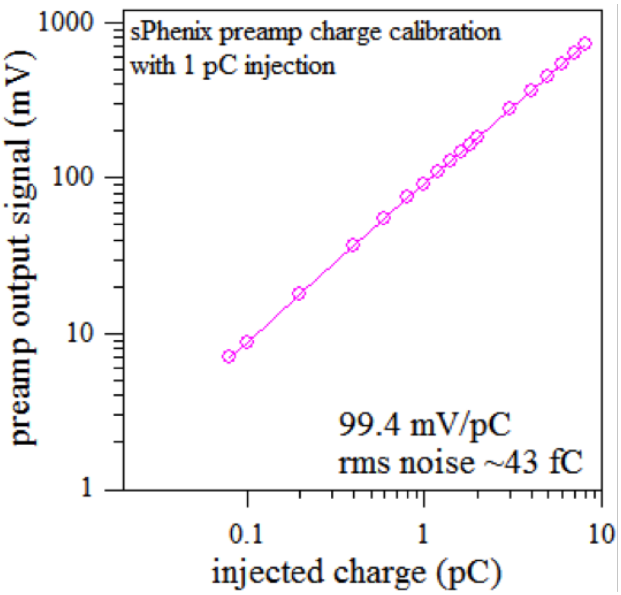



**Figure 5.10:** The response of the common-base transistor amplifier as a function of the injected charge as measured in the lab. The measured RMS noise is $\sim$ 43 fC which is matches the charge injected by a single micro-cell of the SiPM firing.

### 5.2.4 Gain Stabilization

The SiPM reverse breakdown voltage, $V_{br}$, is proportional to temperature and increases nominally by 60mV/°C. As the SiPM bias increases over $V_{br}$, the SiPM begins to operate in Geiger mode with a gain up to $2.75 \times 10^5$ and is linearly proportional to the bias over-voltage, $V_{ov}$. The range of this over-voltage is typically 4 Volts and represents the useful gain range of the device. In order to compensate for temperature variations and maintain a stable gain, a closed feedback loop consisting of a thermistor, ADC, logic and a DAC will be used to adjust $V_{ov}$ and stabilize the voltage as shown in Figure 5.11. The thermistor is located near the SiPMs and is measured by 16 bit ADC located on the Interface Board. The digitized where a local processor computes an offset for the bias voltage to correct for temperature variations. The 12 bit correction is transmitted back to the Interface Board where a 12 bit DAC provides an offset voltage to adjust the SiPM bias voltage for the desired gain.

One effect of the increase in leakage current resulting from neutron damage is that voltage drop across the current limiting resistor for the bias supply changes as function of time. In order to compensate for this changing voltage, the bias current for SiPMs in an EMCal or

HCal tower is monitored. The measured bias current, combined with the known value of the limiting resistors is used to compute an additional correction to the bias that is added to the bias correction required for temperature variations in order to maintain a stable gain.

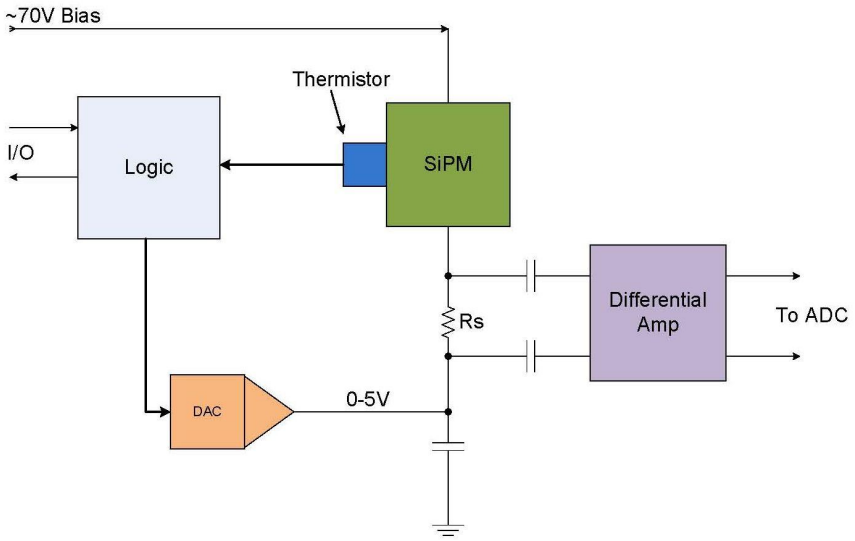



**Figure 5.11:** Block diagram of a temperature compensating circuit for SiPMs

### 5.2.5 Slow Control and Monitoring

The slow control and monitoring for the EMCal and HCal electronics consists of the Interface Board and Controller Board. The Interface Board mounts directly on the detector, with the Controller located in a rack mounted crate nearby. A block diagram of the slow control and monitoring system for the EMCal and HCal detectors is shown in Figure 5.12. The Interface Board contains a Xilinx®CoolRunner-II$^{TM}$ CPLD, 16 bit ADC and multiplexers to monitor voltages, leakage currents and temperatures. The CPLD runs a state machine that selects each of the analog channels to be monitored, reads out the associated ADC information and updates the bias DACs when new settings are transmitted to it from the Controller Board. A single Interface Board is capable of monitoring 24 towers for the HCal and 64 Towers for the EMCal. The data is transmitted serially to the Controller Board which is capable of controlling up to 8 Interface boards. A processor on the Controller Board uses the temperatures measured by the thermistors next to the SiPMs to determine the individual DAC settings to correct the bias voltage to compensate for temperature variations and maintain a stable gain. The DAC settings are transmitted back to the CPLD on the interface board and loaded into the appropriate DACs. All digital data is transmitted to the slow control monitoring system via the crate back plane and crate controller.

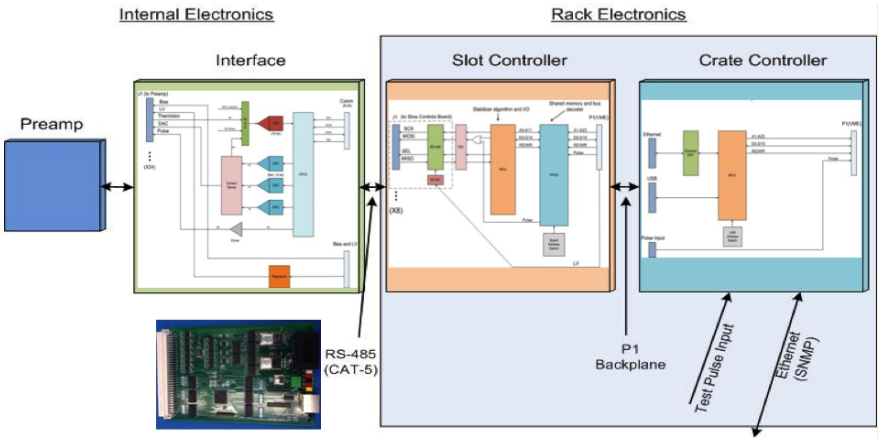



**Figure 5.12:** Block diagram of the slow controls for the calorimeter front end electronics. The inset picture shows a prototype module of the HCal Interface board that will be used on the HCal Beam Test prototype.

## 5.3 Digitizers Electronics

The design of the digitizer electronics for sPHENIX is based on the digitizer system built for the PHENIX Hadron Blind Detector (HBD) [19] and modified for the PHENIX Muon Piston Calorimeter (MPC) detector. A block diagram of the Digitizer Board is shown in Figure 5.13. Differential signals from the preamplifiers are received over a 10 meter Hard Metric cable by an Analog Device AD8132 differential receiver which also serves as the ADC driver. The signals for 8 towers are digitized by an Analog Device AD9257 8 channel, 14 bit ADC operating at 6x the Beam Crossing Clock (BCO). The serialized data from the ADC is received by an Altera Arria V GX FPGA which provides digital pipeline that is 85 BCOs deep to provide a trigger latency of up to $\sim$ 85 $\mu$s. Upon receipt of a Local Level 1 (LL1) trigger, up to 31 time samples (set during system configuration) for each channel is buffered in an event buffer for readout. The ADC board is capable of buffering up to 5 events.

The LL1 data from Digitizer Boards are received by an XMIT Board using token passing to control the readout from the Digitizer Boards over the back plane. The data is formatted into a standard sPHENIX data packet. Formatted data is sent by 1.6 GBit optical links using 8Bit/10Bit encoding to the sPHENIX second generation Data Collection Modules (DCM-IIs). In order to meet the sPHENIX readout requirement of $\leq$ 40$\mu$s 3 Digitizer boards will be readout by a single XMIT board. In this configuration, a digitizer crate will house 4 XMIT groups, capable of reading out 768 channels of SiPMs.

The Crate Controller interfaces to the PHENIX Granule Timing Module (GTM) via the Clock Master and fans out the 6x BCO and LL1 triggers to the Digitizer and XMIT modules. The Crate Controller also has dedicated bi-directional serial optical link to the sPHENIX Slow Control system for run-time configuration of the Digitizer system. The Crate Controller is also capable of a slow read out of Digitizer Boards through the back plane for

testing and debugging purposes.

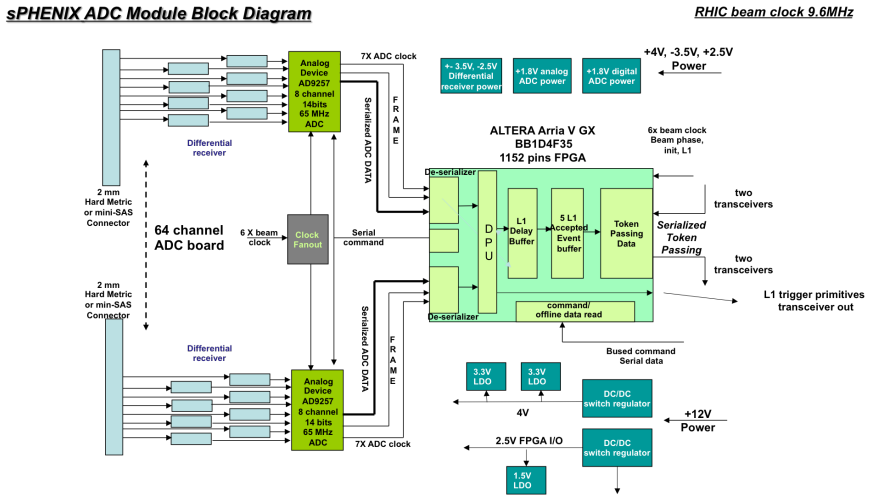



**Figure 5.13:** Block diagram of the Digitizer Module electronics.

In addition to processing the data for 64 channels, the Digitizer Board also produces the LL1 trigger primitives. For each tower, the 6 samples corresponding to a beam crossing are summed and pedestal subtracted to form an integrated pulse amplitude for the tower. Additional corrections for gain or pedestal shifts can be applied to the integrated signal. The sums from 4 towers forming a $2 \times 2$ tower array are then summed together to form an 8 bit $2 \times 2$ patch sum trigger primitive. A total of 16 $2 \times 2$ trigger primitives are formed on each digitizer board every beam crossing. These 16 trigger primitives along with a framing word and header word are transmitted optically using 8b/10b encoding to a trigger processing system located off detector. For a 10 MHz beam crossing frequency, this results in a 1.8GBit/sec data rate per digitizer board.

## 5.4 Power Systems and Ground

Low voltage power for the analog front end electronics will be provided using bulk supplies and distributed through the second generation PHENIX LV distribution system. The PHENIX LV system is a crate based system which fans out up to 200 low voltage channels which are individually switched and monitored. Control of the system is provided via MODBUS/TCP and client software such as Iconics Graphworx. All low voltage will be locally regulated on the detector. For the digitizers, low voltage power will be supplied by local bulk supplies and DC-to-DC converters located in the crates. Local monitoring of the digitizer voltages will be done using a monitoring system similar to PHENIX monitoring system based on ADAMS modules by Advantech using a MODBUS/TCP interface.

Bias power for the SiPMs will be provided by commercial power supplies such as the WEINER-ISEG system proposed for Hall-D at Jefferson Lab. Bias voltage from single

channel of the WEINER-ISEG system is fanned out multiple SiPMs with all the SiPMs for a tower receiving a common bias voltage that has been adjusted for temperature variations and leakage current effects.

The estimated power consumption for the different components of the EMCal and HCal readout electronics is summarized in Table 5.4.

**Table 5.4:** Summary of the estimated power consumption for the EMCal and HCal readout electronics. For the SiPM Daughter Boards, power is after radiation damage.

| Board | Board | Sector | Total Power |
|---|---|---|---|
| EMCal On Detector Front End Electronics | | | |
| SiPM Daughter Boards | 280 mW | 26.7 W | 1.71 kW |
| Preamp Boards | 5 W | 120.0 W | 7.68 kW |
| Interface Boards | 4.5 W | 27.0 W | 1.75 kW |
| Total On-Detector Power | | 173.7 W | 11.2 kW |
| HCal On-Detector Front End Electronics | | | |
| SiPM Daughter Boards (Inner) | 17 mW | 3.4 W | 108.8 W |
| SiPM Daughter Boards (Outer) | 17 mW | 4.2 W | 134.4 W |
| Preamp Boards | 020 mW | 14.4 W | 921.6 W |
| Interface/LED Boards | 3.5 W | 3.5 W | 224.0 W |
| Total On-Detector Power | | 21.7 W | 1.39 kW |

Critical to minimizing the noise and maintaining the requirements for the signal-to-noise is a well developed grounding plan. Preliminary work has started on defining such a plan. It is a star grounding plan with the reference point defined near the front end electronics. All electronics will be electrically isolated from the mechanical components of the detector which are separately connected to the experimental ground. All power supplies will have isolated returns decoupling them from the AC power ground. A preliminary grounding plan is shown in Figure 5.14.

## 5.5 Electronics Cooling

The power requirements for the front end electronics is summarized in Table 5.4. For the Inner and Outer HCal detectors the resulting heat load is not anticipated to be a problem; however, for the EMCal sectors the heat generated by the SiPm's and EMCal front end electronics must be removed. As a whole, the subsystem can eventually generate 11 kW of heat while operating. The plan is to use a water or water/glycol mixture to provide cooling for the system and maintain its temperature to slightly below ambient ( 20°C). The

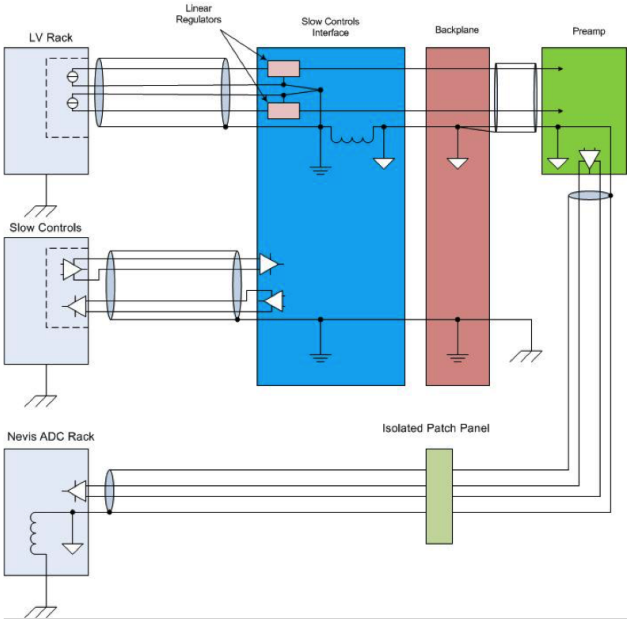



**Figure 5.14:** Preliminary grounding plan for calorimeter electronics which is based on a star grounding configuration. Not shown is the grounding of the mechanical parts of the calorimeters.

cooling concept is shown in the cooling circuit layout in Figure 5.15. Since the detector will be inaccessible while running, the filling, bleeding and draining operations must be able to be done from remote areas. Because of the location of the system, it must be monitored remotely for performance and failures. In addition, redundancy must be built into it provide continuous uninterrupted service throughout the run. The number of active components installed inside the active area in these areas must be reduced to a minimum to reduce failure rates. If the fluid used is water, the consequences of leaks is damage to the detector's electronics, while if fluorocarbons are used, the cost of leaks can quickly become prohibitive. In order to minimize the risk of leaks, the number internal connections needs to be minimized, type of connection optimized to reduce the probability of leaks occurring.

To remove heat from the EMCal Preamplifier Boards, a custom cold plate will be designed that will be coupled to each Preamplifier Board with a Gap Pad thermal interface. Multiple cooling loops connect the cold plates and will also provide the mechanical support for the Preamplifier Boards. A conceptual design of the preamplifier cold plates and cooling for an EMCal Sector is show in Figure 5.16. The cold plate will also have four copper thermal straps to transfer the heat from the associated SiPM Daughter Boards to the same cold plate. Prototypes of cold plates being tested are shown in Figure 5.17. Fluid for each EMCal sector is provided from a multi channel manifold control box outside the solenoid. The control box will have the capability of balancing flowers to each of the sectors as well as monitor the pressure, temperature and flows to each side of the EMCal. A total of 64 cooling loops will be used to insure proper balancing for the removal of heat in throughout

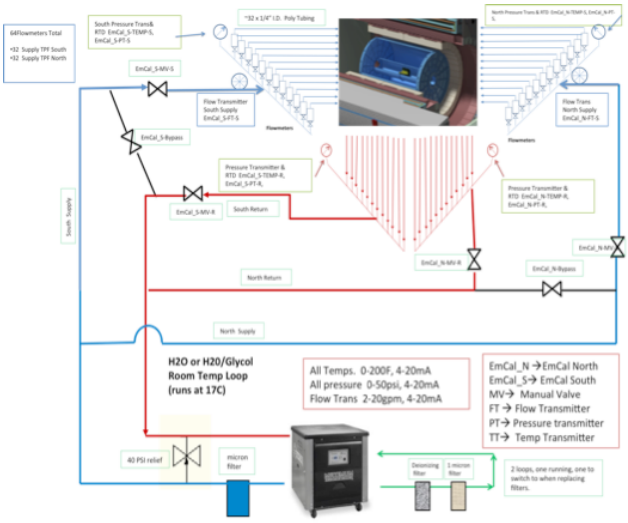



**Figure 5.15:** Conceptual design of the the cooling system for the EMCal front end electronics.

the system.

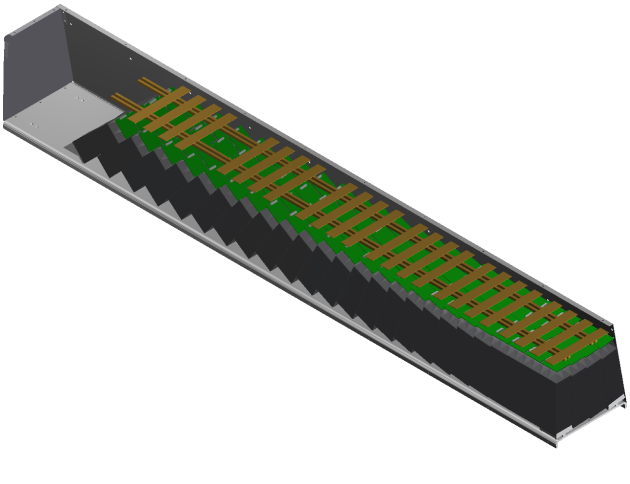


**Figure 5.16:** Conceptual design of the cooling plates and channels for an EMCal Sector. Connections to the cooling supply lines are made at the high $\eta$ end of the EMCal Sector.

### 5.5.1 Cooling Plant

The chillers for the EMCal will be located some 125 feet away from the detector. Independent lines and chillers will be installed for both manifold control boxes (North and South). This will be run to allow either side of the EMCal to be operated independently of the other. In addition, a third chiller will be plumbed into the system to be used as a back-up

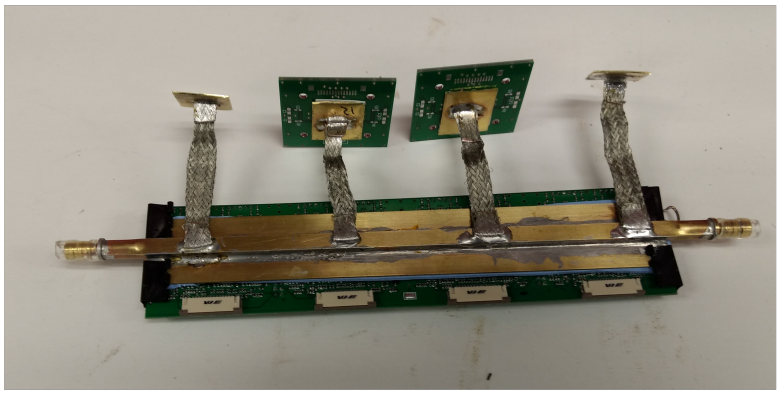


**Figure 5.17:** Prototype cooling plates for the EMCal SiPM Daughter Boards used for proof of principle. Design concept is to use a thermal connector to simplify installation.

and ready to be switched over in a moment's notice. Since the detector will be located in an area with limited accessibility, active components inside the interaction area must be reduced. In addition, the filling, bleeding and draining operations must be performed remotely.

### 5.5.2 Monitoring and Safety System

Each cooling loop will have remote sensors installed so that health of the system can be monitored. The flow, temperature and pressure of the supply and return of each control box will be recorded and alarmed in case of change for normal operation parameters. The low voltage and bias voltage of the EMCal will be interlocked to this monitoring to prevent equipment damage in case of cooling system failure. Active components in the interaction area must be kept to a minimum for reduce the risk of failure. In addition, only robust industrial components should be selected for inaccessible components. Water trace monitors should be installed in several locations to monitor for potential leaks during times of inaccessibility.

## 5.6 Radiation Tolerance

### 5.6.1 Neutron Radiation Effects

Silicon photo-multipliers have been found to be susceptible to damage from neutron radiation. Matsumura et.al. as part of the T2K collaboration found that exposure to protons resulted in an increase in the device leakage current, increased noise, and reduced single photoelectron resolution [20]. Qiang et.al. of the GlueX experiment has also measured increased leakage current after neutron irradiation [21]. Musienko et.al. of the CMS HB/HE Calorimeter Upgrade also studied radiation damage and worked with manufacturers to develop more radiation-hard SiPMs [22]. Simulations to estimate neutron fluences in the sPHENIX IR based on studies of the current STAR and PHENIX IRs at RHIC [23] suggest that the expected neutron fluence is approximately $2 \times 10^{10}\,\mathrm{n/cm^2}$ per Run year. Based on the measurements of increase in leakage current due to neutron damage and the expected neutron rates in the sPHENIX interaction region and number of studies on the impact to SiPM performance in context of the sPHENIX calorimeter requirements have been carried out.

Studies of SiPMs were conducted in the current PHENIX IR during Run 14 and Run 15 to observe the effects of neutron radiation on a sample SiPMs of various pixel size, in the approximate sPHENIX environment. Figure 5.18 shows leakage currents measured from different Hamamatsu devices during Run 15 as a function of fluence. Part of this study done in the PHENIX IR during Run 15 was to investigate whether thermal neutrons were causing some of the damage to the SiPMs. Two groups of identical devices, positioned at the same location in the IR, were compared; 2 SiPMs were placed inside a Gadolinium-shielded box to eliminate thermal neutrons, the other 2 SiPMs were left un-shielded. Both groups of SiPMs showed a similar increase in leakage current. There was no obvious difference in the damage to the 2 groups based on the leakage current measurements, suggesting that the observed damage was not caused by thermal neutrons. The data for these devices is included in Figure 5.18.

As a follow-up to the PHENIX IR measurements, with a more controlled, neutron source, we irradiated additional SiPMs at the BNL Solid State Physics Irradiation Facility. A deuterium-tritium neutron source was used to generate 14 MeV neutrons. We exposed the devices to neutrons at a flux rate of $10^5\mathrm{n/cm^2}$ . The SiPMs were characterized before and after irradiation. Figure 5.19 shows a plot of the increasing leakage current versus exposure time for the SiPMs tested.

Two additional studies have been done to understand the effects of neutron irradiation on SiPM devices using neutron sources at National Laboratories. In the first, SiPMs were exposed to neutron fluences at the University of Indiana Low Energy Neutron Source (LENS) facility, equivalent to about 2 orders of magnitude higher than what is anticipate over their sPHENIX lifetime at RHIC. These results are shown in Figure 5.20. In the second test, Hamamatsu SiPMs were irradiated at the Los Alamos LANSCE facility

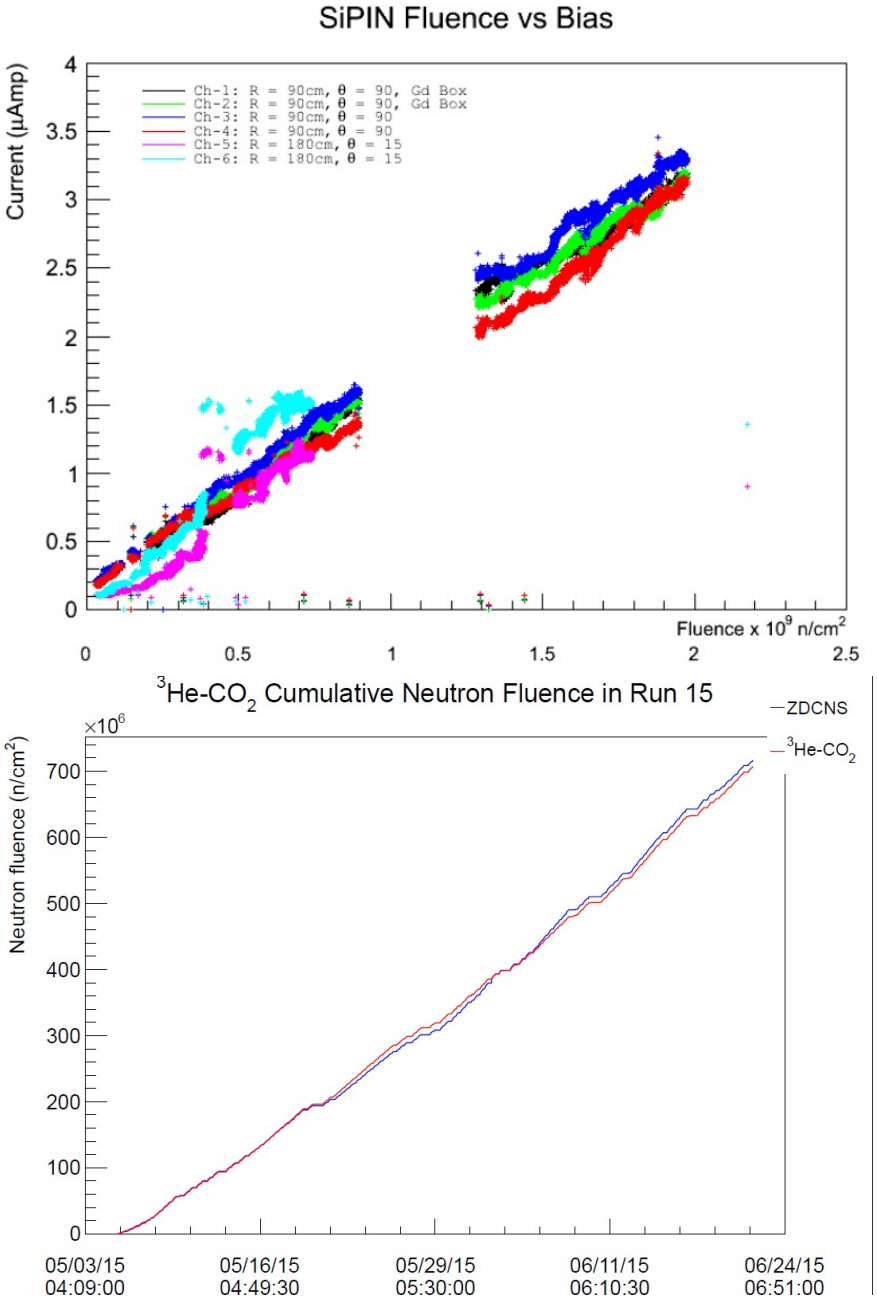



**Figure 5.18:** SiPMs in the PHENIX IR during Run 15 p-p running. The devices – Hamamatsu S12572-025P, -015P, and -010P all showed a steady increase in leakage current with cumulative neutron fluence during Run 15.

to the approximate fluences expected over the expected lifetime in sPHENIX (about $7 \times 10^{10}\,\mathrm{n/cm^2}$). The leakage current verses $V_{bias}$ curves for the devices before and after irradiation are shown in Figure 5.21. The S12572-015P shows an increase from 50nA to 250$\mu$A at its operating voltage.

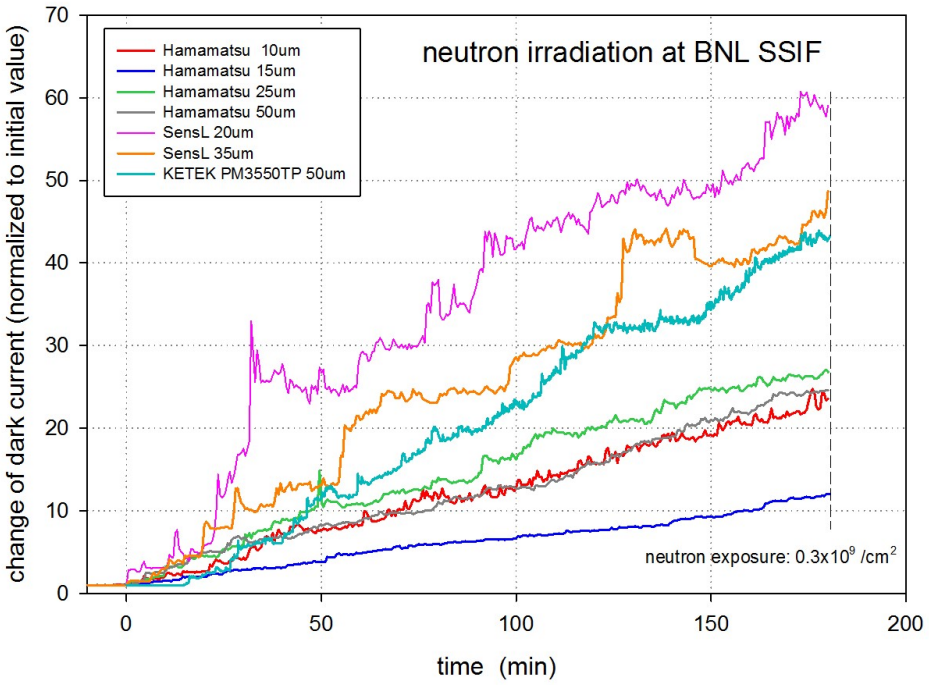



**Figure 5.19:** Various SiPMs studied at BNL SSGRIF facility. Increasing leakage current vs time during neutron exposure.

In summary the following radiation damage studies of SiPMs have been done:

- PHENIX IR RUN14 (200 GeV Au-Au, h-Au), 2 Hamamatsu -025P SIPMs-about 3 weeks of beam running time.
- PHENIX IR RUN15 (200 GeV p-p, p-Au, p-Al) 30 Hamamatsu -010P, -015P, -025P SIPMs - about 8 weeks of beam running time.
- Neutron generator irradiation studies at BNL SSGRIF SiPMs from Hamamatsu, SensL, AdvanSiD, Excelitas, and KETEK of various $\mu$-pixel sizes – cumulative exposures to $10^9$ n/cm$^2$.
- Neutron Irradiation studies at Indiana University LENS Facility– Hamamatsu -025P MPPCs – cumulative exposures up to $10^{13}$ n/cm$^2$.
- Neutron Irradiation studies at Los Alamos (LANSCE) - Hamamatsu MPPCs of various $\mu$-pixel size -Cumulative exposures to about $7x10^{10}$ n/cm$^2$.

The increase in leakage current due to neutron damage poses a technical challenge for maintaining a constant gain, however, the gain stabilization circuit as described in Section 5.2.4 is designed to compensate for the increased leakage current. While the increase in

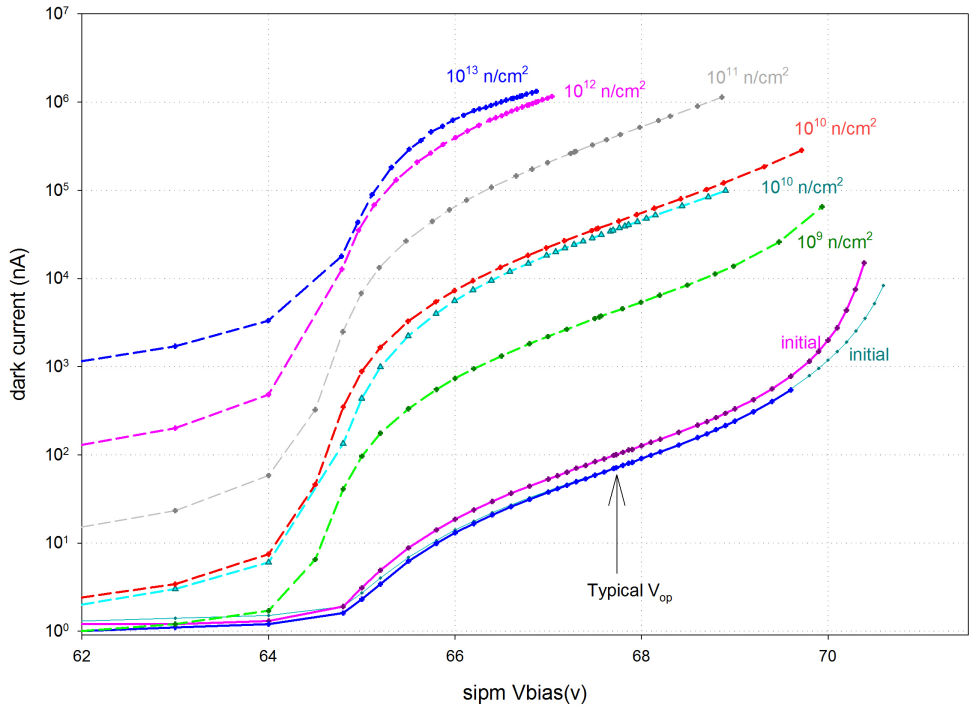



**Figure 5.20:** Neutron damage in Hamamatsu MPPCs exposed at Indiana Univ LENS facility

the leakage current will limit the ability to observe single photo-electron peaks, the leakage current increases that are expected in 3 years of sPHENIX running will not significantly impact the signals that are of interest for sPHENIX, As part of the on going R&D effort, studies will continue to understand the impact of the neutron damage in context of the sPHENIX requirements.

In addition to the effects of neutron damage to the SiPMs, there the also the possibility of damage to the electronics components due to ionizing radiation. During the past several runs of PHENIX, the radiation levels at several locations in PHENIX interaction region that correspond the approximate locations of where the front end electronics will be located has been measured. The total ionizing dosage (TID) measured per run is dependent on the beam species and energies, but typical values range from 2 kRad to 10 kRad per run with the highest dosage coming during the 510 GeV p+p running periods. While these dosages are several orders of magnitude lower then what is experienced at the LHC experiments, it is still necessary to consider the effects of radiation damage on the front end components. The three areas of concern are the analog devices (amplifiers, DACs and ADCs), the voltage regulators and the CPLD used for temperature compensation, gain corrections and monitoring. For the analog components and regulators, when possible, devices certified as radiation tolerant for CERN LHC applications will be chosen. In cases where devices can not be identified that have been LHC certified, testing will be done to evaluate their radiation tolerance and the impact of failure due to irradiation.

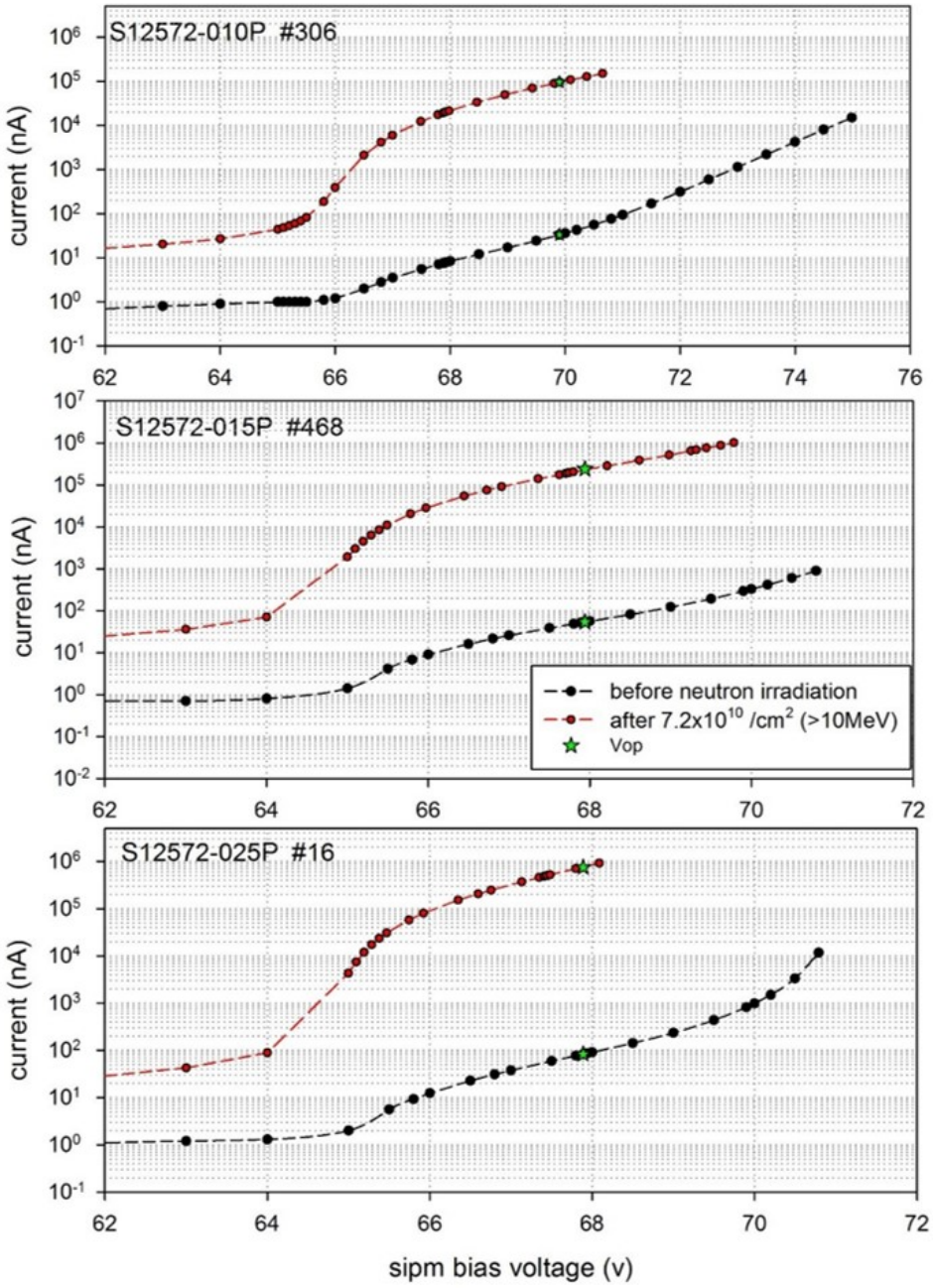



**Figure 5.21:** Neutron damage in Hamamatsu MPPCs exposed at Los Alamos LANSCE facility

In the reference design, the Xilinx®CoolRunner-II™ CPLD technology has been chosen. This device has been tested for radiation effects up to an integrated TID of 22 kRad [24]. There were no Single Event Errors (SEE) observed in the flash memory, allowing the device to be recovered at any time by powering device off and back on. The SRAM cells are

sensitive to protons with energies greater then 15 MeV with a MTBF of 11 days in the worst case. The actual MTBF in real applications will be higher since only a small fraction of the Single Event Upsets (SEU) will generate a functional error.

# Chapter 6

# Minimum Bias Trigger Detector

The sPHENIX Minimum Bias Trigger Detector (MBD) is responsible for providing the primary Level-1 trigger for heavy-ion collisions. The trigger should have good efficiency for hadronic collisions and a z-vertex resolution of a few cm, while minimizing background triggers. The z-vertex measurement is necessary to select for collisions within $|z| < \pm 10$ cm, which is the nominal region which the sPHENIX silicon tracking system is designed to cover. The PHENIX Beam-beam Counters (BBC) served very successfully as the MBD for PHENIX, and sPHENIX plans to pursue reusing the BBC detector. The BBCs operated very successfully for 16 years in PHENIX, and with the long experience of its operation, and extensive understanding of its maintenance, cooling, and calibration needs, it serves as an ideal detector for the MBD in sPHENIX.

## 6.1 Reuse of the PHENIX BBC in sPHENIX

The PHENIX BBCs consists of two identical sets of 64 counters installed on both sides of the collision point along the beam axis, one on the North side and the other on the South side [25, 26]. Each counter is composed of one-inch diameter mesh-dynode photomultiplier tubes (Hamamatsu R6178) equipped with 3 cm thick quartz on the head of the PMT as a Cherenkov radiator (see fig. 6.1). Quartz is chosen as the radiator since a radiation hard design is needed for the BBC, which sits close to the beam-pipe in the forward regions where radiations levels are among the highest in PHENIX. Since the PMTs are inherently tolerant to radiation, the BBC system is radiation hard. Over 16 years of running, no significant degradation of the BBC performance has been noticed.

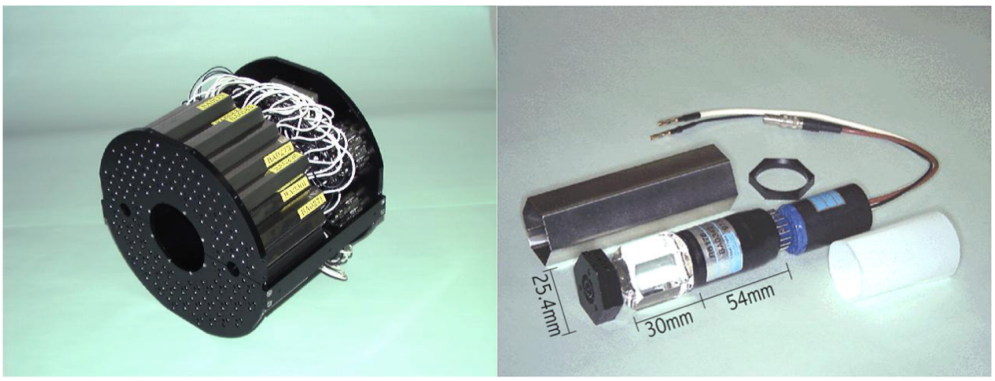



**Figure 6.1:** (left) The BBC array mounted on the BBC mechanical frame. (right) The individual bbc counter module.

In PHENIX the BBCs were placed 144 cm from the center of the interaction diamond, just around the beam pipe, where the magnetic field was about 0.3T. The inner and outer edges of the BBC are at radii of 5 and 15 cm, respectively, and corresponds to a pseudorapidity range from 3.0 to 3.9, with coverage over the full azimuth. While the mesh-dynode PMTs are designed to operate in moderate magnetic fields, the field strength in sPHENIX will

be much higher at $|z| = 144$ cm than it was in PHENIX. Thus, the BBC's will have to be moved in sPHENIX to a z location where the effect on the magnetic field will be tolerable to the BBC PMTs.

Table 6.1 shows the pseudorapidity coverage and longitudinal magnetic fields for different z-positions in sPHENIX. The min-bias efficiencies in the table were evaluated from PYTHIA6 and Hijing Monte Carlo studies. At $z = 144$ cm, the field is 1.11T, which would result in 2 orders of magnitude lower gain in the PMT. Thus, the BBCs can only reliably operate at $|z| > 250\ cm$, where the fields are roughly similar to what it operated under in PHENIX. Here, the PMT gains are reduced by less than a factor of 2, which can be compensated by running at voltages of 100-200 V higher. Note that since the BBCs already were designed to operate in moderate magnetic fields, the mechanical frame and everything connected to the BBC are already made of non-magnetic materials, so the BBC housing can be re-used.

| z (cm) | $\eta_{min}$ | $\eta_{max}$ | $B_Z$ (T) | PMT Rel. Gain | Au+Au MB Eff (%) | p+p MB Eff (%) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 144 | 3.0 | 3.9 | 1.11 | 0.01 | 90 | 39 |
| 200 | 3.33 | 4.23 | 0.75 | 0.15 | 89 | 36 |
| 250 | 3.56 | 4.45 | 0.50 | 0.5 | 88 | 34 |
| 300 | 3.74 | 4.63 | 0.32 | 0.9 | 87 | 32 |

**Table 6.1:** Parameters for the MBD at different z-vertex locations. The gains are taken from the Hamamatsu R5505 datasheet (and verified in the lab). The trigger efficiency is determined from HIJING and PYTHIA6 Monte Carlo for 200 GeV Au+Au and p+p events.

The PMT gain as a function of magnetic field is taken from the Hamamatsu R5505 datasheet, which is a similar PMT to the R6178 used in the BBCs. The R6178 was never widely adopted and the datasheet is not publicly available. Howver, the BBC PMTs were tested in fields of 0.3T before installation in PHENIX and the results are consistent with the datasheet for the R5505. Also, a spare BBC PMT was tested in the dipole magnet facility in BNL's Instrumentation Dept., and a gain curve was mapped out up to 0.5T. The gain curve was found to be consistent with the R5505 datasheet.

Estimates for the efficiencies for triggering are given in the last two columns of table 6.1. The efficiencies were estimated from Hijing events for 200 GeV Au+Au, and Pythia 6.4.28 events for 200 GeV p+p. A trigger is accepted when at least two charged particles are in the acceptance of both BBCs for Au+Au collisions, while in p+p the requirement is one charged particle in each arm. The efficiency percentages for the $z = 144$ cm case are consistent within a few percent of what has been observed in PHENIX, with the difference due to the fact that conversions of photons in the beam-pipe and other upstream material can boost the efficiency slightly. The efficiency for Au+Au collisions drops by only 3% relative to what has been seen in PHENIX even if moving the BBCs out to $z = 300$ cm. This is expected since the multiplicity drop is not very large when going to the more forward pseudorapidity, and also because in Au+Au collisions the efficiency is largely determined by the multiplicity fluctuations in only the most peripheral events. Starting

from mid-peripheral collisions enough particles are created that the efficiency is 100%.

The situation for p+p collisions is a bit worse, since the multiplicities are much lower. Here the BBC efficiency will be ∼20% lower than the PHENIX case. However, in p+p the MB efficiency is much less important since a minimum bias p+p event are dominated by largely uninteresting soft collision events. The trigger rates for min-bias p+p events were often prescaled by a factor of $10^4$ or more in PHENIX. Thus, the location that optimizes min-bias efficiency while still allowing for operation of the BBC in sPHENIX is at $|z| = 250$ cm.

The BBCs are designed to handle the maximum expected multiplicity in PHENIX, which is about 30 particles, and thus there are no questions about it's performance in this regard to sPHENIX. This is important when using the BBC as a reaction-plane detector, which uses the multiplicity of particles as a function of position to determine the event-plane of the heavy ion collision.

## 6.2 MBD FEE Upgrade

While the existing BBC FEMs are available and could work for the MBD readout in sPHENIX, it would be far preferable to upgrade to modern electronics. The BBC FEMs rely on many legacy Trigger and DAQ systems, such as the Arcnet slow control system, the FE2 DCM, the JSEB-I, and the BBC Local Level1 trigger system, which are now 18 years old and would require extra manpower to maintain.

Fortunately, the BBCs can be read out with one modification to the proposed sPHENIX Front-End Electronics system for the calorimeters. A discriminator/shaper (D/S) board needs to be developed, as shown in Fig. 6.2. The discriminator/shaper board is needed to shape the 2 ns wide signals from the BBC PMTs so that it can be digitized at the 16.7 ns sampling time of the sPHENIX digitizers. In addition, the raw signal will be split, with the split signal being used to provide a fast time measurement of better than 120 ps that is needed to make the vertex measurement for the minimum bias trigger.

To accomplish the timing measurement, the D/S board will discriminate the BBC signal, and generate a 1 volt square pulse (less than one RHIC clock wide) to the sPHENIX digitizers. The time of arrival can be extracted from this discriminator pulse. The time resolution of the sPHENIX digitizers have been measured to be better than 13 ps by using a passively split signal similar to the discriminator pulse, and then comparing the time measurement between the two split pulses. The D/S board is under development and will be tested for its contribution to the overall time resolution.

As a backup solution, a time-to-analog converter (TAC) could be used to generate a linearly rising analog voltage until it is stopped by discrimination from a signal. This amplitude is then digitized by the sPHENIX digitizer ADC and represents the time of arrival. The TAC is reset every RHIC clock to provide a time measurement every crossing. At 12 ENOB, the sPHENIX digitizers should be capable of 26 ps/bin.

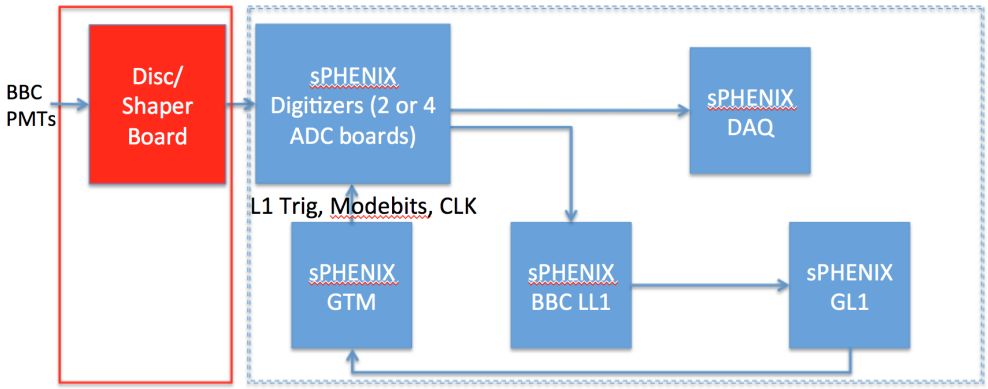



**Figure 6.2:** Readout diagram for the sPHENIX MBD. The items in the right box are common to the rest of the sPHENIX Calorimeter FEE and DAQ.

Whichever scheme is chosen for the discriminator, the sPHENIX digitizers will be able to determine the time of hit on each channel, the amplitude, and whether there was a hit or not using the on-board FPGA. This information, which form the basis of the trigger primitives from the MBD, will be sent each crossing to the MB Level-1 trigger board for further processing, as detailed in section 7.4.3.

# Chapter 7

# Data Acquisition and Trigger

In this section we detail the architecture of the sPHENIX data acquisition and how to satisfy the requirements to achieve a 15 kHz data accept rate with a livetime greater than 90% in a high-multiplicity environment. The estimates are based on the the RHIC Collider Projections as documented in Ref. [27]. Compared to the luminosity achieved in 2014, we expect an increase of up to about a factor of two of the rates of interaction which take place within a z-vertex range $|z| < 10\,\text{cm}$ for Au+Au collisions at 200 GeV. The $|z| < 10\,\text{cm}$ vertex is inside the coverage of the sPHENIX tracking system. In the case of Au+Au collisions, we expect to record minimum bias triggers mostly (i.e. a simple interaction trigger), and expect to collect in the order of 100 billion events in a typical 22-week running period. In $p+p$ and $p+A$ collisions, more selective triggers utilize both calorimeter systems, EmCal and HCal.

The operation of the DAQ system is governed by the *Global Level-1 Trigger* (GL1) and the *Timing System*, which instructs the front-end electronics to "select" (or accept) the data from a given collision, or not. If accepted, the data are sent up from the front-end and are eventually stored on disk and tape. This operation is commonly referred to as "triggering".

The GL1 decision to accept the data from a given collision is based on the input from a number of *Local Level-1* systems (LL1), which examine the data from various detector systems and communicate a number of key properties to the GL1. A good example of such a property is the aforementioned collision vertex. We will select collisions that take place very close ($\pm 10\,\text{cm}$) to the center of the sPHENIX detector, and discard most of the others. After taking the various LL1 inputs, the overall "busy" state of the DAQ system, and several other factors into account, the GL1 either accepts or rejects the data of the collision in question. It takes this decision for every beam crossing.

Once a collision is accepted, the GL1 instructs the Timing System to inform the Front-end of this fact. The Timing Systems then sends this information in a detector-specific way and format (which varies from system to system), and the front-end then sends the data.

The front-end electronics operates in lockstep with the RHIC accelerator clock. The current design sets the basic clock frequency to 6 times the beam crossing rate, at about 55MHz. The Timing System gets its name from the fact that it distributes this clock to the various Front-End Modules (FEMs) and other components of the DAQ. The detector-specific aspects will include the adjustment of the clock phases to compensate for different propagation times, and the selection of the right beam crossing. As an example, the calorimeter electronics digitizes the data from each beam crossing and retains 64 such data sets. The timing system then instructs the front-end to go back a certain number of crossings and select the data from the right collision. The required information can vary from system to system.

The sPHENIX data acquisition system then organizes the data in so-called *runs*. A typical run lasts in the order of one hour, but can be shorter or longer, as required. A run is meant to represent an amount of data that can be conveniently analyzed. All controllable conditions should stay the same for the duration of that run. For example, if one was to change the gain setting of a detector, one would end the ongoing run, change the gain, and start a new run. In this way, there is a well-defined point where the new gain setting takes

effect.

There are other changes that cannot be controlled, such as the tripping of a power supply, or another change that affects the performance of a detector. If that is a significant change that requires a repair, one would again end the run, restore the desired conditions, and then start a new run. However, there are often *small* changes that can be corrected within a short period of time of the order of a minute. A typical example is a trip of just one or a few individual channels of a bias supply that only requires a (possibly automated) reset of the channels in question. In that case, one would continue data taking, and merely account for the fact that a certain number of events have been taken under non-standard conditions. This is implemented by defining so-called *luminosity blocks* that last about two minutes. An unusual condition such as a bias channel reset would then invalidate one or more of such blocks. We would lose a certain amount of data, but the run can continue.

This chapter is structured in the following way. We will first detail the the core data acquisition system, the Local Level 1 system, and then the GL1 and Timing System.

## 7.1 The Core DAQ System

Table 7.1 shows a breakdown of the envisioned data rates per subsystem, estimated from HIJING Monte Carlo and plausible expectations for noise. This is the average rate that we are storing to HPSS, for Au+Au collision in Year-1. Compared to the peak rates listed in table 2.9 on page 45, the average rate is about 40% less, which reflects the accelerator and experiment duty factor. The largest data size comes from the Time Projection Chamber, followed by the Monolithic active-pixel Vertex Detector (MVTX). Overall, we envision a data rate to storage of about 135 GBit/s.

**Table 7.1:** The estimated average data rates from select subsystems in Au+Au collisions at 200 GeV in Year-1.

| subsystem | data size |
|---|---|
| TPC | 100 GBit/s |
| MVTX | 20 GBit/s |
| Calorimeters | 8 GBit/s |
| INTT | 7 GBit/s |
| | 135 GBit/s |

The data acquisition is a hybrid system that reads out two distinct groups of detectors: Detectors that have a *triggered* readout, and those that are read out in so-called *streaming* mode. Streaming mode works in a data-driven way, in that front-end electronics autonomously start sending data when certain criteria are met. For example, the font-end electronics

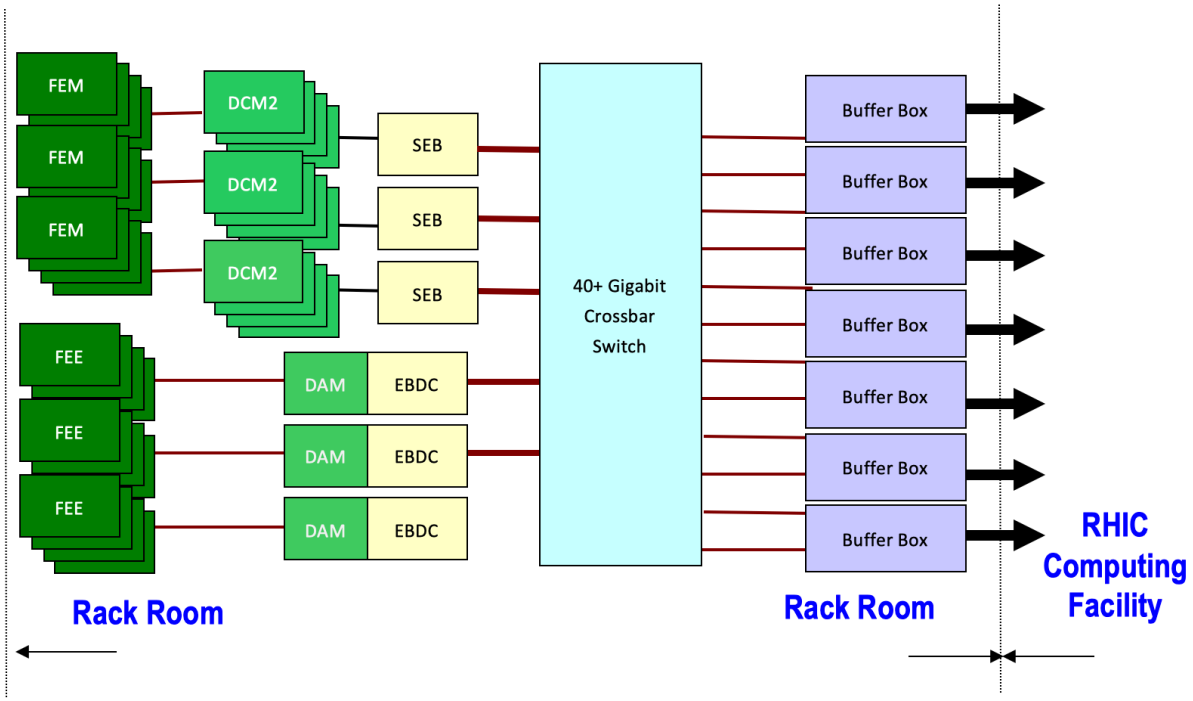



**Figure 7.1:** Overview of the data acquisition design. The data from the calorimeters and the MBD are digitized in the Front-End Modules and zero-suppressed and packaged in the Data Collection Modules. The TPC, INTT, and MVTX use different front-end electronics that send the data to Event Builder and Data Compressor" (EBDC) computers. The data are then transmitted to the *Buffer Boxes*, from where the data are transferred to a long-term storage system.

from the Time Projection Chamber generates data in a given readout channel when the signal level exceeds a pre-determined threshold. Detectors read out in triggered mode are the calorimeters and the Minimum Bias detector. The remaining systems (TPC, INTT, and MVTX) are read out in streaming mode.

In the end, the triggered data have to be consolidated with the streaming data portion; it is neither possible nor desirable to write out the full amount of streaming data. This is handled by distributing the same trigger information the goes to the calorimeters and the MBD to the streaming readout hardware. Those systems then only keep and forward the parts of the streaming data that is correlated with accepted triggers.

As an example, the TPC has a drift time of about 13 $\mu$s, so the TPC data that correlate with a triggered event cover entire drift period. If no further trigger is accepted by the end of the drift time, the stored data stream from the TPC ends at that point. If another trigger is accepted during that period, the time resets, and the 13 $\mu$s countdown starts new.

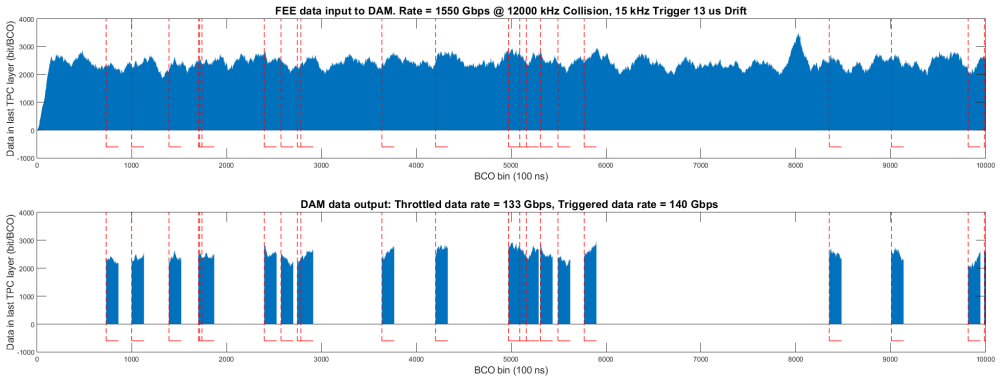



**Figure 7.2:** A simulation of the TPC data stream. The upper figure shows the continuously streaming data as a function of time, expressed as the beam crossing count (BCO). The dashed red lines denote accepted triggers. The lower figure shows the portion of the streaming data correlated with the accepted triggers. Each of the short blue sections in the lower figure is at least 13 $\mu$s long. The 4th and 5th trigger around BCO 1800 "extend" the TPC readout period, as do the triggers around BCO 2800 and 5000.

This is shown in simulation in Fig. 7.2. The upper figure shows the continuously streaming data as a function of time, expressed as the beam crossing count (BCO). The lower figure shows the data stream being broken up in chunks correlated with the accepted triggers. Several triggers in this simulations are less than the TPC drift time length apart and extend the readout time (e.g. triggers 4 and 5).

After this step, the triggered and streaming data are conceptually the same, except that one chunk of streaming data can cover more than one accepted trigger.

The subsequent readout architecture is a fully pipelined design, which allows the next event to be triggered without waiting for the previous event to be fully processed. The design allows for a depth of 4 such events to be buffered in front end modules before transmission. This multi-event buffering is the key concept to achieve the design event rate of 15 kHz while preserving livetime.

The upper half of Fig. 7.1 shows schematically the readout of the triggered detectors (the Calorimeters and the MBD). A number of front-end modules, described in detail in chapter 5, are interfaced to Data Collection Modules. The Data Collection Modules version 2 (DCM2) are re-used from the previous PHENIX experiment. The multi-event buffering is performed in the front-end-modules for those detectors.

The DCM2s run detector-specific FPGA code to zero-suppress and package the data. This

provides the freedom to change the data format as necessary by loading a new version of the FPGA code.

A group of DCM2s interface with commodity computers called Sub-Event Buffers (SEBs) via 1.6 GBit/s serial optical links through a custom PCIe interface card, the JSEB-II. Due to overhead in the data encoding, the effective bandwidth through the fiber is 1.28 GBit/s. This 4-lane PCIe card is capable of sustaining 160 MB/s input into the SEB. This bandwidth is needed to achieve the envisioned event rate of about 15 kHz.

The data from the TPC, the MVTX, and the INTT are sampled by detector-specific front-end cards that interface to a PCI-Express card, the *Data Aggregation Module* (DAM). We have chosen the ATLAS-developed Front-End LInk eXchange ("FELIX") card [28], which provides up to 48 fiber inputs. The FELIX card has a high-end Xilinx Kintex Ultrascale FPGA that is used to reduce the front-end data volume with various strategies.

The processing of the streaming data will be performed by a combination of the FPGAs and the CPUs of the servers that host these FELIX cards. Those *Event Buffering and Data Compressor* machines (EBDC) have functionality similar to the Sub-Event Buffers of the triggered systems in that they hold the data from the respective subset of connected readout channels.

### 7.1.1 Count of Readout Computers

The current design calls for a total number of 42 FELIX cards in the same number of EBDC computers, 24 for the TPC, 12 for the INTT, and 6 for the MVTX. The data rate from each of those machines will be higher than 1GBit/s and requires 10Gbit/s network links, although the actual bandwidth will not saturate the faster network speed.

The triggered systems will require 18 host machines for the same number of jSEB-II cards, 16 for the electromagnetic calorimeter, and one each for the outer hadronic calorimeter and the MBD. The bandwidth here requires only 1GBit/s network links.

Fig. 7.3 shows a tentative rack layout of SEBs and EBDCs. In addition, we expect three more racks to hold the network switches, and the buffer boxes shown in Fig. 7.1.

The buffer boxes temporarily store the data files before they get transferred to permanent storage at the RHIC Computing Facility (RCF). The "buffering" aspect that gives those large file servers their name is to level the variable data rates over time to a steady average rate. The data rate varies over time with the slow decay of RHIC luminosity from its initial peak value. In addition, the average rate is lowered by the time it takes to re-fill the accelerator with a new store, and other gaps in time-at-store due to accesses and maintenance. While the machines in the data acquisition must be capable of taking data at the peak rates, the HPSS-based tape storage system is most efficient when the data rate is approximately the same over long periods of time. In addition, the buffer boxes, which are designed to buffer approximately 72 hours worth of data, can shield the data acquisition

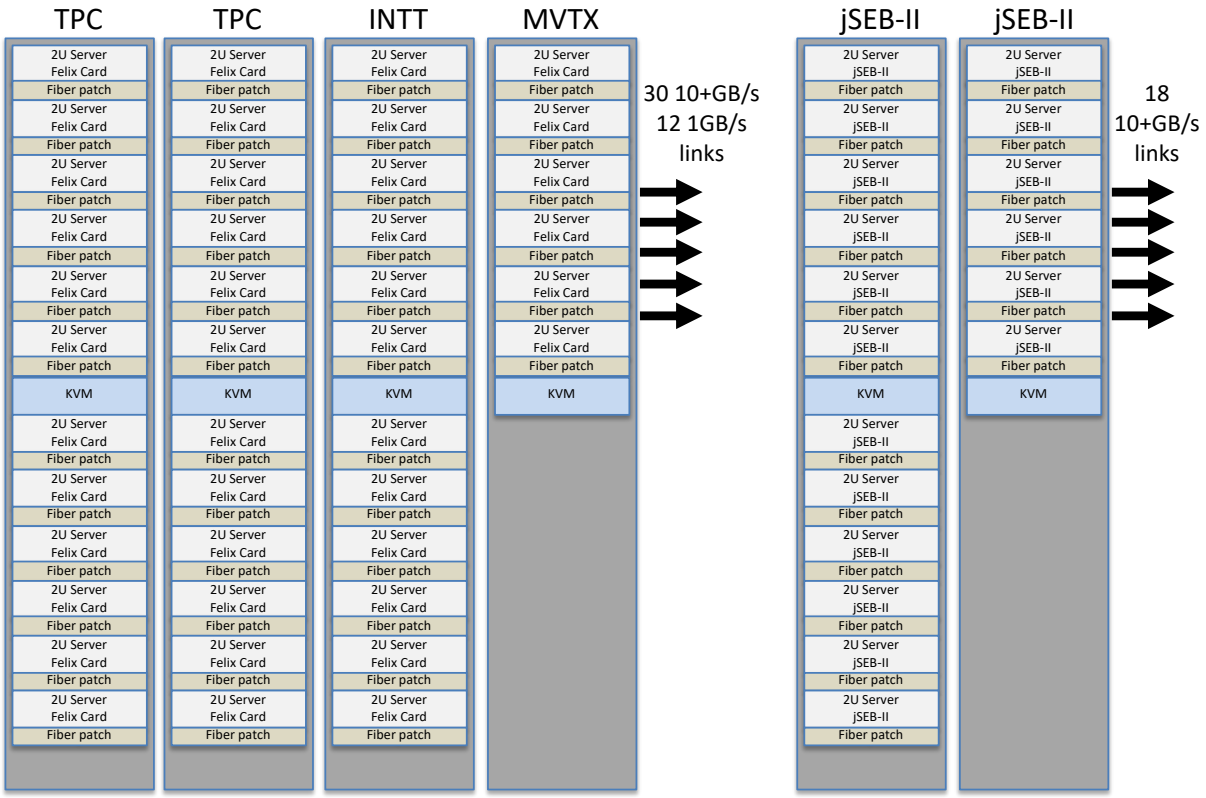



**Figure 7.3:** A tentative rack layout for the total number of about 60 machines needed to read out the detectors. Not shown here are the racks for network switches and the buffer boxes depicted in Fig. 7.1, which are expected to occupy three additional racks.

from short outages of the HPSS tape service.

### 7.1.2 Networks

At the time of this writing, the standard network connectivity is shifting towards a 25GBit/s standard, which replaces the legacy 10GBit/s speed. 25GBit/s links are about to break even in price with 10GBit/s links. We expect 10GBit/s to be a legacy standard by the time we commission the experiment. We are using 10GBit/s as a stand-in for a "faster than 1GBit/s" link, but expect to only deploy 25GBit/s, rather than 10GBit/s, links in 2023.

Fig 7.4 shows an overview of current 25GBit/s network technology. Shown in the pictures is a 100GBit/s fiber "QSFP" connector, and a network switch with a large number of such interfaces. Each QSFP can provide 4 links with 25GBit/s each, which can be configured as needed. The right picture shows a fiber assembly that breaks out the 4 25GBit/s links into 4 individual fibers that can connect 4 computers.

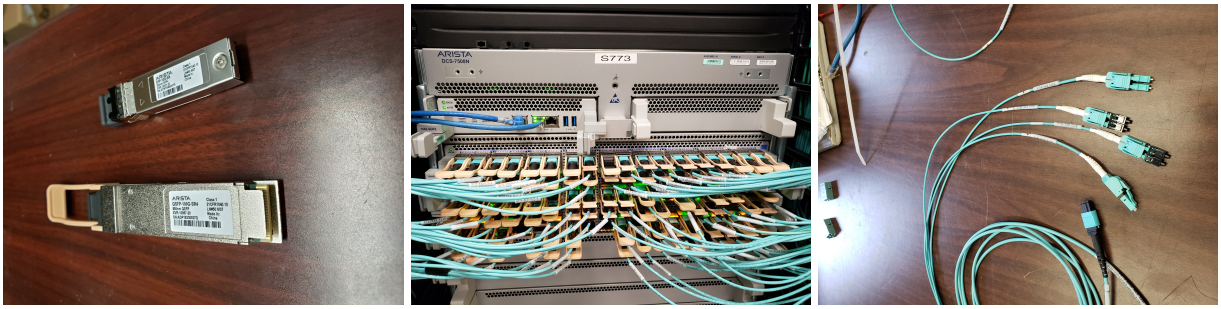


**Figure 7.4:** An overview of current 25GBit/s network technology. The left picture shows a 100GBit/s fiber connector (QSFP, for "Quadruple Small Form-factor Pluggable") and a standard 10GBit/s SFP. The middle picture shows a network switch with a large number of QSFPs. Each QSFP can provide 4 links with 25GBit/s each, which can be configured as needed. The right picture shows a fiber assembly that breaks out the 4 25GBit/s links into 4 individual fibers that can connect 4 computers.

We had the opportunity to conduct tests with a high-end storage server that is similar to what we would procure today. The storage system is rated 5GByte/s reading and writing concurrently (40GBit/s). The network connectivity is 50GBit/s full duplex in order to be able to sustain that I/O capability through the network.

This is the (abridged) output from *ifconfig* on that server:

```
Internal25G00: flags=6211<UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,SLAVE,MULTICAST>  mtu 9000
        ether 3c:fd:fe:cf:c6:60  txqueuelen 1000  (Ethernet)

Internal25G01: flags=6211<UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,SLAVE,MULTICAST>  mtu 9000
        ether 3c:fd:fe:cf:c6:60  txqueuelen 1000  (Ethernet)

bond0: flags=5187<UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MASTER,MULTICAST>  mtu 9000
        inet 10.42.38.109  netmask 255.255.255.0  broadcast 10.42.38.255
```

This shows a bonded 50GBit/s network interface made of two 25GBit/s ones. Here is the output from *ethtool*, showing the type of interface:

```
Settings for Internal25G00:
Supported ports: [ FIBRE ]
Supported link modes:   25000baseSR/Full
Speed: 25000Mb/s
Duplex: Full

Settings for Internal25G01:
Supported ports: [ FIBRE ]
Supported link modes:   25000baseSR/Full
Speed: 25000Mb/s
Duplex: Full
```

### 7.1.3 Data Storage and Offline Event Building

The buffer boxes receive the data streams from the SEBs and EBDCs and write each data stream to different files. If one assumes that one file is written per SEB and EBDC, the data from one given RHIC collision would be distributed over about 60 individual files. Different from the previous PHENIX experiment, sPHENIX will not use a real-time event builder, but perform the event building as an offline process.

This approach has many advantages, most notably the elimination of the peak data rate requirements when building events. It significantly reduces the complexity and possible failure modes that can lead to a loss of data.

A subset of the events will be assembled to full events in near real-time (on a time scale of 2 minutes) for online monitoring and data integrity checks. Another small fraction will be stored back to disk as fully assembled events to aid the development of reconstruction code and other software components. The majority of events, however, will be assembled on demand, reconstructed, and not stored.

### 7.1.4 The sPHENIX Data Format and Data Alignment

The event building, near-line or offline, requires a reliable way to align the various data blocks that belong to the same collision or RHIC beam crossing. With the advent of the detectors read out in streaming mode that do not have the concept of a "triggered" beam crossing, one has to make sure that enough alignment information is present in the data streams that this task can be performed flawlessly.

The sPHENIX data format is derived from the previous PHENIX Raw Data Format (PRDF). It seamlessly supports streaming data. At the core of a data block is the *data packet*.

In a traditional triggered readout scheme, each individual readout unit, such as a DCM2 for the calorimeters, contributes such a packet (and in some cases more than one) with unique identifiers to the data stream. This *packet id* identifies which unit the packet comes from.

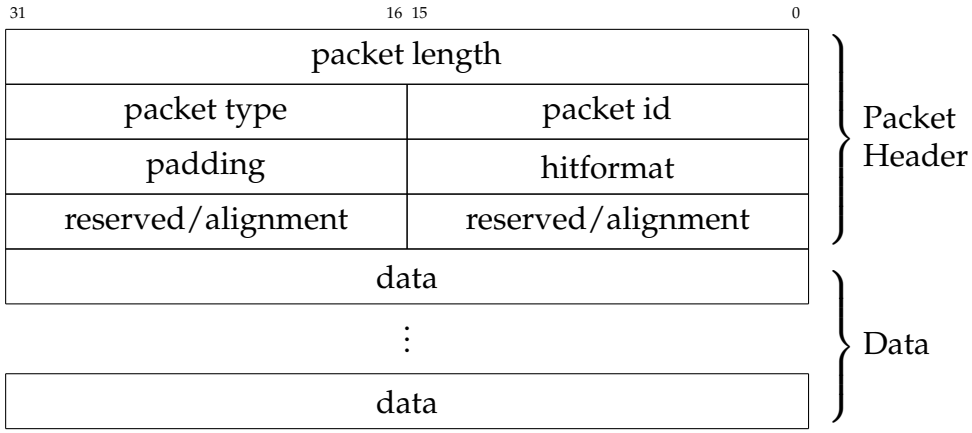
Each packet has a 16-byte header shown in this table 7.2.

The length is measured in 32-bit units (DWords), which allows us to have packet lengths of up to 16 GBytes, although most packets are substantially smaller. Each packet is a multiple of 32bit units (so each data structure starts at least on a 32 bit boundary). We usually choose higher data alignment boundaries (64bit or even 128bit). Aligning the data blocks to the prevailing CPU data bus widths (64bit at present) speeds up the processing of data.

The fields in the header are

**packet length** the overall length of the packet structure in Dwords

**Table 7.2:** The Packet Header.




**packet id** a unique identifier for the packet that says which unit generated the packet

**packet type** indicates the fundamental storage size in the packet, expressed in bytes (1 (character data), 2 (16bit), 4 (32 bit),...). This field is also known as the "swap unit" in case the data payload has to be byte-swapped for a different CPU architecture. It also gives the unit for the padding value.

**hitformat** This value identifies an algorithm to decode the data payload so the decoded data can be accessed by a set of standard APIs.

**padding** The amount of additional data added to bring the packet size to the desired alignment boundary.

**2 reserved/alignment fields** Those fields can hold 2 16bit values as needed to verify the proper alignment of various data blocks. They are set to 0 if unused.

Table 7.3 shows the composition of a (fictitious) packet with id 1001 that holds three 16-bit values (so it has the packet type 2) 20, 40, and 55. In order to maintain the 64bit alignment of the data, an additional 16bit word is added, which gives a padding value of 1.

While in transit between components, for example between a SEB and a Buffer Box, a number of packets is preceded by a *Event Header*, sometimes also called the *Frame Header*.

Table 7.4 shows the structure of the event header. The event length is again given in DWords (32bit length).

The Event header structure has two general-purpose time and alignment fields. If the first alignment field is 0, the second field is interpreted as a Unix time (32bits). Else the two fields are interpreted as system-specific alignment data.

| 31 16 | 15 0 | |
|---|---|---|
| packet length = 6 | | Packet Header |
| type = 2 | id = 1001 | |
| padding = 1 | hitformat = 3002 | |
| 0x3A | 0x79CE | |
| 40 | 20 | Data |
| 0 | 55 | |

**Table 7.3:** An example of a (fictitious) 64-bit aligned packet that holds the three 16bit values 20, 40,and 55, and a combined alignment value of 0x3A79CE.

| 31 16 | 15 8 | 7 0 | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Event length | | | Event Header |
| reserved | | event type | |
| Event Sequence | | | |
| Run Number | | | |
| Time/Alignment 0 | | | |
| Time/Alignment 1 | | | |
| Luminosity Block | | | |
| reserved | | | |
| data | | | Data |
| ⋮ | | | |
| data | | | |

**Table 7.4:** The structure of an Event Header.

There are a number of *event types* defined, which denote a different sets of devices that are read in that event. Most types are considered data events, and some of them are referred to as special events. The use of different event types is easiest explained – although they are not used at RHIC – with the spill-on and spill-off events. At accelerators that have a spill structure, such as the AGS, or the CERN SPS, one would usually generate type 1 events that read out the actual experiment. In addition, it is often necessary to obtain information *about* the most recent spill, the intensity, effective spill length, and so on. At the begin and end of each spill one generates spill-on and spill-off events, respectively, which read and

reset a number of scalers that count the beam signals from some start counter during the spill, together with other relevant information. The actual detector is not read out in those events. *Different event types read and store the data from different readout units.*

The most important special events are the so-called *begin-run event*, the *end-run event*, and the *luminosity event* that denotes the beginning of a new luminosity block. The begin- and end-run events are special events that usually contain meta-data about the data file, and so embed important information about the dataset in the data file itself.

It is guaranteed that the begin-run event is the first event seen from a given run, and the end-run event is the last event. In addition to the meta data they usually contain, they serve as a convenient marker for continuously running online monitoring processes that a new run has begun, or that a run has ended. On receipt of a begin-run event, such a monitoring process could, for example, clear all its monitoring histograms, or could store all such histograms on receipt of the end-run event.

The "Luminosity Event" aids the accounting of different conditions during a run by defining *luminosity blocks*, as described in section 7.

Here are the defined event types:

| Event type | meaning | comment |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Data Event | Readout of detector hardware |
| 2 | Streaming Data Event | Streaming Readout of detector hardware |
| 3 . . . 7 | Data Events | reserved for future use |
| 8 | Spill-On Event | |
| 9 | Begin-Run Event | Automatically generated |
| 12 | End-Run Event | Automatically generated |
| 14 | Scaler Event | Scaler information |
| 15 | Lumi Event | Denotes the start of a new Luminosity Block |
| 16 | Spill-Off Event | |

The Spill-on and Spill-off events have no application in RHIC running, but are often used during test beam data taking at accelerators with a spill structure.

Table 7.5 shows the hexadecimal values of an actual Event Header and its structure. The header is from TPC streaming data. The data come from a lab setup that tests the TPC front-end electronics. The event type 2 shown here denotes streaming data. Because the first alignment word is 0, the 2nd word is interpreted as a Unix time. 1541529897 corresponds to a date of Tue, Nov 6 13:44:57, 2018.

For storage, the data chunks framed by event headers are collected in larger buffers that have yet another header. This is largely a storage-side concept that allows the storage systems and networks to handle larger data sizes, which usually makes disk operations and network transfers more efficient. A buffer is meant to hold about 50-100 events,

| 31 … 16 | 15 … 8 | 7 … 0 | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0x0000890c | event length = 0x890c = 35084 | | Event Header |
| 0x00000002 | 0x000000 | type = 2 | |
| 0x00000002 | Event Sequence = 2 | | |
| 0x00001051 | Run Number= 0x1051 = 4177 | | |
| 0x00000000 | Time field 1 = 0 | | |
| 0x5be1e129 | Time field 2 = 0x5be1e129 = 1541529897 | | |
| 0x00000000 | Luminosity Block = 0 | | |
| 0x00000000 | reserved = 0 | | |
| | packet data | | Data |
| | ⋮ | | |
| | packet data | | |

**Table 7.5:** A hex-dump of an actual Event Header and its structure. The event type 2 denotes streaming data. Because the first time field is 0, the 2nd word is interpreted as a Unix time (1541529897). This corresponds to a date of Nov 6, 2018, 13:44:57, when the data were taken.

although any reasonable number of events (including just one event) can be bundled into a buffer. The buffer header holds some information about the general type of buffered data it holds.

Fig. 7.5 gives an overview of the hierarchy of the data format. Each readout unit, such as a DCM2, or a DAM, typically contributes a packet to an event. The packets from one event are collected in an event structure. A number of such events are then added to a buffer, which is then written out, or transferred through the network. Each unit is usually of variable length.

A buffer is always written out in multiples of 8Kbyte records. A number of bytes in the last record are then undefined. This concept goes back to the era of directly writing to tape, but even today, this enhances the data integrity. In case of data corruption, it is usually possible to skip and account for the "smallest unit". A corrupt packet usually requires to skip and ignore that packet, or possibly the entire event. In case of a significant data corruption, as a last resort, one can skip 8K records until the next buffer header is located. Without the constraint that a buffer starts on such an 8k boundary, it would be impossible to locate the next buffer start. Such a corruption is extremely rare, but most of the events outside the luminosity block in question can still be recovered in such a case.

The event headers and the packet headers are the primary means to verify the proper alignment of data. All events contain alignment data, which is virtually always the absolute

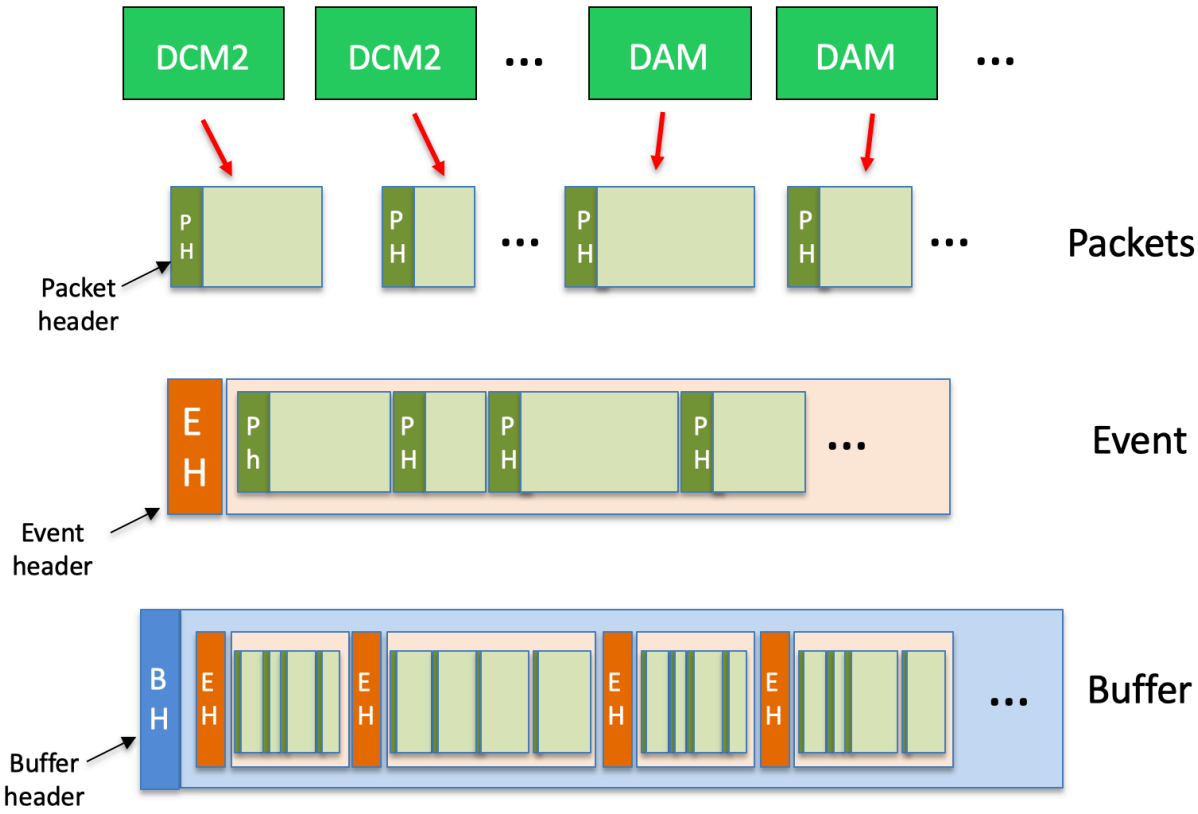



**Figure 7.5:** The hierarchy of data stored in a file. Each readout unit typically generates a packet. The packets from one event are collected in an Event. A collection of events are bundled into a buffer, which is then written out, or transferred through the network. Each unit can be, and usually is, of variable length.

value of the beam crossing counter (or a certain number of bits thereof). Streaming data contain the start beam crossing counter of the streaming block. In general, the data payloads generated by the front-end electronics embed the current beam-crossing counter value, which can then be compared to the header information. This ensures that there is no mis-alignment in the data, or that an existing mis-alignment can be recognized.

As an example, the TPC front-end electronics consists of a large number of SAMPA chips [29], which sample and digitize the data. The FELIX cards that read out the front-end electronics carrying the chips receive the 40 least significant bits (of 64) of the current beam-clock counter and embed that value in the headers they generate. In addition, they communicate the 20 least significant bits to the front-end cards that update the SAMPA chips with that value, which the SAMPA adds to the data structure it generates. In this way, periodic updates of the beam crossing counter are embedded in the data payload,

which makes it possible to correlate the streaming data with beam crossings, and recognize any mismatches.

We already have an offline event builder program that can read an unlimited number of parallel input streams and verify the alignment of all streams. It writes an output file with events from all input streams combined.

### 7.1.5 Data Compression

Although not shown, there may be a need for an additional layer of fast machines without much disk space requirements but fast CPUs. In the previous PHENIX experiment we used a *distributed compression* scheme where the data got compressed in a lossless fashion. The compression has traditionally yielded savings of 45% – 100GB of data would shrink, on average, to 65GB.

At the time, we needed a large number of CPU cores to keep up with the data volume in real-time. Current estimates show that the SEBs and EBDCs can perform that task, but additional CPU capacity can be added as needed.

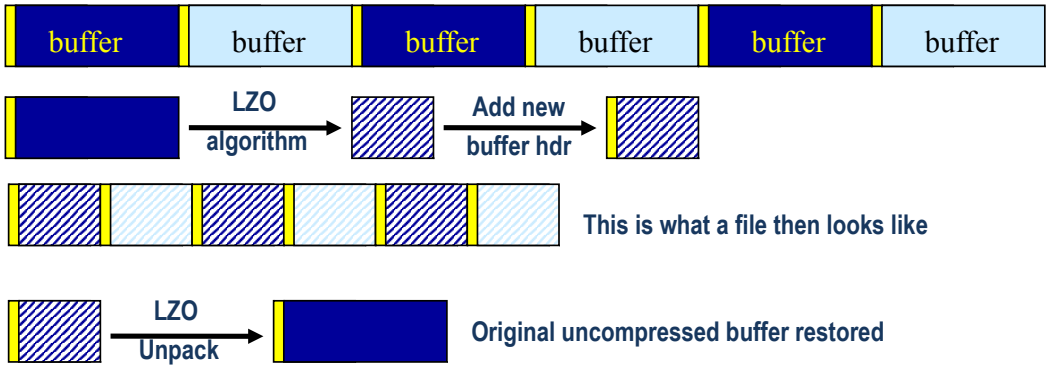



**Figure 7.6:** The principle of the raw data compression. The event data are organized in so-called buffers typically holding 50-100 events. Instead of sending this buffer to storage, the entire buffer gets compressed by a lossless algorithm. A new buffer header is added to the binary blob of compressed data, which is then sent to storage. On readback, the compressed payload is restored into the original buffer, which is passed on to the next software layer as if it had been read from storage this way. The compression functionality is entirely confined to the lowest I/O layers of the software.

Fig. 7.6 shows the principle of the late-stage compression, which works on the data buffers introduced in the previous chapter. The header of such a buffer, indicated in yellow in fig. 7.6, holds the length of the buffer and other meta-information, and in addition indicates that the payload contains actual event data. Rather than sending this buffer

to storage, we use different compression algorithms to compress the entire buffer in a loss-less manner. Most often we use the LZO [30] algorithm, which is the most efficient one that we have identified. The resulting binary blob of data receives a new buffer header, this time indicating that the payload is an entire compressed buffer. Due to the presence of the header, the result is again a legitimate buffer structure that can be stored or transferred using our standard protocols, just like the original, uncompressed buffer.

On readback, the I/O software layer examines the buffer header and learns that the payload is a compressed buffer. It reverses the compression and so restores the original buffer, which is then passed on to the next software layer as if this buffer had been read from disk in this form. In this way, the entire compression functionality is confined to the lowest I/O layer and transparent to user code.

### 7.1.6 DAQ Slow Controls

The sPHENIX detectors and DAQ components will require configuration, initialization, updating of run-time parameters and monitoring of component status. Configuration and control of the Emcal, Hcal, and MBD digitizer and DCM2 components will be accomplished through a standard interface component called the JSEB-II device which was used extensively in the PHENIX project. The current design has 18 JSEB-II devices which will be used for this control.

Monitoring of Emcal, Hcal, and MBD detector component temperatures, DAC gains, pulse and LED mask values along with other monitored values will be accomplished via a custom controller device called the Emcal Controller Module. This controller implements a set of common commands in a standard format over an ethernet link. There exist some 19200 readable components which will be read out from 80 of these custom controllers. The data from these components will be written to a PostgreSQL database.

High voltage control will be implemented for the EMCAL and HCAL detectors via a Weiner-ISEG controller via SNMP protocol. The MBD detector plans to use LeCroy High Voltage sources controlled via a serial interface. Low voltage control for DAQ component rack power will be controlled via Vicor megapacks which will be controlled through Modbus based Adam controllers. Low voltage control for the TPC detector will be via an ethernet interface which is planned to adhere to the same control format as the EMCAL controller Modules.

Embedded FPGA based programs for the TPC components will be written to EPROM minimizing DAQ startup time. Run-time configuration data will be sent via standardized interface functions.

## 7.2 The Global Level-1 System

At its core, the GL1 functionality is implemented in a FPGA that receives, for each beam crossing, a beam clock counter from the accelerator, in addition to inputs from the Local-Level 1 triggers that are described in detail in section 7.4. After examining the Local-Level 1 input data and the busy states of the different components, it arrives at a decision whether or not to accept the data from the beam crossing in question. In the end, a given crossing fulfills one or more classifications, which are usually referred to as different *trigger inputs*. For example, a collision could be characterized as (likely) containing an Upsilon signal, a high-momentum photon, or a jet, high centrality, or any of the trigger algorithms described later. Those properties are not exclusive; a given crossing can (and often does) fulfill more than one.

One would give priority to the most "interesting" events, usually the ones that fulfill a dedicated LL1 criterion. The least interesting crossing is one where no actual collision took place. In order to facilitate consistency checks and normalizations of the calculated cross sections, one still adds a very small fraction of those "clock" triggers to the mix.

### 7.2.1 Trigger Scaledowns

A given trigger mix is implemented by a set of *scaledown values*. The scaledown system counts how often a trigger signal arrives at a given trigger input while the data acquisition is not busy. If the scaledown is, for example, 10, only every 10th such collision is accepted, all others are discarded. It is of the utmost importance that the system only counts trigger signals that arrived while the DAQ system was live. In this way, the one accepted (and recorded) collision represents, other than itself, 9 others of the same statistical significance *that could have been taken*. In the analysis phase, the data from this collision must be weighted by a factor of 10 to account for the scaledown. Conversely, if that scaledown is set to 1 (no rate reduction), each triggered collision is getting accepted, and its weight is 1.

The entire latency for the Level-1 trigger system is specified at 4.0-5.0 microseconds.

The GL1 system will be implemented in firmware on a dedicated board with a Xilinx Zynq FPGA. The board has 14 individual fiber transceivers and could support several concurrent implementations of the trigger system, a feature that will likely be used during the commissioning phase of the experiment.

In addition to the FPGA fabric, the Zynq FPGA has several CPU cores, and several Linux systems for the board exist. This provides access to a standard Ethernet port. The board can be configured through the network, and can also provide aggregate information, such as counters, via the network interface.

The GL1 system then interfaces with one or possibly two timing system boards that implement a number of so-called *virtual Granule Timing Modules* (vGTM). One can think

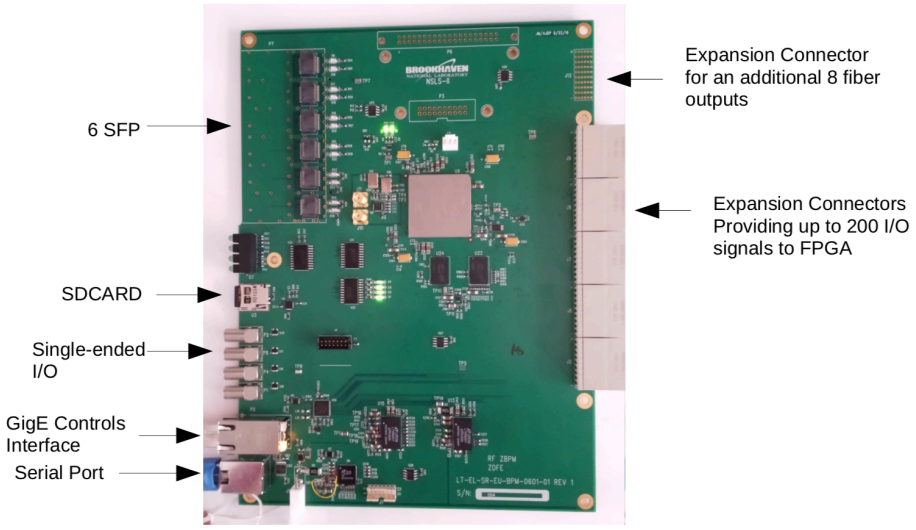



**Figure 7.7:** A picture of a candidate board to run the GL1 System. The board has a Xilinx Zynq FPGA which, in addition to the FPGA portion, has ARM CPU cores that can run Linux and provide the slow controls interface, as well as access to aggregate information. This is the same hardware that we plan to use for the timing system; the difference in functionality is entirely in the firmware.

of a vGTM as an interface module to which the GL1 system delegates the specifics of the handling of trigger and timing data required by the various front-end modules. The vGTM prepares and transmits the timing and trigger information to a given front-end in the format and at the time needed by the particular front-end unit in question.

## 7.3 Timing System

The sPHENIX Timing System performs distribution of the timing information to the front end modules (FEM) for the various detector subsystems. The front-end electronics needs to be aware of the RHIC clock in order to synchronize the sampling frequencies with the arrival of the signals. It receives this information from the GL1 system and an accelerator interface system that furnishes it with the RHIC clock and other relevant information.

The module is housed in a 1U rack mount enclosure and interfaces with the controls network via TCP/IP over gigabit Ethernet. The actual timing information is transmitted via dedicated fiber interfaces.

At the core of the timing system are multiple copies of a virtual *Granule Timing Module* implemented in firmware (Fig. 7.8). A granule refers to a set of front-end units that receive identical timing information. This is most often a section of a detector system, such as the north- or south half of the electromagnetic calorimeter. Since it is possible to operate a

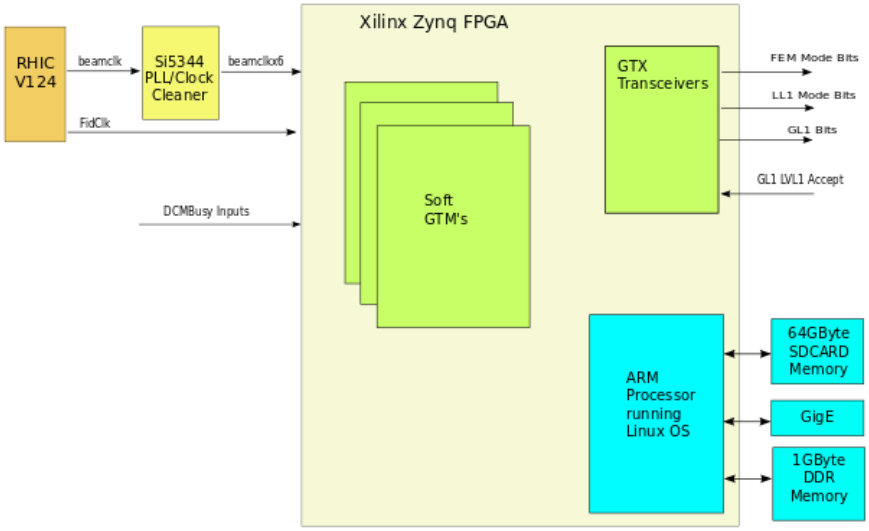



**Figure 7.8:** Block diagram of the Timing system, which contains a number of virtual *Granule Timing Modules* (GTMs) implemented in firmware on a FPGA. The board receives the RHIC clock from the accelerator system, as well as a *fiducial tick*, denoting the passing-by of bunch 1 in the ring. The GTMs distribute the timing and trigger information in a detector-specific way, and maintain the busy state of the DAQ.

granule in a standalone fashion during testing and debugging of the detector readout, we will likely split large detector systems up into more granules than strictly necessary just from a timing information perspective.

The timing system board has 14 implemented transceivers. With one input taken by the connection to the GL1 board, 13 connections remain, and 13 individual virtual GTMs, or vGTMs, can be realized on the FPGA board. A prototype implementation of both the GL1 and the vGTM firmware exists. Depending on the details of the final implementation, it might be possible to integrate the vGTMs together with the GL1 on one FPGA. This would not only save one transceiver, bringing the total number of vGTMs to a total of 14, but also make the communication between the GL1 and the vGTMs much easier, as they are implemented on the same FPGA fabric.

Conversely, the number of 13 or 14 vGTMs might not be enough, and the GL1 system would need to interface with more than one timing system board. At present time, we believe that one timing system board will suffice.

The vGTMs provide a low jitter distribution and generation of timing signals, namely the Beam Clock, Beam Clock $\times$ 6 (generated on board via PLL), and LVL-1 Accept signals. The Timing System distributes a copy of the generated 6 $\times$ the RHIC clock to the various front-ends.

On each clock cycle, the vGTM can transmit up to 16 bits of data. Running at 6 times

the RHIC beam clock, the system can transmit up to 12 bytes of information per RHIC crossing.

A number of bits in each transmitted 16bit value are defined that determine the proper interpretation of data. The actual implementation of the interface to the front-end is still customized for a particular group of front-ends.

Each ring of the RHIC accelerator has 120 "buckets" that can can hold beam bunches. A number of them, by convention the highest-numbered ones, remain empty so the beams can be dumped safely. After the last filled bunch has passed the beam dump area, a switch can be flipped that makes the next filled bunches leave their orbit and end in the beam dump. Those empty buckets are referred to as the *abort gap*. The entire timing system revolves about that 120 bunch number. The system is aware of the current bunch number crossing the sPHENIX interaction region, and its state (filled or empty). For example, the vGTM could instruct the front-end to perform house-keeping tasks at empty crossings where no beam collisions can take place, or could instruct a system to generate a non-zero-suppressed event every few minutes to measure the pedestals.

One rotation of a given bunch takes about 12.5 $\mu$s, and one second sees about 80,000 rotations. The vGTMs usually endlessly repeat a number of different sequences of 120 basic instructions for the fronted, and "imprint" the trigger information, if any. A configurable scheduler in a vGTM allows us to cycle through different blocks of such sequences with (usually large) repeat counts, in order to schedule relatively rare special special tasks.

As a (fictitious) example, if we wanted to generate the aforementioned in-beam-pedestal event (with no zero-suppression) once every 10 minutes, one would make

1. a block with a sequence that instructs the front-end to take data normally
2. a block with a sequence that instructs the front-end to take pedestal data during an empty crossing.

.

One would then schedule 48 million (about 10 minutes worth) repetitions of pattern 1, followed by one occurrence of pattern 2, and then cycle back to another 48 million repetitions of pattern 1, and so on.

Each virtual GTM implements its own scheduler. The scheduler can hold 32 different sequences (internally called "mode bit groups").

For each beam crossing, up to 6 values of 16 bits can be distributed. That number may be reduced for some systems by the need to maintain proper lock between the transceivers, but is generally a large enough amount of data to accommodate our needs.

The primary instruction that is transmitted to each front-end unit for each RHIC crossing is 8 bits of information, historically called the *mode bits*, that convey the desired *mode* of operation of the front-end for that particular crossing.

The (up to) 6 16-bit values transmitted per crossing take on different meanings depending on the transmission number.

As an example, the TPC front-end uses all 6 16-bit values. The bits mean, for each value,

| clock count | | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bits 0-7 | mode bits/BCO | mode bits | BCO bits 0-7 | BCO bits 8-15 | BCO bits 16-23 | BCO bits 24-31 | BCO bits 32-39 |
| bit 8 | beam clock | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| bit 9 | LVL1 accept | X | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| bit 10 | endat0 | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| bit 11 | endat1 | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| bit 12 | modebit en. | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| bits 13-15 | | 3 user bits | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |

In this way, the system transmits the 8 mode bits on the "primary" clock edge that coincides with the edge of the actual beam clock. This particular clock edge is tagged by bit 8 being 1 as that edge. On that same edge, the system also transmits the "Level-1 accept" information in bit 9. Two more bits, called "endat 0" and "endat 1", are transmitted and held through the 6 cycles. They historically delineated the data transmission window from a front-end and are unused in the TPC system, but are a convenient marker that shows an active data transmission for debugging purposes. They may be used again in other systems.

When bit 12, which is essentially a copy of bit 8, is high, it denotes that the least significant 8 bits hold the mode bit pattern for this crossing. At the same time, the 3 most significant bits hold user bits, that can be used for several purposes. At the current time, no particular use for the user bits has been implemented.

When bit 12 is 0, the 3 most significant bits count through the remaining 5 clocks, which transmit a total of 40 bits from the global beam crossing counter. As described previously, the front-end copies those bits to the headers, and also copies the 20 least significant bits to the front-end ASICs, which embed those into the data stream, for data alignment verification.

The current redundancy of bit 12 with bit 8, which make each transmission deterministic, allows us to transmit the different per-clock information in a different order, if that should become necessary.

The Timing System needs to know the RHIC bunch crossing number. The Collider provides a "fiducial tick", a hardware signal that denotes the passing of bunch number 1, which the GL1 and Timing System uses to get in sync with the accelerator state. At the start of the GL1 and Timing System operation, all its internal counters are held at reset. At the next crossing of bunch 1, the systems start counting and remain in sync with the bunch numbers.

A candidate board for the Timing system was already shown in the previous chapter in Fig. 7.7. Fig. 7.9 shows the 6 boards that are being used in various systems to implement the GL1 and timing system firmware.

Fig. 7.10 shows a picture of the FELIX version 2.0 card that we are using to read out the individual front-end cards in the tracking systems. In the upper left corner, the timing mezzanine board is installed. This board receives the timing data from the vGTM.

**Figure 7.9:** A picture of our candidate boards to run both the GL1 and the Timing System, depending on the installed firmware. We have 6 boards in hand that are used in various systems to implement the GL1 and timing system firmware.

## 7.4 Trigger

The goal of the sPHENIX Level-1 Trigger System is to sample the key physics from the RHIC delivered luminosity and reduce the selected event rate below the specified 15 kHz sPHENIX data acquisition bandwidth. This goal is achieved with the following detailed Level-1 trigger system providing decisions within a specified 4.2 microsecond latency (equivalent 40 ticks of the RHIC 9.4 MHz crossing clock) during which detectors are able to buffer data output either in the Front End Electronics or in the downstream Data Acquisition System.

We first document the RHIC delivered luminosity projections that must be sampled by the trigger system. Tables 7.6, 7.7 and 7.8 show the Collider-Accelerator Detector group's projections for luminosities delivered and peak collision rates for Au+Au, $p$+$p$, and $p$+Au at 200 GeV, respectively. The sPHENIX schedule includes five years of physics running labeled Year-1 through Year-5. The Level-1 triggers need to be able to handle the highest projected rates and so we show the maximum projected values at the peak (beginning) of the store. These quantities are shown for all collisions and for the fraction of collisions – denoted $f_{z10}$ – which lie within the restricted $|z| < 10$ cm range over which sPHENIX has optimal tracking coverage for pseudorapidity $|\eta| < 1.0$.

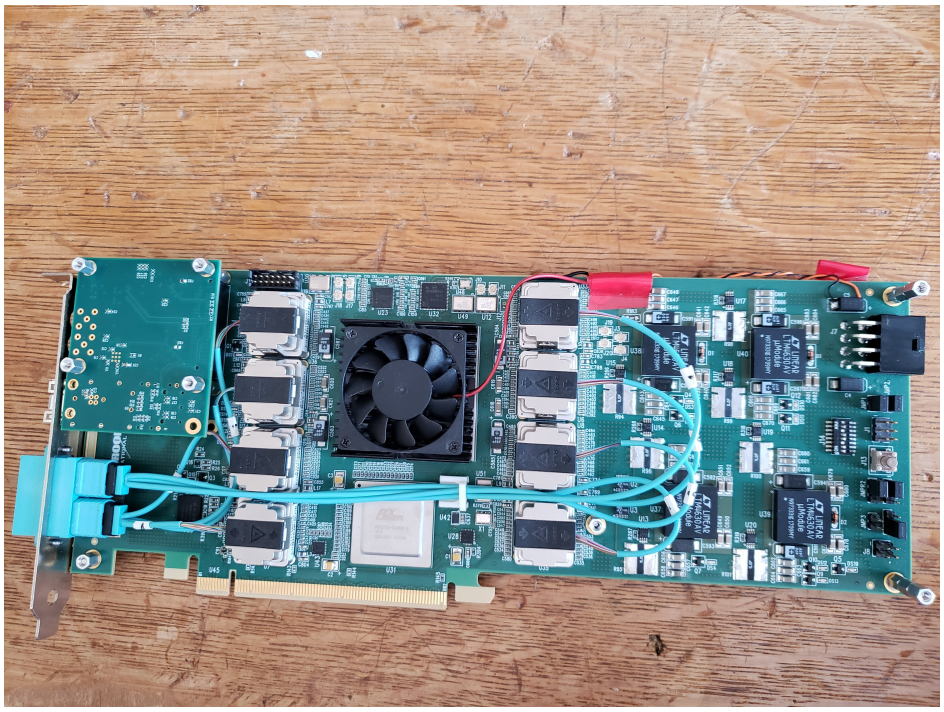


**Figure 7.10:** A picture of the FELIX version 2.0 card that we are using to read out the individual front-end cards in the tracking systems. In the upper left corner, the timing mezzanine board is installed. This board receives the timing data from the vGTM.

**Table 7.6:** Summary of C-AD key values for Au+Au at 200 GeV running.

| Mode | $nb^{-1}$/wk [min] | $nb^{-1}$/wk [max] | $f_{z10}$ [min] | $f_{z10}$ [max] | ave/peak | peak rate [max] | peak rate $\times f_{z10}$ [max] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Au+Au (Year-1) | 3 | 4.75 | 0.19 | 0.3 | 0.6 | 1.5E5 | 4.5E4 |
| Au+Au (Year-3) | 3 | 7.02 | 0.3 | 0.3 | 0.6 | 2.2E5 | 6.6E4 |
| Au+Au (Year-5) | 3 | 7.51 | 0.3 | 0.3 | 0.6 | 2.4E5 | 7.1E4 |

### 7.4.1 Physics Driven Trigger Requirements

This section details the various physics based trigger requirements. We discuss five types of triggers below: (1) minimum bias trigger, (2) photon trigger, (3) jet trigger, (4) hadron trigger, and (5) Upsilon trigger.

*(1) Minimum bias trigger*. In the case of Au+Au collisions at 200 GeV, the physics is delivered by simply triggering on inelastic collisions - a minimum bias trigger (MBT). We expect to utilize the majority (90%) of the 15 kHz bandwidth for recording minimum bias Level-1 triggered events. The key requirements of this MBT are to fire on a large fraction

**Table 7.7:** Summary of C-AD key values for $p$+$p$ at 200 GeV running.

| Mode | pb$^{-1}$/wk [min] | pb$^{-1}$/wk [max] | $f_{z10}$ [min] | $f_{z10}$ [max] | ave/peak | peak rate [max] | peak rate $\times f_{z10}$ [max] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| p+p (Year-2) | 25 | 64 | 0.16 | 0.19 | 0.6 | 1.2E7 | 2.4E6 |
| p+p (Year-4) | 25 | 64 | 0.19 | 0.19 | 0.6 | 1.2E7 | 2.4E6 |

**Table 7.8:** Summary of C-AD key values for $p$+Au at 200 GeV running.

| Mode | pb$^{-1}$/wk [min] | pb$^{-1}$/wk [max] | $f_{z10}$ [min] | $f_{z10}$ [max] | ave/peak | peak rate [max] | peak rate $\times f_{z10}$ [max] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| p+Au (Year-2) | 0.14 | 0.35 | 0.17 | 0.25 | 0.6 | 2.8E6 | 6.9E5 |

of the 7.2 barn Au+Au inelastic cross section and to provide a selection on collisions with vertex $|z| < 10$ cm. The minimum bias detector (MBD) described in Chapter 6.1, and based on the existing PHENIX Beam-Beam Counter modules, meets these specifications.

In the case of $p$+$p$ and $p$+Au at 200 GeV, it is critical to sample the luminosity via more selective Level-1 triggers to ensure high statistics for single high $p_T$ jets, high $p_T$ hadrons, high $p_T$ photons, and Upsilons decaying to dielectrons. From the rates shown in the Tables above, rejection factors of order 5,000-10,000 are needed in $p$+$p$ collisions at 200 GeV in order for individual Level-1 triggers to be allocated 1-2 kHz of bandwidth. All such Level-1 triggers are based on information from the Electromagnetic and Hadronic calorimeters.

We briefly detail here the requirements for calorimetric-based triggering on single jet, single hadron, photon, and Upsilons in $p$+$p$ and $p$+Au collisions (where they are crucial to complete the scientific mission of sPHENIX). Expected trigger efficiencies and rejection factors are presented using full GEANT4 simulations of the sPHENIX detector of $p$+$p$ collisions (using PYTHIA 8) and $p$+Au collisions (using HIJING). We note that the mean number of binary collisions in $p$+Au collisions is $\langle N_{coll} \rangle = 4.6$ and there is a significantly larger underlying event compared with $p$+$p$ collisions. Thus, trigger rejections are expected to be lower in $p$+Au; however, the interaction rates are also lower such that we find similar trigger performance.

*(2) Photon trigger.* Collision events with a high-$p_{\mathrm{T}}$ photon can be selected by requiring that some amount of energy is deposited into a small set of EMCal towers above threshold. Due to the precise nature of the experimental signature (large amount of electromagnetic energy deposited in a small region), this trigger achieves large rejections for even modest $p_{\mathrm{T}}$ thresholds while maintaining an excellent efficiency. In $p$+$p$ collisions, an unprescaled trigger which is efficient for $p_{\mathrm{T}}^{\gamma} > 10$ GeV photons will be crucial for enabling sPHENIX to collect the necessary comparison data for photon-tagged measurements of (jet and hadron) energy loss in Au+Au collisions, as well as for high-$p_{\mathrm{T}}$ photon production measurements which will serve as a reference for tests of binary-collision scaling in Au+Au collisions.

Similarly, a $p_{\mathrm{T}}^{\gamma} > 10$ GeV photon trigger in $p$+Au collisions enables measurements of cold nuclear matter effects on hard process rates and on photon–hadron correlations. In both cases, the trigger will be configured with multiple thresholds, such that auxiliary lower-threshold triggers operated with a prescale for use in determining the efficiency of the higher-threshold unprescaled trigger.

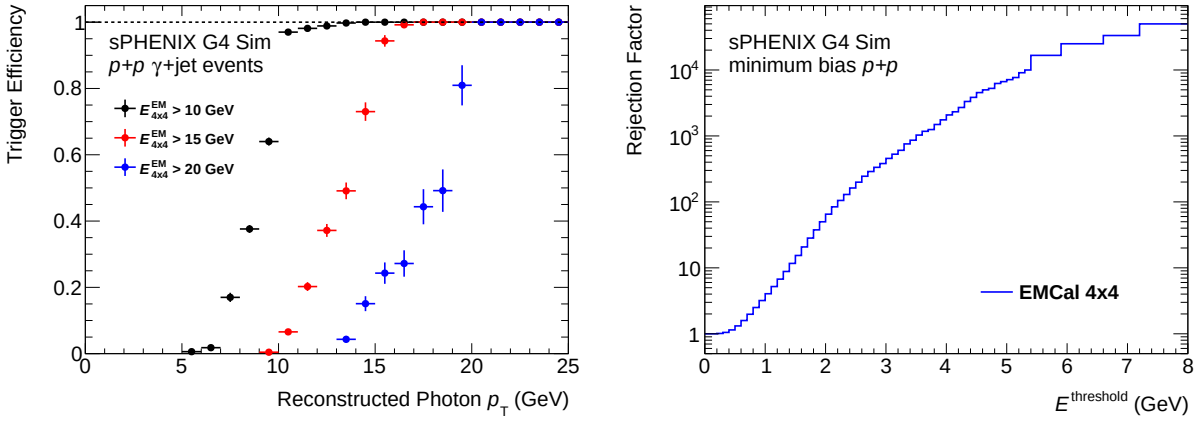



**Figure 7.11:** *Left:* Trigger efficiency for photons with respect to the reconstructed photon $p_{\mathrm{T}}$. For this plot, PYTHIA 8 events with the prompt photon switch turned on and $\hat{p}_{\mathrm{T}} > 8$ GeV were used. The efficiency is shown for three different energy thresholds using the EMCal 4x4 trigger. *Right:* Rejection factors in minimum bias $p$+$p$ collisions for EMCal 4x4 energy thresholds.

Figure 7.11 demonstrates the simulated trigger efficiency curves and rejection factors for such a photon trigger, based on requiring some minimum energy in overlapping $4 \times 4$ EMCal tower windows, in GEANT4-simulated $p$+$p$ events. The simulations show that even a 5 GeV trigger threshold will achieve a rejection factor of greater than $10^4$.

The trigger efficiency results are nearly identical in $p$+Au collision simulations. Figure 7.12 (left panel) shows the trigger rejection factors as a function of energy threshold in $p$+Au minimum bias collisions. A rejection of $5 \times 10^3$ is achieved for a threshold of 6.5-GeV, which very safely meets the physics requirements.

*(3) Jet trigger.* Collision events with a high-$p_{\mathrm{T}}$ jet can be selected by requiring that some amount of energy is deposited into a moderate-sized patch of the EMCal and HCal (a "jet patch" or FullCalo trigger). By using information from both the EMCal and HCal, the trigger can avoid being biased by the fragmentation pattern or flavor of the jet and can operate with a high efficiency. In addition, the trigger could be configured to examine the total energy in different-sized patches (for example square patches which enclose circular jets with radius $R = 0.3$ and $R = 0.4$).

In $p$+$p$ collisions, a jet patch trigger which is efficient for $p_{\mathrm{T}} > 20$ GeV jets allows sPHENIX to collect necessary comparison data for inclusive jet, dijet, jet structure, and other jet-based measurements of energy loss in Au+Au collisions. In $p$+Au collisions, such a trigger

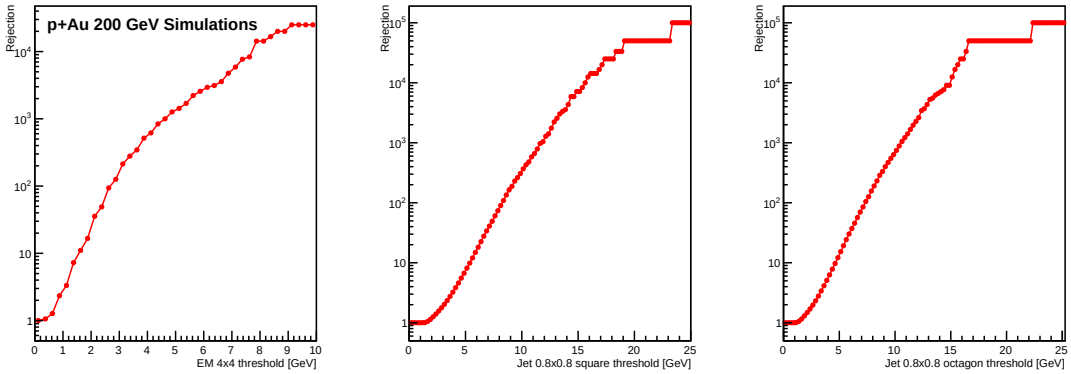



**Figure 7.12:** Trigger rejection results in minimum bias $p$+Au collisions at 200 GeV from HIJING events run through the full sPHENIX GEANT4 simulation. *Left:* Photon trigger rejection as a function of the energy threshold. *Middle:* Jet trigger rejection as a function of the energy threshold using a $0.8 \times 0.8$ square region. *Right:* Jet trigger rejection as a function of the energy threshold using a $0.8 \times 0.8$ region removing the corners of $0.2 \times 0.2$ to model an cross shape.

enables the benchmarking of cold nuclear matter effects on jet and hadron production, especially at moderate and large $p_{\mathrm{T}}$. Given the large collision rates projected for $p$+$p$ and $p$+Au data-taking, the jet trigger must be configured to achieve a sufficiently large rejection for minimum bias events, setting a lower limit on the minimum $p_{\mathrm{T}}$ at which the trigger could record events unprescaled. Additionally, the trigger will be configured with lower $p_{\mathrm{T}}$ thresholds and a finite prescale to provide events which are used to determine the efficiency turn-on curve for the unprescaled, high threshold-$p_{\mathrm{T}}$ jet trigger. The segmentation of the calorimeter available at Level-1 is shown in Figure 7.13.

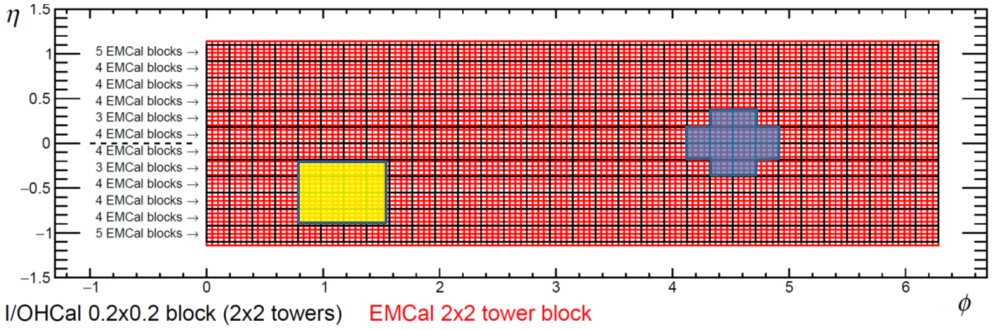



**Figure 7.13:** Diagram showing the calorimeter segmentation for use in the Level-1 jet patch trigger. There are 384 effective combined calorimeter energies available (in $\Delta\eta \times \Delta\phi = 0.2 \times 0.2$ regions). This grid is comprised of 12 elements in $\eta$ and 32 elements in $\phi$. Shown on top are the default $0.8 \times 0.8$ square jet patch region and an alternative with the corner energies removed.

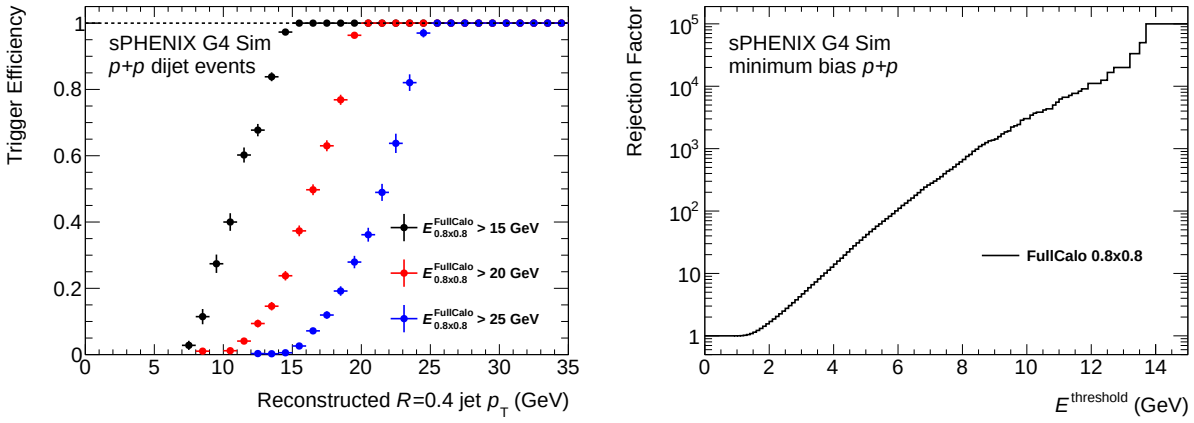



**Figure 7.14:** *Left:* Trigger efficiency for jets with respect to the (offline) reconstructed anti-$k_t$ $R = 0.4$ jet $p_T$, based on requiring a minimum energy in a $\Delta\eta \times \Delta\phi = 0.8 \times 0.8$ region of the calorimeters. For this plot, PYTHIA 8 events with the hard QCD switch turned on and $\hat{p}_T > 20$ GeV were used. The efficiency is shown for three different window energy thresholds. *Right:* Rejection factors in minimum bias $p$+$p$ collisions for FullCalo $0.8 \times 0.8$ window energy thresholds.

Figure 7.14 demonstrates the simulated trigger efficiency curves and rejection factors for the FullCalo Jet trigger in GEANT4-simulated $p$+$p$ events. The simulations show that a 12 GeV trigger threshold will achieve a rejection factor of over $10^4$. Figure 7.12 (middle panel) shows comparable rejections at a slightly higher 15-GeV threshold. One can modestly improve the rejection by summing the energy in a $0.8 \times 0.8$ region removing the $0.2 \times 0.2$ corners (slightly more circular); though this improvement is not needed. Both easily meet the performance requirements.

*(4) Hadron trigger.* In addition to the FullCalo jet trigger above, events containing high-$p_T$ hadrons can be selected by requiring an energy deposit above threshold in a narrower $\Delta\eta \times \Delta\phi$ region of the calorimeters. In $p$+$p$ and $p$+Au collisions, such a trigger could enhance the statistics for intermediate-$p_T$ hadrons, extending the $p$+$p$ and cold nuclear matter references for hadron-based measurements to a lower hadron $p_T$ range than would naturally be selected with a (higher-$p_T$) jet trigger. In addition, such a trigger could be useful in selecting events with leading hadrons from heavy flavor quark jets: since these hadrons have a higher typical $z$ than light jets, they would not fire the jet trigger until they reach substantially higher hadron $p_T$. Figure 7.15 demonstrates the simulated trigger efficiency curves for the FullCalo $\Delta\eta \times \Delta\phi = 0.4 \times 0.4$ hadron trigger in GEANT4-simulated $p$+$p$ events. The simulations show that a 10 GeV window trigger threshold will achieve a rejection factor of over $10^4$. Rejection factors in $p$+Au are quite similar.

*(5) Upsilon trigger.* Upsilon states decaying through the di-electron channel can be identified with a calorimeter-based trigger which requires a high-energy deposit in the EMCal consistent with an electron. For decays of the Y states, the large mass of the parent

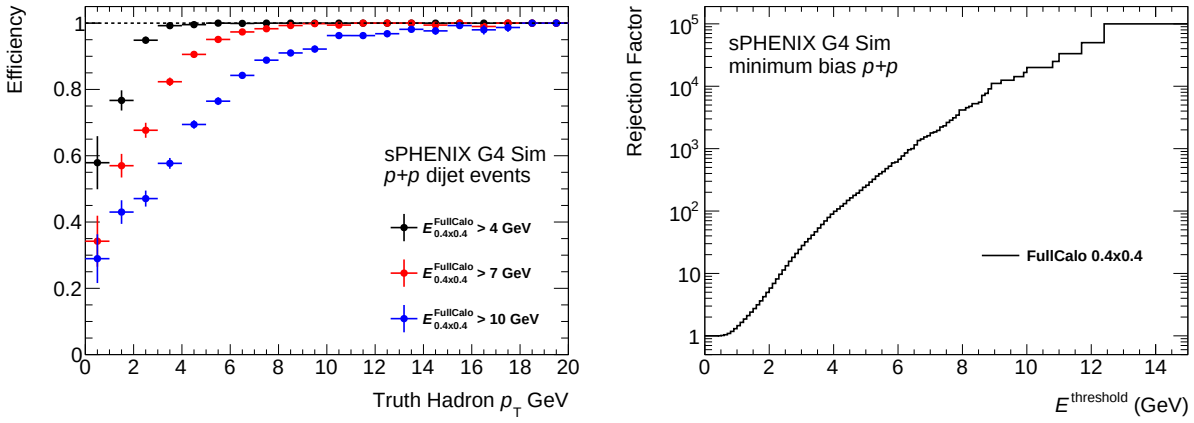



**Figure 7.15:** *Left:* Trigger efficiency for high-$p_T$ hadrons with respect to the truth-level hadron $p_T$. The efficiency is shown for three different window energy threshold using the the FullCalo $\Delta\eta \times \Delta\phi = 0.4 \times 0.4$ hadron trigger. For this plot, the efficiency is determined in the same PYTHIA 8 hard-QCD $\hat{p}_T > 20$ GeV samples used to determine the jet trigger efficiency. In this case, for the purposes of firing the trigger, a hadron benefits from the fact that it is likely to be in close proximity to other hadrons in the jet which contribute to the energy in the FullCalo sliding windows. Thus, this estimate of the efficiency is most appropriate for the case of hadrons inside moderate-$p_T$ quark or gluon jets (e.g. a separate study is needed to estimate the trigger efficiency for hadrons in charm or beauty jets). *Right:* Rejection factor in minimum bias $p$+$p$ collisions for FullCalo $0.4 \times 0.4$ window energy thresholds.

particle sets a lower limit on the energy of its highest-energy electron daughter, potentially allowing a single-electron trigger to sample the full Upsilon production cross-section at all kinematics for which the sPHENIX detector has acceptance. In $p$+$p$ collisions, an Y trigger will be critical to provide reference data for quarkonia melting measurements in Au+Au collisions. In $p$+Au collisions, such a trigger is needed to provide a high-statistics calibration of cold nuclear matter effects on Y production.

Figure 7.16 demonstrates the simulated trigger efficiency curves and rejection factors for such an Upsilon trigger, based on requiring some minimum energy in a $4 \times 4$ EMCal tower window, in GEANT4-simulated $p$+$p$ events. At a threshold of 4.5 GeV, where the trigger is still efficient, the rejection factor for minimum bias events is $\approx 4000$. While this is slightly lower than the nominal specification of $5,000$ to $10,000$, this trigger could be allocated additional bandwidth. In $p$+Au collisions, the rejection factor is $\approx 1000$. At the highest peak rates projected for $p$+Au collisions, this rejection is still sufficient with a bandwidth allocation of 3 kHz.

However, given that the single electron trigger rejections are close to the requirements, we have designed an electron pair trigger as well. Figure 7.17 (left panel) shows the Upsilon truth invariant mass, that reconstructed from full GEANT4 simulations, and then reconstructed from simulations for the angles but with the truth energy, and finally

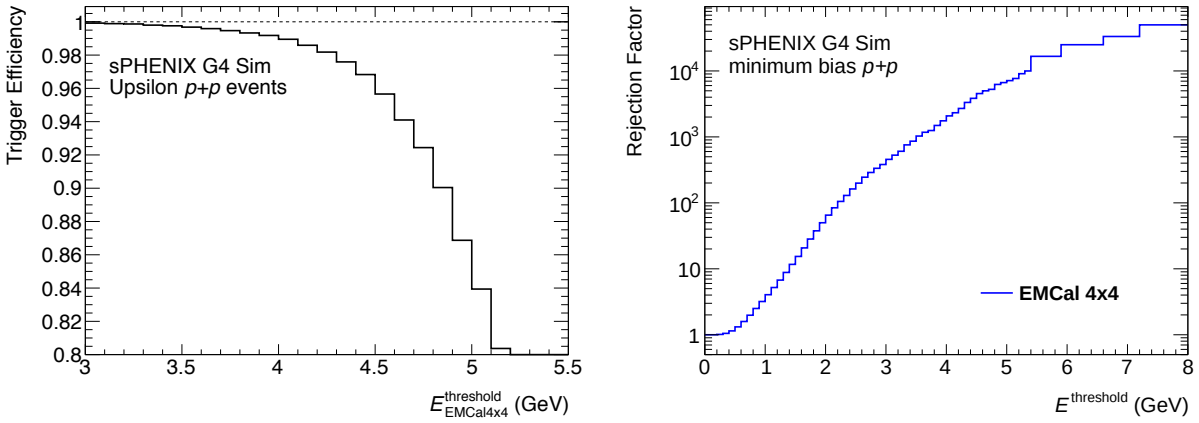



**Figure 7.16:** *Left:* Trigger efficiency for Upsilons decaying to two electrons, both of which are in the sPHENIX acceptance. The event sample used is PYTHIA 8 events with generator-level filtering on the decay electron and positron kinematics. The efficiency is shown as a function of the required EMCal 4x4 window threshold. *Right:* Rejection factor in minimum bias $p$+$p$ collisions for EMCal 4x4 window energy thresholds (same as the right plot in Fig. 7.11).

reconstructed from simulations for the energy but with the truth angles. This demonstrates that for the trigger calculation of the invariant mass, the angular resolution is subdominant in the overall mass resolution. Note that the real measurement of the Upsilon invariant mass will be done with the sPHENIX tracking, and these results are using the calorimeter energy only. The middle and right panel shows the invariant mass resolution using the two electron energies from the $4 \times 4$ calorimeter sums and using different numbers of bits to encode the angular information $(\phi, \eta)$. Even a very modest 3 bits in $\phi$ and 2 bits in $\eta$ are sufficient for reasonable invariant mass resolution, and are easily accommodated in a trigger lookup table. The trigger rejection in $p$+$p$ collisions is of order $50,000 - -100,000$ and comparably improved in $p$+Au over the single electron trigger. We include this dielectron trigger as a requirement for the Level-1 trigger system.

### 7.4.2 Calorimeter Trigger

The electromagnetic calorimeter has 24,576 channels that are read out via the Front End Electronics (FEE) in groups of 64 channels. Each channel has a 65 MHz 14-bit ADC, with a nominal data readout of 16 samples. The digitized data will have a baseline pedestal subtraction, gain correction based on a lookup table, and time adjustment based on the $6\times$ RHIC beam crossing clock. The FEE then performs a sum the energies from adjacent $2 \times 2$ non-overlapping towers. The detector to FEE cabling will ensure that the 64 channels contain a contiguous set of nearest neighbor $2 \times 2$ towers. The trigger primitive output is bandwidth limited to 8 bits for each $2 \times 2$ sum, and these are transmitted every beam crossing through a small transition module mounted on the rear of the FEE system

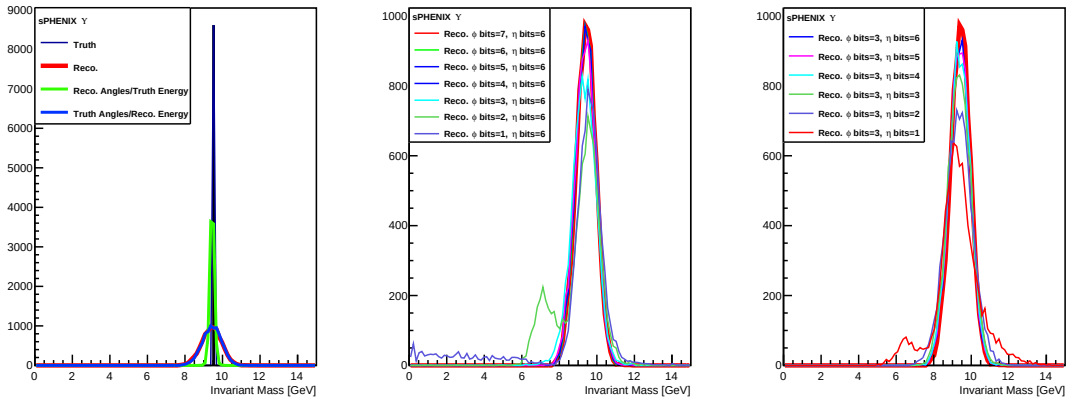



**Figure 7.17:** *Left:* Upsilon (1s) invariant mass distribution as truth, reconstructed using the calorimeter energies for the electron and positron, reconstructed using the calorimeter truth energies and the reconstructed angles, and reconstructed using the calorimeter energies and the truth angles. *Middle and Right:* Reconstructed invariant mass using the reconstructed calorimeter energies and different angle resolutions depending on the number of bits to encode the $\phi$ and $\eta$ angles.

backplane. Including header and spacer words, the data output for the trigger primitives is ten 16-bit words per beam crossing. This fits within the bandwidth of 2.4 Gigabits/second for the optical output.

The Hadronic Calorimeter including both inner and outer detectors has ($2 \times 1536 = 3{,}072$) channels that are read out via the same FEE as the EMCal, again in groups of 64 channels. As detailed above for the EMCal, the HCal FEE will pedestal subtract, gain correct, energy sum $2 \times 2$ non-overlapping towers, and transmit 8-bit energy values via optical output. Note that for the HCal this means that the finest granularity for energies available at the Level-1 trigger are $\Delta\eta \times \Delta\phi = 0.2 \times 0.2$ (which matches the physics performance requirements).

The calorimeter channel counts above translate into 384 fibers (EmCal), 24 fibers (Outer HCal), and 24 fibers (Inner HCal) going to the Level-1 trigger system. The Level-1 trigger system must be able to organize this large amount of data and calculate EMCal $4 \times 4$ overlapping sums (for the photon and single electron trigger), calculate electron pair invariant masses (for the Upsilon pair trigger), and compute EMCal/HCal combined energies in $0.8 \times 0.8$ overlapping windows in $\phi/\eta$ space (for the jet trigger).

After a detailed design stage that included the examination of several existing electronics (including the ATLAS gFEX), a decision was made to build the calorimeter Level-1 trigger system based on the existing calorimeter digitizer infrastructure. A down-select review was convened on January 23, 2019 with the review committee approving this decision. The calorimeter digitizer crate delivers the beam clock and synchronization information. Both

serial download and offline readback pathways are provided. The power distribution and cooling requirements for the calorimeter digitizer system also meet the requirements for the Level-1 trigger system. This system design and implementation is cost effective and meet the requirement development timeline.

The current design is broken into logical "design blocks" each consisting of a 570k log cell ALTERA Arria 10 Field Programmable Gate Array (FPGA), 3 Foxconn 12-port Minipod optical receiver modeules, and 1 Foxconn 12-port optical transmitter module. We have a vertical migration path to a larger FPGA if necessary with the same footprint. These blocks are flexible enough to be used throughout the Level-1 trigger system. The Level-1 trigger system will be broken into four areas: EMCal data processor, HCal data concentrator, jet trigger, and pair trigger blocks. Design of these blocks is advanced and a board layout is shown in Figure 7.18.

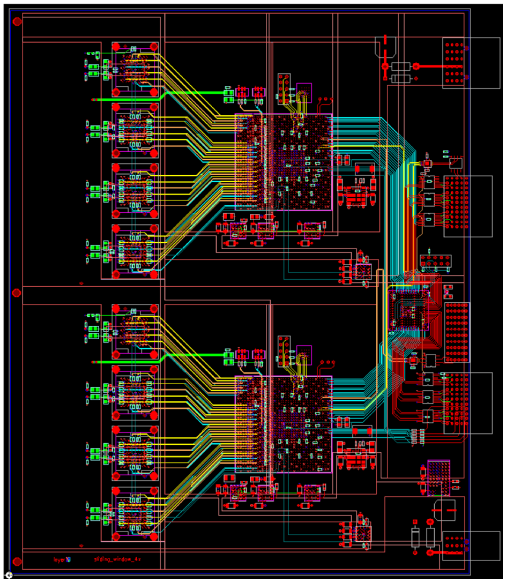


**Figure 7.18:** Preliminary board layout for the sPHENIX Level-1 trigger "design block".

Figure 7.19 shows a simple schematic for the three trigger "blocks" including the basic I/O. We briefly detail the functionality of each of these three blocks.

For the first stage of processing the EMCal trigger inputs, each block received 24 fibers from the FEE system. This data block thus contains 16 channels in $\phi$ and 96 channels in $\eta$. That means we have complete coverage in $\eta$ within this block and a partial slice in $\phi$. The allows the block to calculate all $4 \times 4$ overlapping sums, except along the edges in $\phi$ where the data is nominally going to a different block. The electronics will send and receive the necessary cross-stitching data to the neighboring trigger processing block via additional optical transmitter and receiver ports. The overlapping $4 \times 4$ sum utilizes a sliding window algorithm. The shower maximum is determined based on a $4 \times 4$ window. The threshold and sorting used allows for us to send out the four highest shower energies

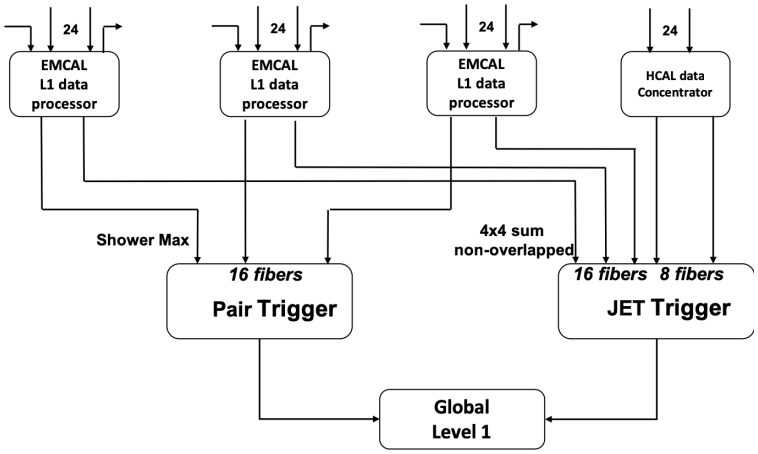



**Figure 7.19:** Simple schematic for the three trigger "blocks".

per trigger block. The $4 \times 4$ non-overlapping sums are also sent out every beam crossing for use in the jet trigger. This results in one trigger output for the pair trigger module and one fiber output for the jet physics module. We will have two trigger blocks per physical board as shown in Figure 7.18. Thus, we will need 8 boards (16 blocks) to handle the 384 fibers incoming from the EMCal FEE.

The HCal trigger block will concentrate the HCal data from the 24 Outer HCal fibers. The 24 fiber inputs running at 2.4 Gigabits/second will have their data processed and then output the new sums in 8 fibers out running at 5.4 Gigabits/second. The incoming header words will be replaced with new headers on the sums. This concentrating is done to reduce the fiber inputs for the jet trigger block. The jet trigger block then receives this HCal data and the EMCal $4 \times 4$ non-overlapping sums to make jet patch energy sums.

The pair physics trigger block received 16 fibers from the EMCal data concentrator block. The mass calculation will be done on all combinations of electron/positron candidates using the reduced bit algorithm shown earlier.

The final trigger blocks will send input to the Global Level-1 trigger for final trigger decisions. In addition, the trigger accept information will be input such that trigger primitives for accepted events can be sent out to the data collection system for archiving.

### 7.4.3 Minimum Bias Trigger

The MBD consists of two identical arms of detectors around the beam-pipe, located both forward and backward of the collision point. Each arm consists of 64 channels, and are referred to as the North and South arms. For full details see Chapter 6.1. On every RHIC crossing, the MB LL1 trigger board will receive the following trigger primitives over 4 fibers from each of the 4 ADC boards used by the MBD:

- The mean time of all hits in one MBD ADC Board (10-12 bits)
- The number of hit channels in one MBD ADC Board (6 bits)
- The total charge sum in one MBD ADC Board (12-16 bits)

The ranges of bits in the above are determined by the lower and upper bounds on the resolution we expect to be able to achieve in the system, and will be finalized after further study. Since each ADC board reads out half of one MBD arm, it represents the data from the left or right half of an arm, which will allow scaling of left-right asymmetries during transversely polarized proton running. The MB Local Level 1 trigger will calculate the z-vertex position of the collision using the difference in the times from the two arms, and can make a cut on the collision vertex [31]. The nominal selection for sPHENIX is $|z| < 10$ cm since this is the fiducial acceptance for the silicon tracking systems. However, multiple vertex selections are possible. In PHENIX, for example, three MB triggers were defined: $|z| < 10$ cm, $|z| < 30$ cm, and the "wide" trigger in which collisions from any vertex location are accepted. With 120 ps time resolution, one expects a z-vertex resolution of about 2.5 cm for the most peripheral heavy ion events. As the centrality of the collision increases, this resolution will improve due to the statistical improvement from the larger number of hits.

The electronics upgrade allows the possibility of a couple of new features that were not available in PHENIX. The centrality of the collision can be estimated using the the number of hits or energy sums in the MBD, allowing for a trigger selection on centrality. Additionally, since the time and charge are extracted simultaneously on the ADC Board, a slew correction can be applied to the time determination, which will improve the time resolution in the Level-1 trigger compared to PHENIX.

The calculation of these primitives is planned for the FEE, and as such the calculation requirements in the Level-1 trigger block are minimal. Only one trigger block will be required for the MBD calculations.

# Chapter 8

# Simulation

We have employed version 10.02 patch level 02 of the GEANT4 simulation toolkit [32] for our full detector simulations. It provides collections of physics processes suitable for different applications. We selected the QGSP BERT HP list which is recommended for high energy detector simulations employed by the LHC experiments. The High Precision neutron model (HP) is needed for an accurate description of hadronic showers in calorimeters. We did run tests with different physics lists in detailed comparisons with test beam data for our calorimeter prototypes and found a good agreement between the simulations using QGSP BERT HP and the data. The detectors, readout electronics and support structures are highly configurable in our GEANT4 implementation, making it easy to test different geometries and detector concepts. Magnetic fieldmaps for the BaBar magnet have been imported from OPERA calculations. The simulations are fully integrated into the sPHENIX software and analysis framework enabling us to use the same analysis tools for simulations and real (testbeam) data. In addition to simple single/multiple particle event generators like HIJING, Pythia6 and Pythia8 can be used as input to the simulations. Embedding of pythia or single particle events into a HIJING background is also supported. We keep track of every particle and its descendants so every energy deposition can be traced back to the original parent particle from the event generator. The GEANT4 toolkit can be used to determine the interaction length $\lambda_0$ along straight trajectories starting from the center of the detector. Fig 8.1 shows the interaction length as function of azimuth at midrapidity. It is uniform with no systematic distortions. Fig 8.2 shows the interaction length as function of pseudorapidity. The step at $|\eta| \approx 0.7$ is due to the shape of the absorber plates of the outer hadronic calorimeter.

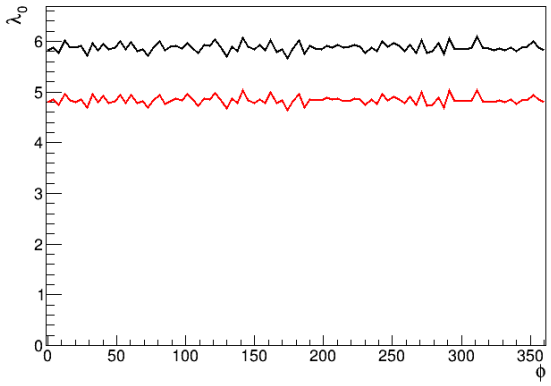



**Figure 8.1:** Azimuthal dependence of the interaction length $\lambda_0$ at midrapidity. The thickness of the active calorimeters is shown in red.

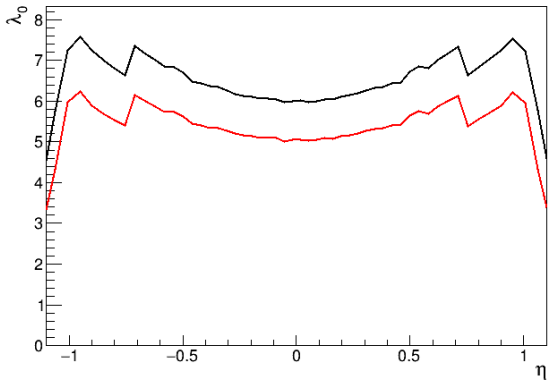



**Figure 8.2:** Pseudorapidity dependence of the interaction length $\lambda_0$. The thickness of the active calorimeters is shown in red.

# 8.1 Basic Detector Performance

## 8.1.1 Tracking Reconstruction

### 8.1.1.1 TPC Simulations

The TPC simulations we have performed target a realistic representation of the cluster size and two-hit resolution based on design parameters which are consistent with the TPC design described previously.

At the very high luminosities expected during sPHENIX operation, the charge collection time in the TPC causes charge from multiple different collisions to be drifting in the TPC at any given time. The time window for the configuration used for these simulations is $\pm 13.2\ \mu s$. At a Au+Au collision rate of 200 kHz the number of "pileup" events is typically 3 to 8, and they add very substantially to the occupancy in the TPC. In p+p collisions it is far higher, but the multiplicity per event is much lower. The simulation results presented here are for Au+Au, and to simulate the detector performance in high luminosity events we use central (0-4 fm impact parameter) Au+Au collisions as the triggered event, and a 200 kHz minimum bias collision rate to add pileup event charge.

GEANT4 is used to record energy deposits in a cylindrical volume of gas. In the results shown below, the volume was filled with a Ne:$CF_4$ mixture (90:10) operated with a drift voltage of 400 V/m and a drift speed of 8 $cm/\mu s$. The energy deposits are recorded in discrete radial regions of the cylindrical volume. For each region, a Poisonnian random number of ionization electrons are produced along the track trajectory according to measured values of the average ionization per energy deposit for the simulated gas. Because highly angled tracks deposit energy along an extended path in $z$ within each radial layer, they have an important effect on the occupancy in the TPC. Therefore the primary ionization is broken up into segments in $z$ that are drifted independently. Each segment of the primary ionization is then randomly diffused in 3 dimensions. The average diffusion is then added in quadrature with a constant diffusion to emulate diffusion during the amplification stage of readout.

The $r-\phi$ readout is simulated using a plane of "zigzag" pads having the planned geometry of the chevron pads, so that charge sharing is properly accounted for. The charge distribution at the pad plane from each drifted $z$ segment is divided between pads using an analytic formula that provides the fraction of the charge distribution on a pad as a function of distance from the pad centerline. For the $z$ direction, the analogue timing response of the SAMPA chip is simulated with different rise and fall times that approximate the measured response of the chip. In these simulations a SAMPA peaking time of 80 $ns$ is assumed. The resulting time distribution is broken up into ADC time bins, and the bins are assigned a $z$ location based on the drift velocity. The charge is digitized into a 10-bit ADC for each pad, directly in proportion to the number of diffused electrons reaching the pad (gain fluctuations are not currently simulated).

After the pad ADC has been recorded in each time bin, clustering is performed to group (pad,time-bin) pairs into 3-dimensional detector hits to be passed to the track-finding algorithm. The current cluster finding algorithm is designed to operate in a high occupancy environment and can separate overlapping clusters as long as the cluster centroids are separated approximately 1.5 sigma of the cluster width. This performance is sufficient to guarantee close to 100% cluster reconstruction efficiency in high pile-up Au+Au events up to a channel occupancy of $\approx 40\%$.

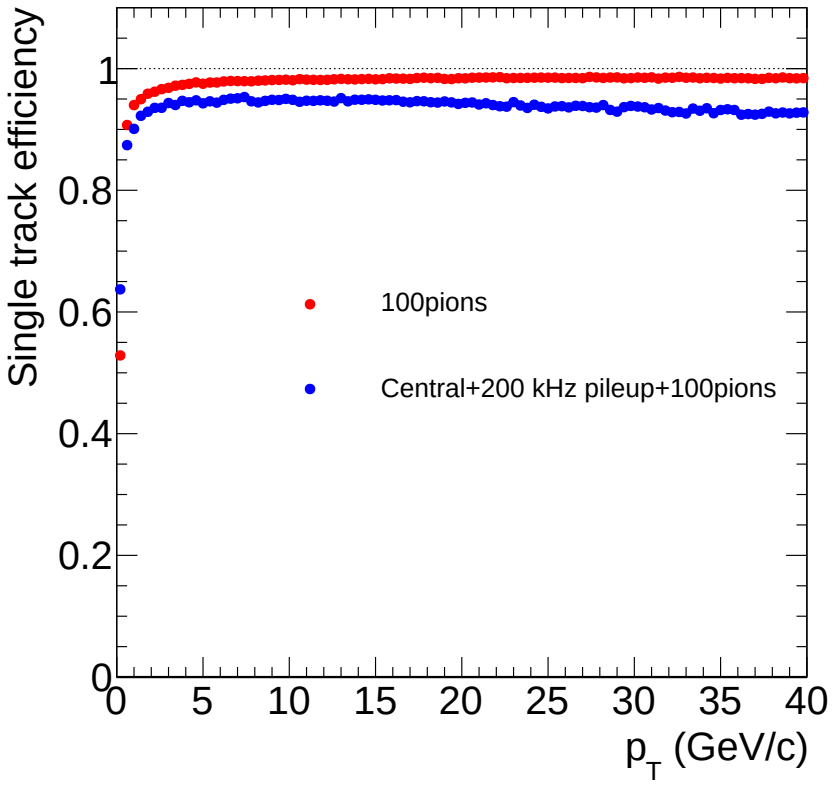



**Figure 8.3:** comparison of the track reconstruction efficiency for the simulated TPC for pions between 0 and 40 GeV/c in standalone 100 pion events, and embedded in central (0-4 fm) Au+Au collisions with luminosity averaged over a store. Even in the very high occupancy environment the tracking efficiency is $\approx 94\%$.

In addition to the TPC, two hermetic silicon strip INTT inner layers and three hermetic MVTX layers are included in the tracking setup. The clustering is performed on the silicon hits by finding groups of contiguous hits within a sensor.

From the clusters charged particle trajectories are reconstructed by a seeded Kalman filter based algorithm comprised of the following steps:

- A 5-dimensional Hough transform is employed to locate clusters from helical hit patterns in the TPC arising from tracks bending through the solenoid field to seed

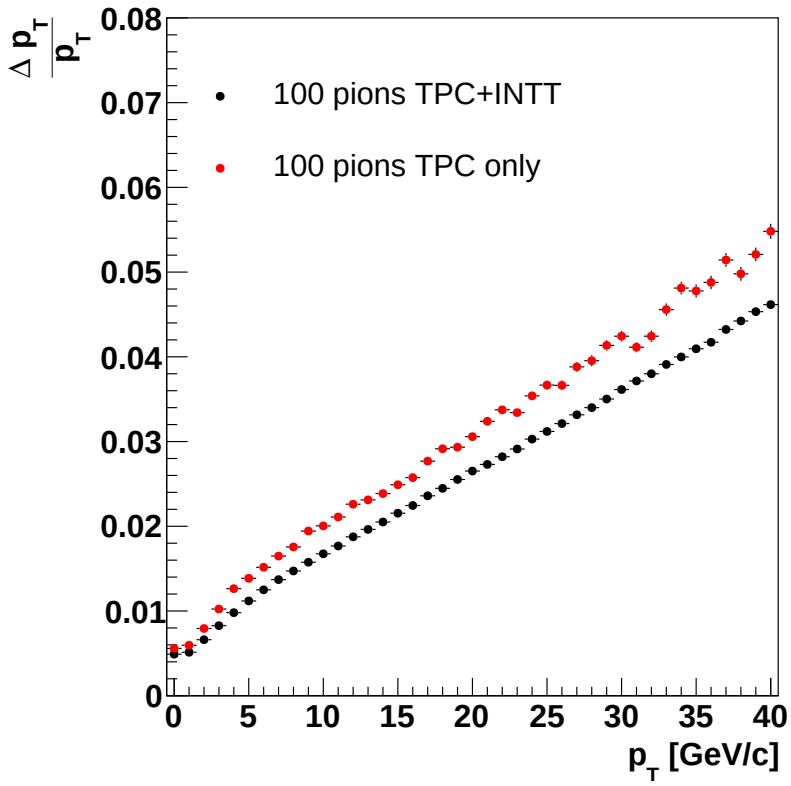



**Figure 8.4:** comparison of the momentum resolution of the simulated TPC for pions between 0 and 40 GeV/c in standalone 100 pion events, and embedded in central (0-4 fm) Au+Au collisions with luminosity averaged over a store.

the track reconstruction.

- Track seeds are propagated outside-in from the TPC. to the optional inner silicon based detectors by a Kalman filter [33] based pattern recognition algorithm.
- Iteration of the first two steps using looser seeding criteria in subsequent iterations.
- Clusters belonging to the same track are fit using a Kalman-filter-based generic track-fitting toolkit [34], to extract track parameters including displacement at the vertex and the momentum vector at vertex.
- All tracks are fed into a generic tracking fitting toolkit, RAVE [35], to determine the locations of the primary and secondary vertices's.

The performance of the detector in simulations is illustrated here by several figures. Figure 8.3 provides a comparison of track reconstruction efficiency for simulated events consisting of a central (0-4 fm impact parameter) HIJING collision, plus pileup from minimum bias HIJING collisions assuming a collision rate of 200 kHz. The track reconstruction

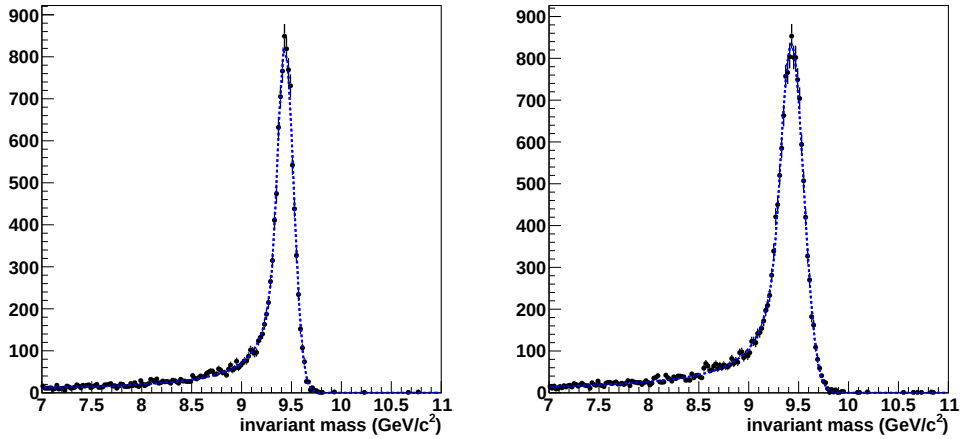



**Figure 8.5:** Upsilon 1S mass spectrum and resolution for the simulated TPC in low multiplicity events (100 pions), where the mass resolution is 85 MeV, is shown on the left. On the right,The mass resolution for central Au+Au collisions with pileup, averaged over a store, is about 120 MeV with the current very simple clustering algorithm.

efficiency is evaluated for 100 pions ($p_T$ = 0-40 GeV/$c$) embedded in the central event. Reconstructed tracks are required to have a reconstructed $p_T$ within 4$\sigma$ of the truth $p_T$. The track efficiency is compared with that for low occupancy events, containing only the 100 pions. Figure 8.4 compares $p_T$ resolution at low and high occupancies obtained from the same simulations. Figure 8.5 shows the mass spectrum for reconstructed $\Upsilon(1S)$ decays, where on the left the Upsilons were embedded in low occupancy 100 pion events, and on the right they were embedded in the high occupancy environment of a central Au+Au collision with the collision rate integrated over a four hour store. The mass resolution is about 85 MeV in low occupancy events, but increases to about 120 MeV at the highest occupancies. This increase is caused by overlaps of TPC clusters in the highest occupancy case. The present clustering algorithm locates local maxima in the Z vs r-$\phi$ distribution and follows the distribution in all directions until the signal falls below threshold, or starts to rise again. Then the cluster centroid is evaluated using a weighted sum of the hits in the cluster. This very simple algorithm finds clusters with very good efficiency, but the precision of the centroid determination suffers from even small overlaps of clusters. We are investigating clustering algorithms that will provide better cluster centroid precision at high occupancy.

The effect of high TPC occupancy on the displaced vertex measurement performance of the tracking system has also been studied. The results for the $r\phi$ track vertex resolution are shown in Figure 8.6. Results for the track vertex resolution in the $z$ direction are shown in Figure 8.7. The track vertex resolution shows little effect from the high occupancy except for the DCA resolution in the $z$ direction at high momentum, where it is nevertheless still very good.

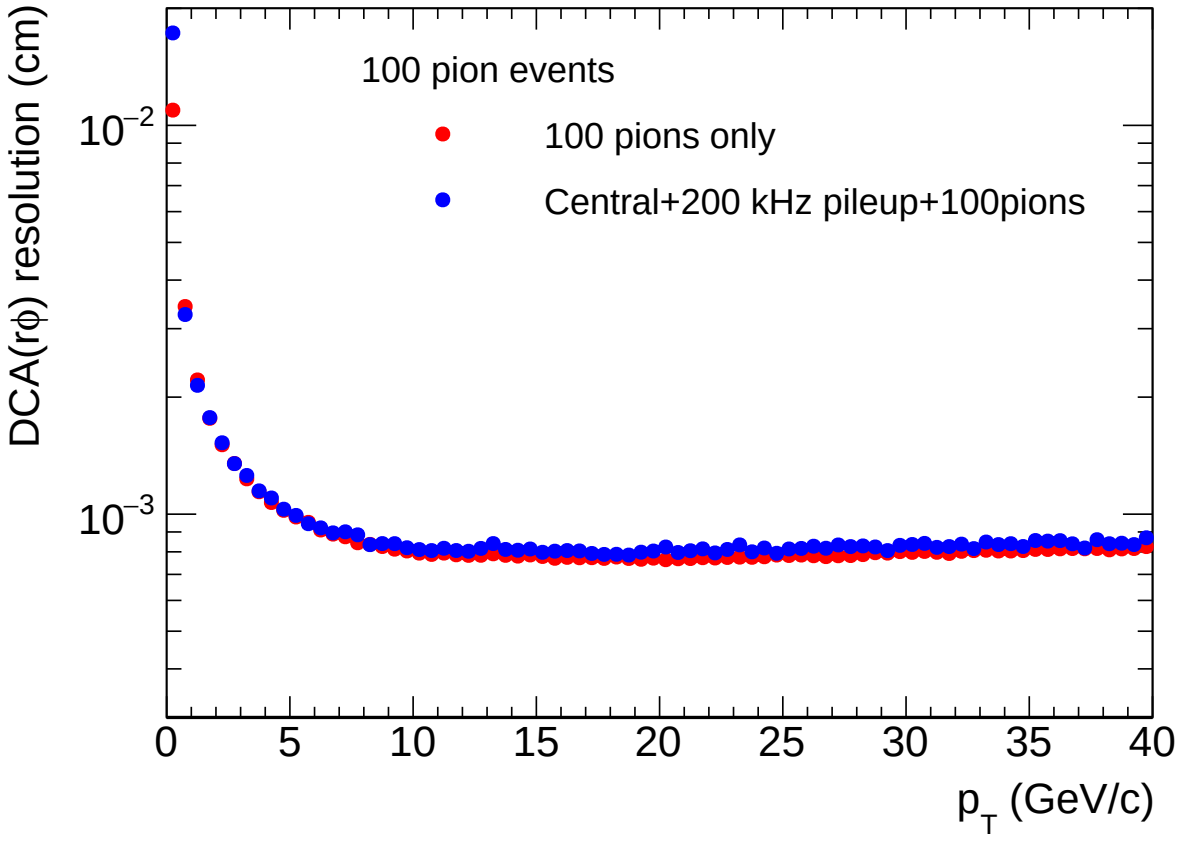



**Figure 8.6:** comparison of the DCA resolution in the $r\phi$ plane for a tracker consisting of the TPC and the proposed MVTX pixel barrel and the INTT silicon strip detectors. The comparison is for pions between 0 and 40 GeV/c in standalone 100 pion events, and embedded in central (0-4 fm) Au+Au collisions with event pileup from 200 kHz Au+Au collision rate.

## 8.1.2 Electromagnetic Calorimeter Simulations

### 8.1.2.1 Introduction

Both the 2D and the 1D SPACAL designs have been implemented in detail using the sPHENIX analysis framework and GEANT4. The 1D implementation allows for verifying the simulation with existing test beam data. A large set of calorimeter simulations has been run with the aim of defining design goals and quantifying detector and physics performance. The basic features of the simulation setup are as follows:

- Both the 1D and 2D projective EMCal designs are implemented in a full detector simulation of sPHENIX. The structure of the SPACAL in simulation is detailed to each of the 20M fibers (including core and cladding) to properly study the shower sampling.

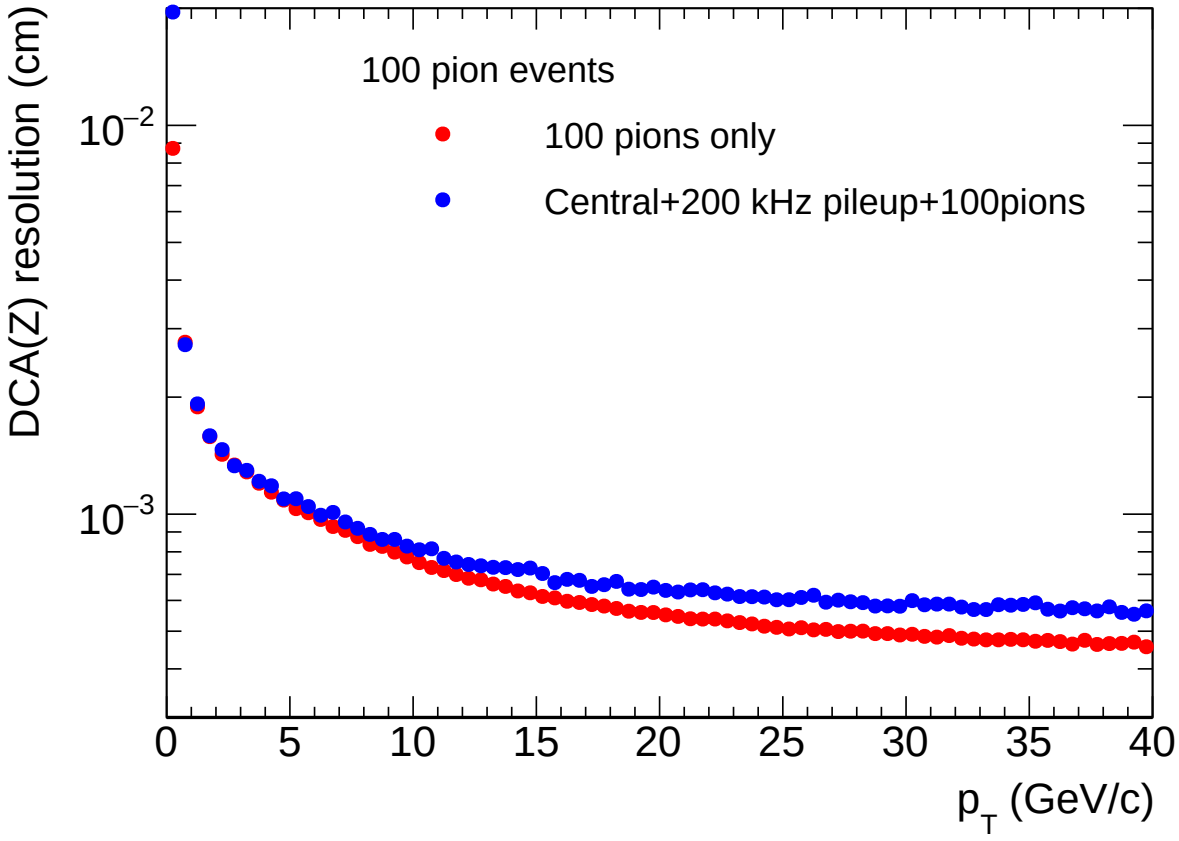



**Figure 8.7:** comparison of the DCA resolution in the $z$ direction for a tracker consisting of the TPC and the proposed MVTX pixel barrel and the INTT silicon strip detectors. The comparison is for pions between 0 and 40 GeV/c in standalone 100 pion events, and embedded in central (0-4 fm) Au+Au collisions with event pileup from 200 kHz Au+Au collision rate.

- The simulation is based on GEANT4 v4.10 [32] with the QGSP_BERT_HP physics list.tpref
- The default GEANT4 Birks correction model for scintillation light production [32] with Birks constant $k_B = 0.0794$ mm/MeV [36] is implemented.
- The mean number of photoelectrons per GeV of total energy deposit is assumed to be 500. The observed number of photoelectrons follows a Poisson distribution.
- The pedestal width is taken to be 8 photoelectrons with a zero-suppression of 16 photoelectrons per EMCal tower, based on the experience of the EIC eRD1 beam test with the SPACAL [12].
- The sPHENIX offline analysis framework is used to handle the conversion of the ADC value to measured energy, group towers into EMCal clusters, and match with tracks.

Example event displays for a single tower and the full EMCal are shown in Figure 8.8 and 8.9, respectively.

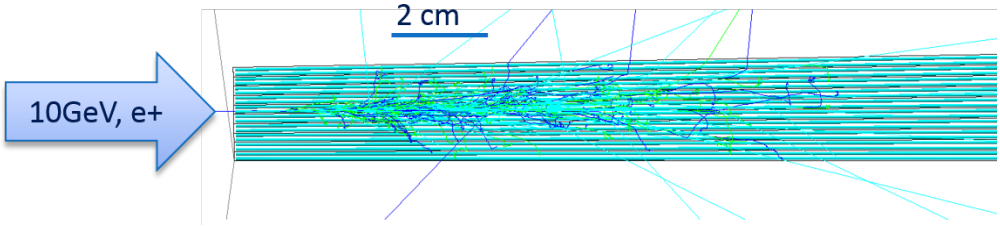



**Figure 8.8:** Event display of a 10 GeV positron shower in a single SPACAL tower. Scintillation fibers as embedded in the module are also shown, while the absorber material is not displayed.

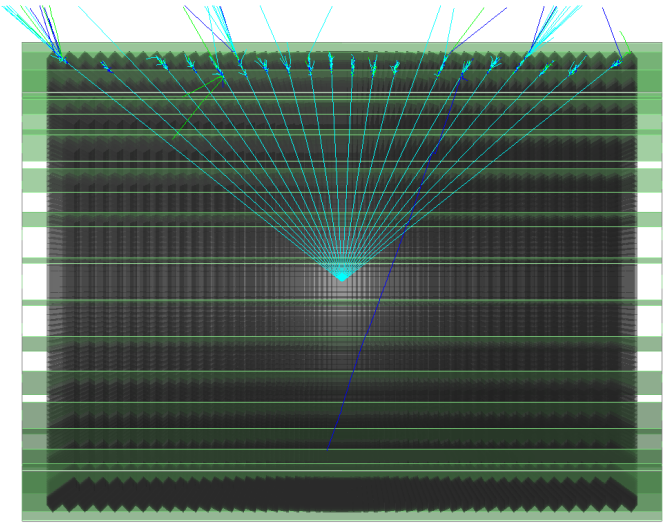


**Figure 8.9:** Simulation display of a half cut view of the 2D projective EMCal. The SPACAL modules (2x8 towers each) are display in gray; the stainless steel enclosure box is displayed in green.

#### 8.1.2.2 Verification of Simulation

The simulation was initially verified with data from the EIC eRD1 beam test of the 1D projective SPACAL prototype [12]. As shown in Figure 8.10, the simulation and data agree quite well for three choices of beam energies:

- The measured energy resolution for electron showers is reproduced in simulation within 10%.

- A 10% contribution of muons is expected in the test beam with a "non-electron" Čerenkov cut. Likewise a small amount of electrons and other beam background are suggested by the data.

- The simulated hadronic shower response is consistent with data within a factor of 2 across all energy bins.

Even though good agreement has already been achieved with default tuning of the simulation, further improvements were made to improve the fidelity of measurements to simulation:

- The Birks constant for the fiber core material has been tuned. Preliminary tests showed that a higher Birks constant than the one found by the CALICE experiment [37] can significantly improve the agreement for the hadronic shower component.

- Implementation of fiber-to-fiber light collection efficiency variations which account for measured variation in the response of the calorimeter as a function of the position of the incident particle.

An extensive beam test of a section of a prototype sPHENIX electromagnetic calorimeter around zero pseudorapidity has been carried out the Fermilab Test Beam Facility with a wide variety of incident particles, energies, and track position and angle. These results have been submitted for publication[15] and have shown excellent agreement between simulation and measurements. A beam test of a higher pseudorapidity slice of the EMCAL was carried out in February 2017 and also showed good agreement with simulation in spite of the fact that the absorber blocks were th first 2D projective blocks ever produced. A second beam test of a higher pseudorapidity prototype with improved 2D projective blocks was carried out in 2018 and the data from this test is currently being analyzed.

#### 8.1.2.3 Sampling Fraction

In the W-epoxy and scintillator fiber structure, only energy deposition in the core of fiber is visible via detection of scintillation light, which represents a small fraction of the total shower energy. The sampling fraction is around 2.4% as shown in Figure 8.11 with two choices of typical showers: 4 GeV electrons as typical Y decay products; and 24 GeV photons as typical for $\gamma$-jet measurements. The higher energy showers are sampled with lower sampling fraction as the shower moves deeper into the calorimeter, where the fibers have larger spacing due to the projectivity.

#### 8.1.2.4 Lateral Shape of Showers

To study the properties of the EM shower in the W-epoxy and scintillator fiber structure, the lateral extension of the EM shower is quantified in Figure 8.12 by histogramming all scintillator GEANT4 hits with their distance to the projection of the incoming 4 GeV electrons (as typical Y decay products in the central pseudorapidity). The Molière radius is about 2 cm in order to contain 90% of the EM shower. A $3 \times 3$ EMCal tower-cluster contains about 95% of the EM shower. For pion showers in the EMCal, which the calorimeter system is designed to reject, the same $3 \times 3$ EMCal tower-cluster contains about 50% of the shower energy, which helps to improve the efficiency of the $E/p$ cut. The inner hadron calorimeter (HCal) immediately behind the EMCal is used to catch the tails of the pion shower in order to veto hadrons. A $3 \times 3$ inner HCal tower-cluster can contain 60% of the energy of the pion shower tail. These simulations serve as a guideline for the choice of tower size for both EMCal and inner HCal, as the choice of tower segmentation is optimized for the shower containment in $3 \times 3$ tower-clusters, and a finer towering structure would not significantly improve the clustering.

The shower size is also quantified using 1-D and 2-D SPACAL towers as shown in Figure 8.13. For a 2-D projective SPACAL, despite the fact that the towers are shifted along the longitudinal direction, a circular distribution of towers for the EM shower is observed around the track projection for both central and forward pseudorapidity. This leads to a round-shaped cluster with a minimal number of towers necessary to contain an EM shower. In comparison, a shower in the 1-D projective SPACAL is spread into multiple towers along the polar direction, which leads to an elongated cluster covering more towers as quantified in the right panel of Figure 8.13.

#### 8.1.2.5 Single EM Shower Performance

The linearity and energy resolution for photon clusters as simulated through the full sPHENIX detector and analysis chain are presented in Figure 8.14 and 8.15.

For sPHENIX $\gamma$-jet measurements, the photon clusters were simulated with the full sPHENIX detector, which produces an energy resolution better than $14\%/\sqrt{E}$ as shown on the left side of Figure 8.14.

Single electrons are also simulated with the full sPHENIX simulation implementation, and the resolution is shown in the right panel of Fig. 8.14. The electron energy resolution is comparable to the $\sim 16\%/\sqrt{E}$ stochastic term requirement, and has a less than 3% constant term.

As shown in Figure 8.15, the linearity for the 2D SPACAL towers is better than 3.5%, as defined as the relative deviation from $E_{\text{reco}}/E = 1$ at the maximum photon energy of $E = 32$ GeV. The linearity is improved to better than 2.0% when photons are in the forward rapidity direction, where the SPACAL becomes thicker along the path of the photon and

therefore smaller back-leakage occurs. The single electron linearity is very similar to the single photon linearity as shown in the right panel of Fig. 8.15. In both cases the simulation demonstrates less than 3% linearity.

#### 8.1.2.6 Occupancy

The occupancy in central Au+Au collisions (the highest background event) is illustrated in Figure 3.2 and quantified in Figure 8.16. For a typical $3 \times 3$ EMCal tower-cluster in the 2-D projective SPACAL, the mean background energy is approximately 322 MeV. For the 1-D projective SPACAL at forward rapidity, a significantly larger underlying event (about 550 MeV) would be included in a cluster since electron showers would spread into more towers (as illustrated in the right panel of Figure 8.13). Meanwhile, this background presents a large tail extending to higher energy, which leads to a challenge of rejecting hadron showers for electron-ID as the logarithmically dropping hadron shower tail is shifted up in energy by this background.

Simulations were also performed with single photons and electrons embedded in $\sqrt{s} = 200$ GeV Au+Au 0-4 fm HIJING backgrounds. These embedded simulations quantify the expected background for the most central Au+Au events, which are events with the largest backgrounds. The linearity and resolution of the embedded single photons and electrons simulated with the full sPHENIX detector are shown in Figs. 8.17 and 8.18, respectively. The Au+Au background causes the linearity to degrade at small energies, however at large photon energies the linearity remains less than 3% similarly to the single particle simulations. The resolution is also degraded, within the limited statistical precision of this simulation, due to the inclusion of the underlying event in the cluster energy, which adds an additional term to the resolution that goes as 1/E.

#### 8.1.2.7 Electron Identification

One key function of the EMCal is to identify the electron/positron tracks within the hadronic background for the Y measurement. The energy of the electron/positron from the Y decay range from 2-10 GeV, with averages of 4.8 GeV in the central pseudorapidity to 5.7 GeV in the forward direction $(0.7 < \eta < 0.9)$. The primary method of electron-identification (eID) is to match the measured track momentum with the measured cluster energy in the EMCal. Furthermore, the inner hadron calorimeter can improve the eID by vetoing track candidates with a large leakage behind the EMCal. For each track, cluster energy information from both the EMCal and inner HCal is analyzed using a likelihood method, by comparing the observed cluster energy with the EMCal-HCal two-dimensional probability distributions extracted from template samples of pure electrons and hadrons. By selecting tighter or looser cuts, the hadron rejection versus electron efficiency curves can be mapped out for each combination of track rapidity, track momentum, and SPACAL configurations.

The reference electron identification performance is shown in Figure 8.19 in single particle simulations (expected performance in $p+p$ collisions) and 8.20 in the most central Au+Au collisions (top 0-10% in centrality). These reference eID performance curves are simulated with a 1-D projective SPACAL fiber structure. The hits in GEANT4 can be grouped around the track projection into clusters in order to estimate the performance for the 2-D projective SPACAL, or grouped radially in order to estimate the performance for the 1-D projective SPACAL. The cluster energy is summed over all energy deposited in the fiber core (prior to the Birks correction model for scintillation light production [32]), which is then scaled to the measured energy in the calorimeter with a scaling constant of 1/(sampling fraction).

In these reference studies, the 2-D projective SPACAL provided better than 100:1 pion rejection at 95% efficiency for 4 GeV electrons in $p+p$ collisions (Figure 8.19), and better than 90:1 pion rejection at 70% efficiency for 4 GeV electrons in the most-central Au+Au collisions (left panel of Figure 8.20). These pion rejection and electron efficiency values have been used for the estimates of the Y in our reference design. We also estimate that if a 1-D projective SPACAL is used, the pion rejection at large pseudorapidities will be reduced due to the larger cluster size necessary to contain the EM-shower, as shown in the right side of Figure 8.20.

Significant simulation effort has also been invested into updating these projections with a realistic setup of the SPACAL as shown in Figure 8.9, including incorporating the support/enclosure structures and the longitudinal offsets of the modules, and improved shower simulation (including the Birks scintillation model [32], photon fluctuations, and pedestal widths, which are cross-checked with test beam results as shown in Figure 8.10. When compared with the reference performance, preliminary results show improved eID performance with the suppressed hadron response in the default GEANT4 Birks scintillation model.

#### 8.1.2.8 Dynamic range

The dynamic range required for the ADC system is studied by comparing the maximum energy deposition in a tower to the pedestal width. For a simulated 50 GeV photon shower, a maximum of 22k photoelectrons were observed in a single tower as shown in Figure 8.21 (assuming a high pixel count SiPM). To encode this maximum photoelectron count down to the pedestal noise of 8 photoelectrons, a 12-bit ADC is required. The EMCal electronics, which provides a 14-bit ADC, will satisfy this requirement.

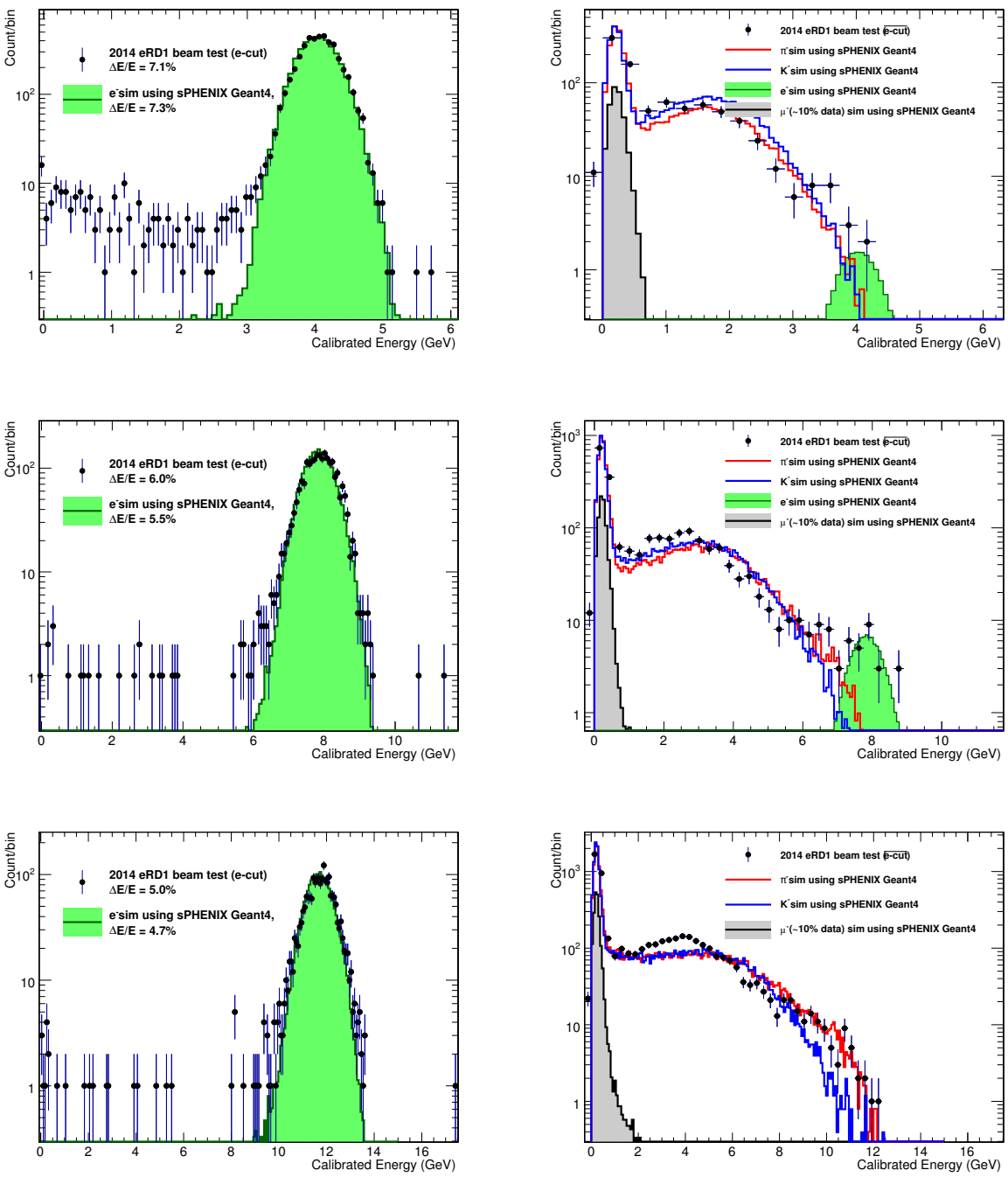



**Figure 8.10:** Comparison of the eRD1 beam test data and sPHENIX GEANT4 simulation for three choices of beam energies: 4.12 GeV (top), 8.0 GeV (middle) and 12.0 GeV (bottom). The left column data (black points) are with an electron requirement based on a beam Cherenkov detector, and the right column with a non-electron requirement. Curves represent simulated electrons (green), pions (red), kaons (blue) and muons (black).

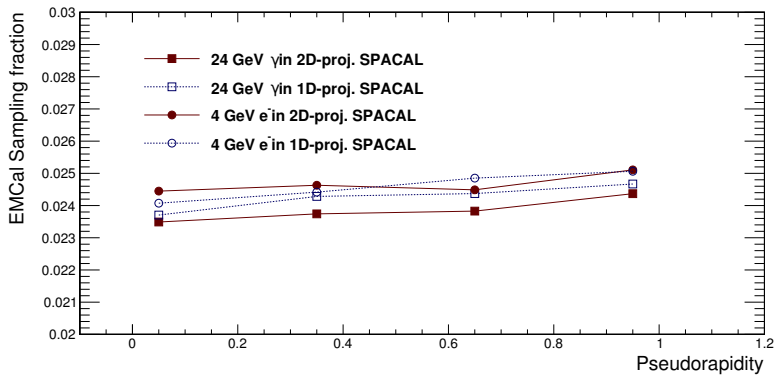



**Figure 8.11:** The sampling fraction of the 1D and 2D projective SPACAL as a function of pseudorapidity. Two energy ranges were chosen: the circles represent electron showers at 4 GeV, which is a typical energy for $\Upsilon$ measurements; the squares represent photon showers at 24 GeV, which is a typical energy for $\gamma$-Jet measurements.

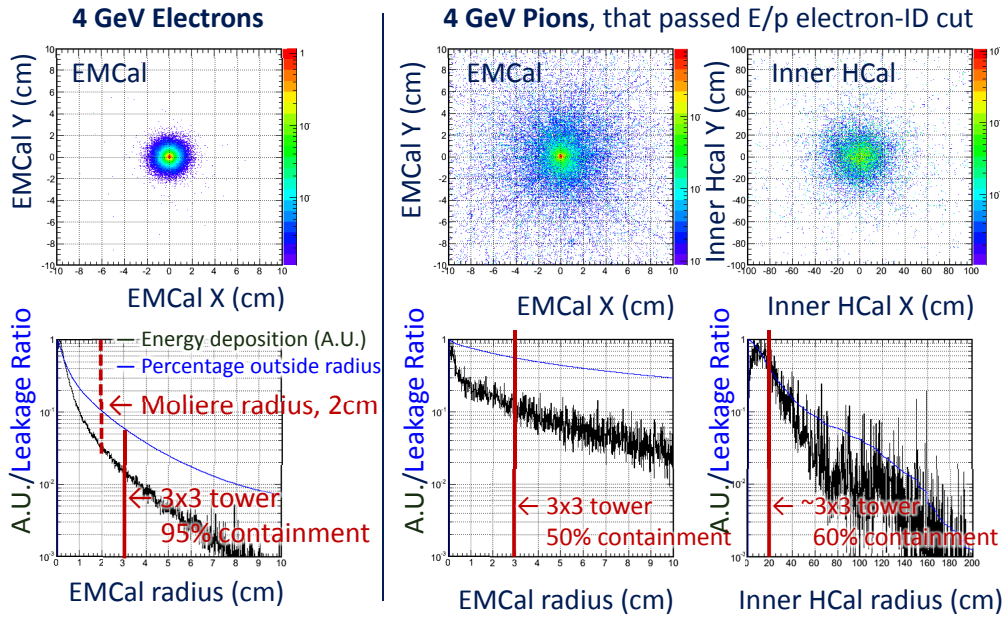



**Figure 8.12:** The lateral expansion of 4 GeV electron showers in the EMCal (left column), which is compared with 4 GeV negatively charged pion showers in the EMCal (middle column) and in the inner HCal (right column). The center, $(X, Y) = (0, 0)$ cm, denotes the projection of the electron track. Then the energy deposition of all scintillator hits in GEANT4 is histogrammed versus the lateral distance from the track projection. The top row shows the energy deposition density in the 2-D lateral dimension, and the bottom row shows the energy density (black) and the shower leakage ratio (blue) vs. lateral radial distance.

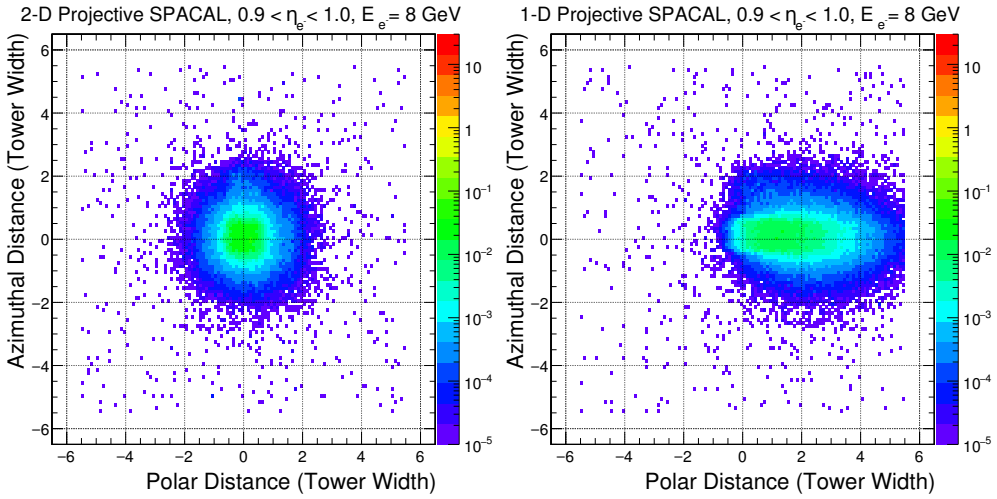



**Figure 8.13:** For very forward pseudorapidity, the lateral distribution of 8 GeV electron showers as observed in the 2-D projective (left) and 1-D projective (right) SPACAL towers. The polar (X-axis) and azimuthal (Y-axis) distances are defined as the distance between the tower and the electron track projection, in the unit of tower width.

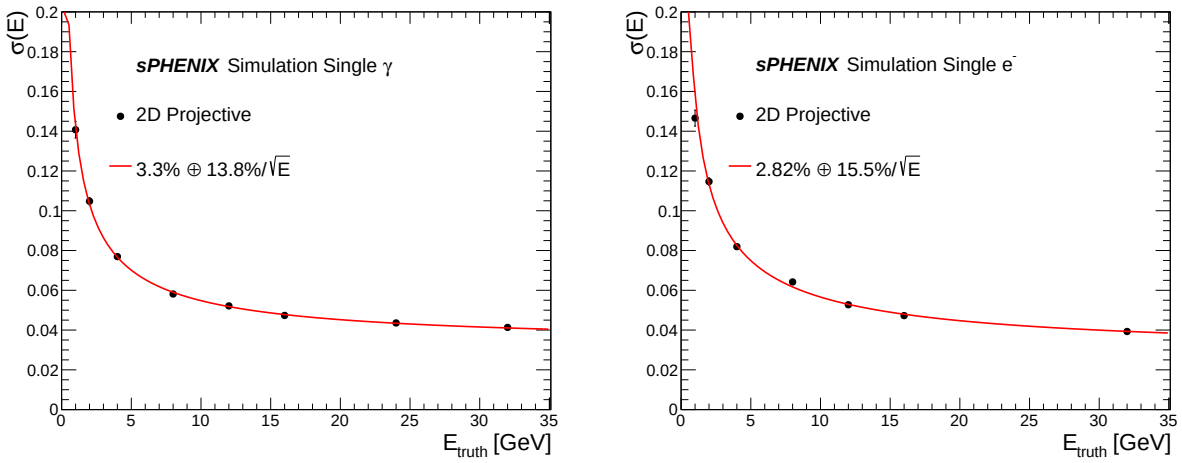



**Figure 8.14:** Left: the energy resolution for single photon clusters as reconstructed with the fully simulated sPHENIX detector, right: the energy resolution for single electron clusters as reconstructed with the fully simulated sPHENIX detector. Fits are performed as a quadratic sum of linear and statistical terms to show the resolution 2D projective towers.

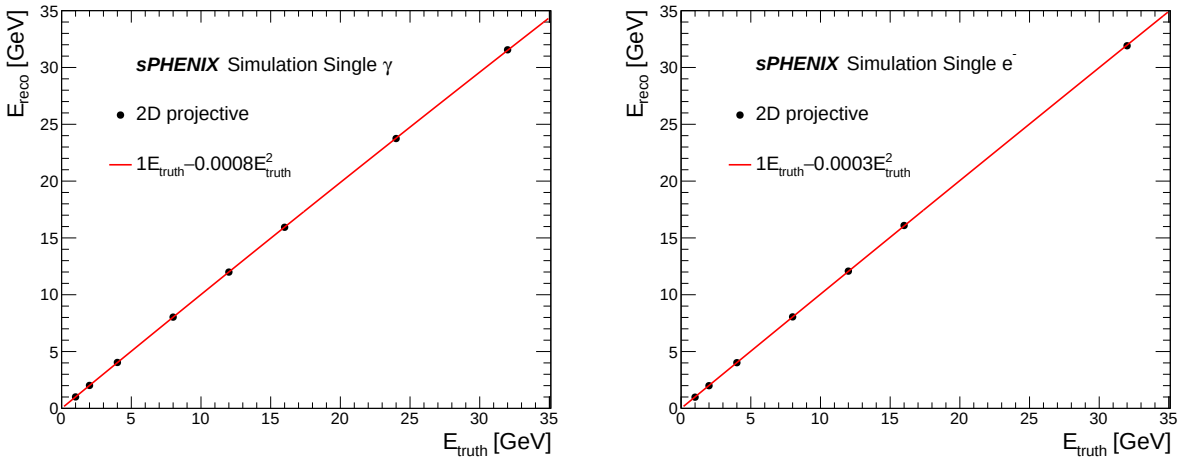



**Figure 8.15:** Linearity for single photon clusters (left) and single electron clusters (right) as reconstructed with the full sPHENIX detector simulation and analysis chain. The linearity is calibrated for each pseudorapidity region to 1 at the low energy end, while the non-linearity towards the high energy end is quantified via a quadratic fit.

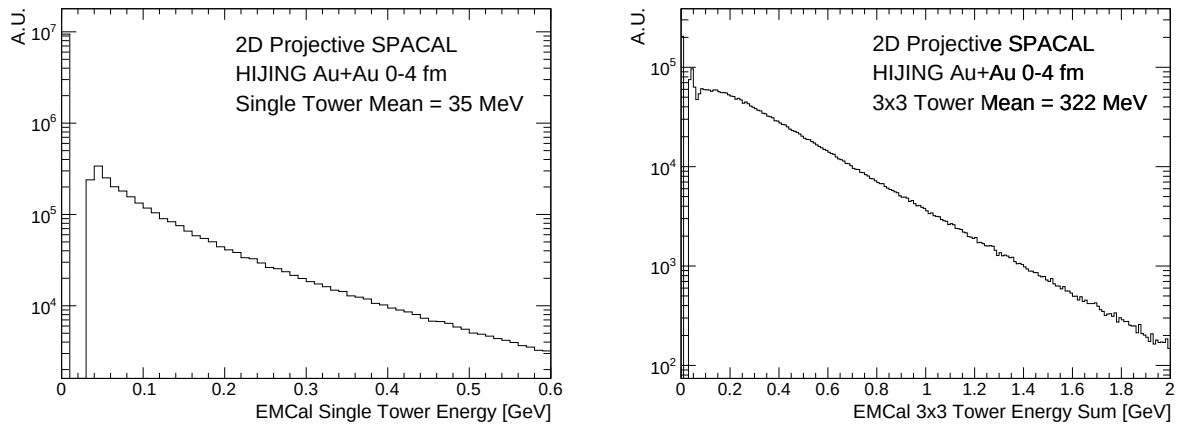



**Figure 8.16:** (left) Energy per tower ($\sim 1R_M^2$) for central Au+Au HIJING events, (right) Mean energy for a $3 \times 3$ EMCal tower-cluster. The 2-D projective SPACAL configuration is shown here.

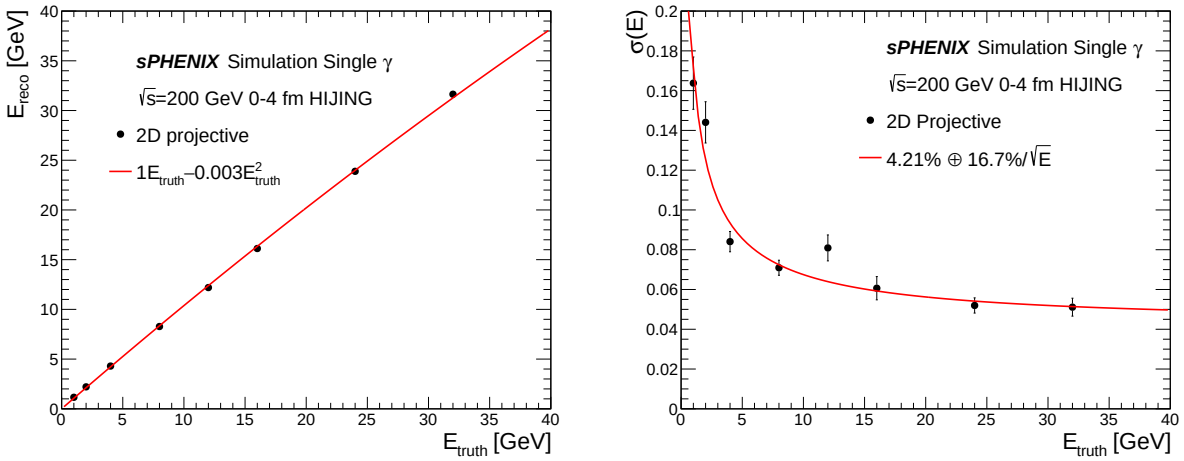



**Figure 8.17:** The linearity (left) and resolution (right) for single photons embedded in $\sqrt{s} =$ 200 GeV 0-4 fm HIJING Au+Au backgrounds is shown.

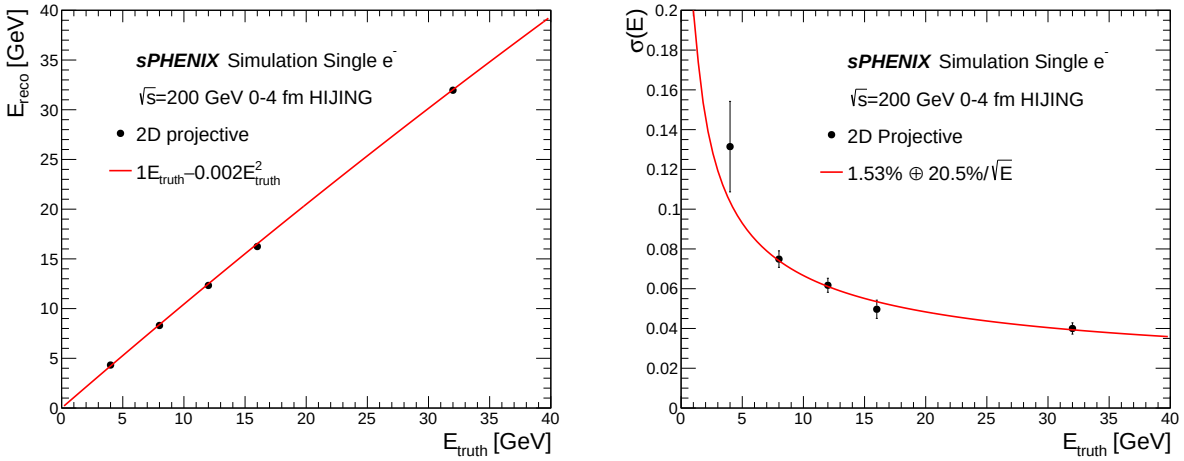



**Figure 8.18:** The linearity (left) and resolution (right) for single electrons embedded in $\sqrt{s} = 200$ GeV 0-4 fm HIJING Au+Au backgrounds is shown. The $1/\sqrt{E}$ term in the resolution is largely unconstrained due to the poor statistical precision of this simulation.

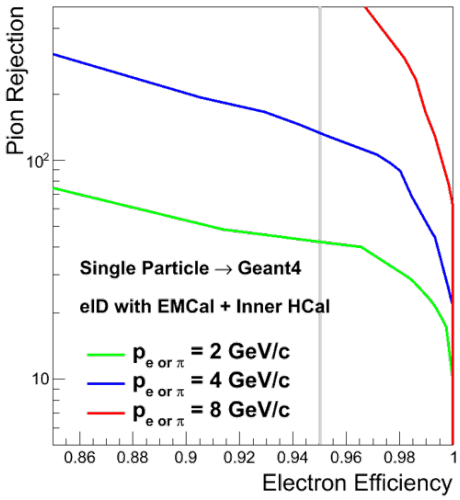



**Figure 8.19:** Pion rejection vs. electron identification efficiency for a single particle simulation for the 2-D projective SPACAL, which represents the performance for $p$+$p$ and EIC collisions.

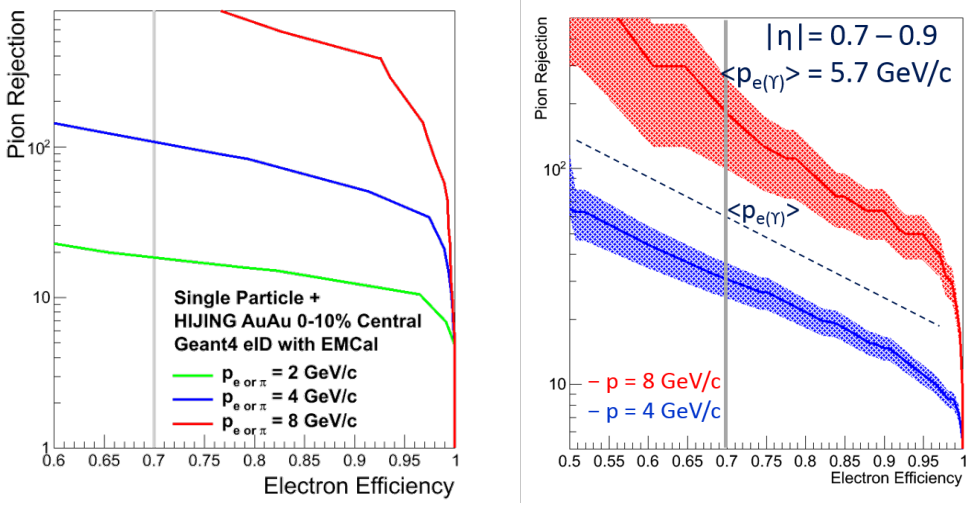



**Figure 8.20:** The pion rejection vs electron identification efficiency for the 2-D projective (left) and 1D-projective (right) SPACAL in central Au+Au collisions (0-10% central).

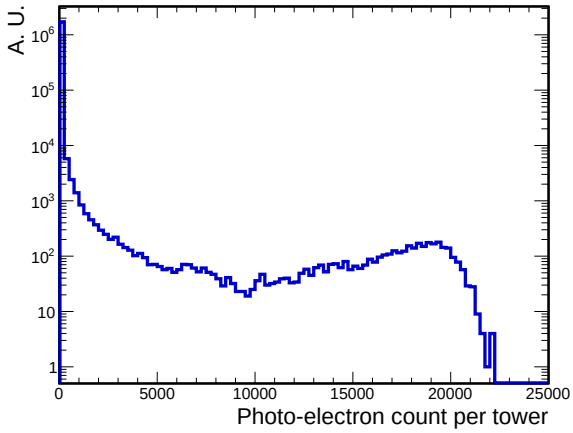



**Figure 8.21:** Number of photoelectrons per tower for 50 GeV photons as the maximum energy shower targeted by this calorimeter system. To encode the maximum photoelectron count down to the pedestal noise level, a 12-bit ADC is required.

# 8.2 Jet Performance

## 8.2.1 Jet energy scale and resolution

In order to perform desired jet measurements, the jet energy resolution of the combined calorimetry is required to be smaller than the fluctuations due to the subtraction of the underlying event in heavy-ion collisions, or an energy resolution better than 20% for a 25 GeV jet. In order to establish the capabilities of the full sPHENIX calorimetry system, a full GEANT4 set of simulations were performed. Jets are generated using PYTHIA 8 to simulate the proton-proton collisions at 200 GeV and reconstructed by clustering calorimeter towers with the anti-$k_T$ jet finding algorithm in the FastJet package, with the resolution parameter $R = 0.2$ and $R = 0.4$. To simulate Au+Au collisions, PYTHIA 8 signals are embedded into HIJING simulated events. Generated particles are put through the same package to determine the truth jet. Truth jets are selected to be in the central region of $|\eta| < 0.45$.

One of the most important steps in heavy-ion jet reconstruction is the underlying event (UE) subtraction. The procedure of the iterative UE subtraction algorithm is as follows. First, jets are reconstructed using raw calorimeter towers, and the seed jets are selected if $\mathrm{Max}(E_{\mathrm{T}}^{\mathrm{tower}})/\mathrm{Mean}(E_{\mathrm{T}}^{\mathrm{tower}}) > D$, where $D$ is the threshold value that needs to be optimized. The background is defined in each calorimeter layer and $\eta$-ring, after excluding the seed jet region. Next, the $\Psi_2$ and $v_2$ are determined from $\eta$-rings with full $\phi$ coverage, which means there are no excluded towers due to the seed jet. Finally, Backgrounds are subtracted tower-by-tower modulating by the determined flow. There is the second iteration of the above step, where the seed jet is determined by $E_{\mathrm{T}}$ threshold instead of $\mathrm{Max}(E_{\mathrm{T}}^{\mathrm{tower}})/\mathrm{Mean}(E_{\mathrm{T}}^{\mathrm{tower}})$. Once the background is updated and subtracted, the jet finder with chosen $R$ is run over the background-subtracted events to find final jets.

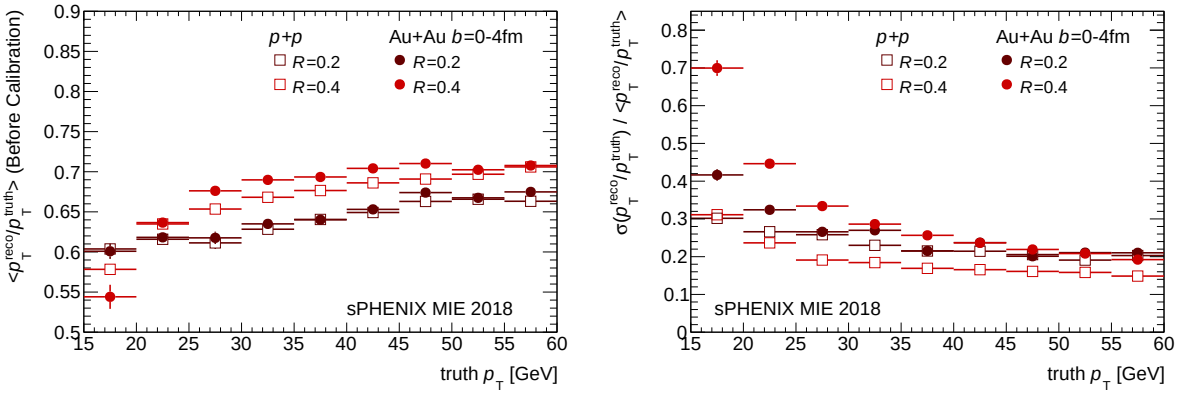



**Figure 8.22:** Jet Energy Scale (left) and Jet Energy Resolution (right) as a function of truth jet $p_{\mathrm{T}}$ for $R = 0.2$ and $R = 0.4$ jets in simulated p+p and central Au+Au events.

Figure 8.22 shows the Jet Energy Scale (JES) as a function of truth jet $p_{\mathrm{T}}$ on the left, and jet energy resolution (JER) on the right. Open markers are for simulated p+p, and filled

markers are for simulated Au+Au collisions. Brown markers are $R = 0.2$ jets, and red markers are $R = 0.4$ jets. The JES follows the expected ordering in $R$, and shows the similar values in p+p and Au+Au collisions independent of the UE level. The JER is mainly dominated by fluctuations in the UE subtraction at large $R$ and low $p_T$ and therefore becomes bigger for larger $R$ in Au+Au collisions compared to p+p collisions. At small $R$ or high $p_T$, JER is dominated by an intrinsic resolution of the calorimeter, so JER values in p+p and Au+Au collisions are rather comparable.

### 8.2.2 Jet energy calibration

Jets typically deposit energy in all calorimetry segments, and the energies reconstructed in calorimeters need to be properly calibrated to get an estimate of the truth jet energy. The EMCal calibration is set for pure electromagnetic (EM) energy, but the EMCal has a different response to EM and hadronic showers. Also, the response of calorimeters to a jet depends on the longitudinal center of gravity, the position at which shower begins to develop inside the calorimeter. The response also varies with jet energy. Therefore, the EM and hadronic energy deposit in different calorimeters needs to be calibrated separately, taking the energy dependence into account. Such a calibration procedure is similar to the method developed in the analysis of single-hadron showers in test beam data (see Section 4.4).

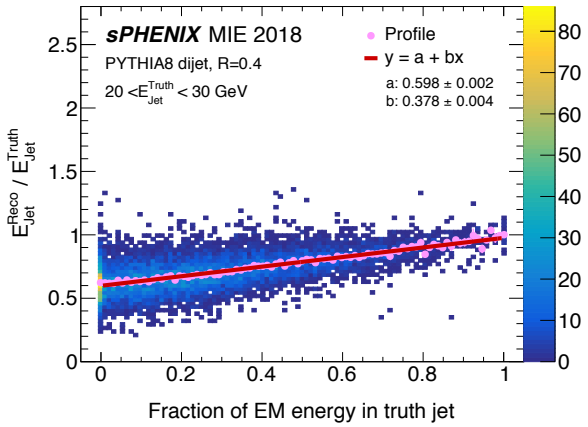



**Figure 8.23:** The ratio of reconstructed to truth jet energy distributions as a function of electromagnetic energy fraction in a truth jet from simulated p+p events. The closed circles represent the profile along the $x$-axis, and the solid line is the linear fit to the profile.

Figure 8.23 shows the jet energy response, the ratio of reconstructed to truth jet energy, $E_{\mathrm{Jet}}^{\mathrm{Reco}} / E_{\mathrm{Jet}}^{\mathrm{Truth}}$, as a function of the EM energy fraction in a truth jet. The truth EM energy is obtained by summing the energy of EM particles; $\gamma$, $\pi^0$, $e^{\pm}$, and $\eta$. If a jet is mostly composed of electromagnetic energy, the response is close to unity as expected by the fact

that the EMCal is already well calibrated for EM energy. As jet energy is more hadronic, however, the response decreases down to $\sim 0.6$. Such a dependence of the response on the EM energy fraction might result in worse energy resolution, and the relative energy scales of calorimetry compartments are thereby needed to correct it.

To reduce the use of truth information from Monte Carlo simulation, a data-based calibration technique utilizing photon+jet events in p+p collisions has been developed, assuming the reconstructed photon energy provides good access to the parent parton energy of the associated jet. The photon is reconstructed using the jet reconstruction algorithm for simplicity, but only the energy deposit in the EMCal is treated as the reconstructed energy of a photon and the energy deposit in the HCal is ignored. Events containing only two reconstructed objects, one photon candidate and one jet candidate, are selected to remove split jets and minimize the difference between the reconstructed photon energy and the truth jet energy. Reconstructed photon and jet candidates are required to be found in the opposite hemisphere ($\Delta\phi(\gamma - \text{jet}) > \pi/2$). For photon candidates, the leading particle with the highest $z$ (the fraction of jet momentum carried by the particle) is required to be a photon, and the fraction of energy deposit in the HCal to the EMCal be smaller than 0.1.

For jets, due to the different EMCal response to EM and hadronic showers, EMCal clusters with hadronic energy needs to be separated from those with EM energy and be calibrated individually. First, based on the fact that photon does not leave a track, matching between the EMCal clusters and the tracker tracks is performed. After track information is extrapolated to the calorimeter plane, each track is matched to the nearest cluster and the distributions of $\mathrm{d}\eta(\text{track-cluster})$ and $\mathrm{d}\phi(\text{track-cluster})$ are fitted by a Gaussian function. The cluster is considered to have an associated track if $|\mathrm{d}\eta|$ and $|\mathrm{d}\phi|$ are both within $3\sigma$ of the fit. Single particle simulations were performed to validate the track-cluster matching; approximately 95% of photons and 89% of neutral pions have no associated tracks while 98% of electrons and 97% of charged pions have a single track. Second, the clusters passed the track-cluster matching are sorted by the cut on the $E_{\mathrm{EMCAL}}/p_{\mathrm{track}}$ ratio to distinguish charged-hadrons contribution from electrons contribution. If the track momentum is higher than 1 GeV, clusters with an $E/p$ ratio within $3\sigma$ from unity are considered electromagnetic, and the rest are considered hadronic. If the track momentum is lower than 1 GeV, all clusters are considered hadronic because the $E/p$ distributions of electrons are relatively wide in this $p_T$ region.

The reconstructed jet energy after the calibration can be expressed as:

$$E_{\mathrm{Jet}}^{\mathrm{reco}} = E_{\mathrm{EMCal}}^{\mathrm{em}} + A(E) \cdot E_{\mathrm{EMCal}}^{\mathrm{had}} + B(E) \cdot E_{\mathrm{HCal}}\,, \tag{8.1}$$

where $E_{\mathrm{EMCal}}^{\mathrm{em}}$ and $E_{\mathrm{EMCal}}^{\mathrm{had}}$ are the deposited energy in the EMCal classified as electromagnetic and hadronic, respectively. Similarly, $E_{\mathrm{HCal}}$ indicates the deposit energy in the HCal. The coefficients $A$ and $B$ are calibration factors and determined by minimizing the quantity,

$$\Sigma_{i=1}^{N}(E_{\mathrm{Jet},i}^{\mathrm{reco}} - E_{\gamma,i}^{\mathrm{reco}})^2/(E_{\gamma,i}^{\mathrm{reco}})^2\,, \tag{8.2}$$

using the numerical minimization computer program, MINUIT2 [38]. Both calibration factors are set as free parameters and determined at the same time.

According to the sPHENIX run plan, it is expected to collect data with an integrated luminosity of $\mathcal{L}_{\text{int}} \approx 48\ \text{pb}^{-1}$ during the first p+p run. Thirty sets of photon+jet events, each corresponding to $\mathcal{L}_{\text{int}} \approx 45\ \text{pb}^{-1}$, were generated and each set was independently analyzed to study the statistical fluctuations that might be present in the process of generating the calibrations using the statistics expected in real data. Due to the limited statistics at higher energy, the reconstructed photon energy in the range of $20 < E_{\gamma}^{\text{Reco}} < 30$ GeV has been studied. Calibrations at higher energy will require a combination of Monte Carlo and additional measurements to establish, but the low-energy photon+jet calibration will establish a baseline.

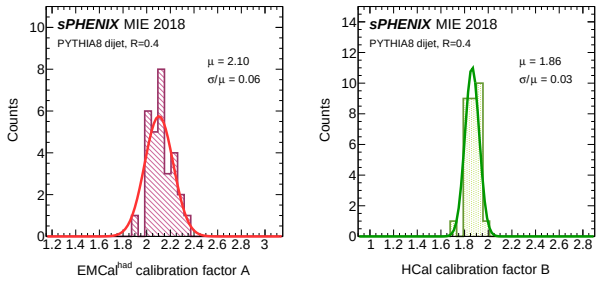



**Figure 8.24:** Distributions of scale factors $A$ for EMCal with hadronic energy (left), and $B$ for the Outer HCal (right). Thirty sets of photon-jet events with $\mathcal{L}_{\text{int}} \approx 45\ \text{pb}^{-1}$ are generated in p+p simulation to calculate the scale factors.

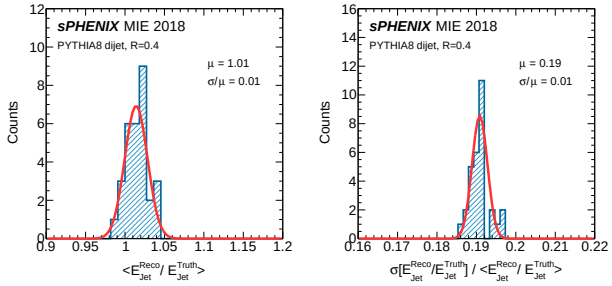



**Figure 8.25:** Distributions of Jet Energy Scale (left) and Jet Energy Resolution (right) after the jet energy is calibrated by thirty sets of scale factors shown in Fig. 8.24.

Figure 8.24 shows the distributions of calibration factors obtained from the thirty sets of simulated photon-jet events. The relative standard deviations of 3–6% have been observed. Next, these calibration factors have been applied to independently-produced samples of dijet events. Figure 8.25 shows the distributions of Jet Energy Scale (JES) and Jet Energy Resolution (JER) after the jet energy is calibrated using thirty different sets of calibration

factors. For each set, the JES is obtained by the mean of the Gaussian fit to reconstructed to truth jet energy distributions, $< E_{\text{Jet}}^{\text{Reco}} / E_{\text{Jet}}^{\text{Truth}} >$, and the JER is defined by the standard deviation divided by the mean $\sigma[E_{\text{Jet}}^{\text{Reco}} / E_{\text{Jet}}^{\text{Truth}}] / < E_{\text{Jet}}^{\text{Reco}} / E_{\text{Jet}}^{\text{Truth}} >$. Compared to the calibration factors, JES and JER show sharper distributions with the relative standard deviation less than 2%, indicating they are less affected by the lack of statistics.

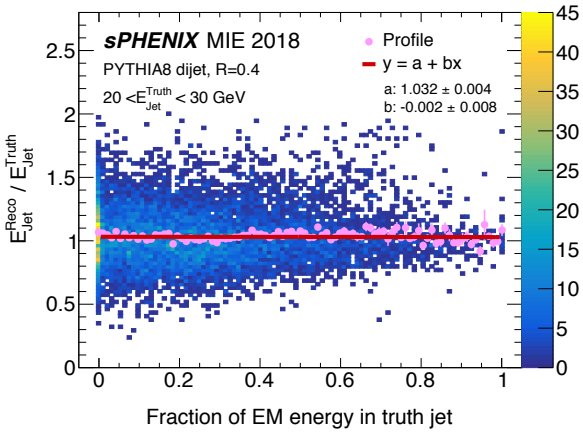



**Figure 8.26:** The ratio of reconstructed to truth jet energy distributions as a function of electromagnetic energy fraction in a truth jet from simulated p+p events, similar to Fig. 8.23, but after the calibration. The closed circles represent the profile along the $x$-axis, and the solid line is the linear fit to the profile.

Figure 8.26 shows the ratio of reconstructed to truth jet energy distributions as a function of electromagnetic energy fraction in a truth jet, similar to Fig. 8.23, but after the calibration factors (the mean values of Fig 8.24) are applied. The slope parameter $b$ is changed from $(0.378 \pm 0.004)$ to $(-0.002 \pm 0.008)$, which means the response after the calibration is fairly constant regardless of whether jet energy is electromagnetic or hadronic. The intercept $a$ is slightly higher than unity, possibly due to the fundamental discrepancy between the reconstructed gamma energy and truth jet energy. Such an over-correction can be adjusted using the MC truth information at the later level and has a negligible effect on the resolution. It is worth noting that although jets in photon+jet events are mainly initiated by quarks, the calibration factors obtained from photon+jet samples well flatten the EM dependence of jet response in QCD dijet samples that are more gluon-dominated. This indicates that similar calibration factors are applicable to both quark and gluon jets.

To study the energy dependence of calibration factors, more samples of dijet and photon-jet events are generated in different bins of truth energy, $E_{\text{Jet}}^{\text{Truth}}$ = [20, 30, 40, 50, 60] GeV. Each bin contains 50k events, which are expected to be enough to reduce statistical fluctuations. Figure 8.27 shows the calibration factors as a function of reconstructed photon energy, red and green points are calibration factors for $E_{\text{EMCal}}^{\text{had}}$ and $E_{\text{HCal}}$, respectively. For the cross points with the realistic statistics ($\mathcal{L}_{\text{int}} \approx 45\ \text{pb}^{-1}$), the mean and the standard deviation in Fig 8.24 are taken as the central value and the statistical uncertainty, respectively. The

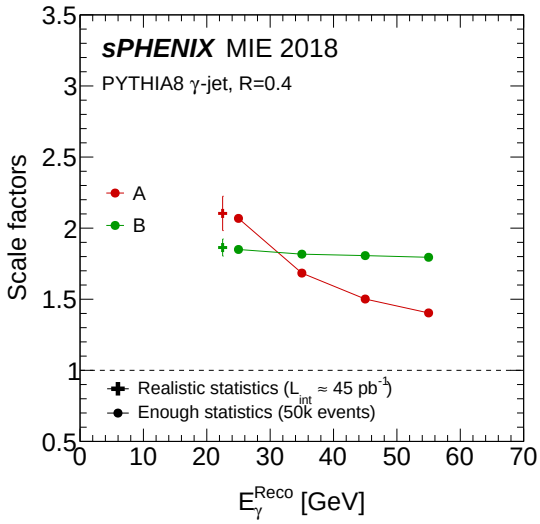



**Figure 8.27:** Calibration factors for the EMCal with hadronic energy (red) and HCal (green) as a function of reconstructed photon energy. Cross points represents simulations with realistic statistics ($\mathcal{L}_{\text{int}} \approx 45$ pb$^{-1}$) and circular points are ones with enough statistics (50k events).

results with the realistic statistics are compared to the ones with the enough statisis (50k events) in the lowest $E_{\gamma}^{\text{Reco}}$=[20, 30] GeV bin and in a good agreement within uncertainties. It implies that the calibration factors for the lowest $E_{\gamma}^{\text{Reco}}$ bin can be obtained by analyzing real data and be extrapolated to the higher energy region based on the Monte Carlo simulation.

Figure 8.28 summarizes the truth jet energy dependence of JES (left) and JER (right) before (open circles) and after (closed circles) the calibration. Similar to the calibration factor, the central value and the statistical uncertainty of cross points are obtained by the mean and the standard deviation of Fig. 8.25, respectively. The results with realistic statistics and larger statistics match well each other in the lowest $E_{\text{Jet}}^{\text{Truth}}$=[20, 30] GeV bin. After the calibration, the JES is closer to unity and the JER remains almost the same.

### 8.2.3 Physics observables

Figs 8.29, 8.30, and 8.31 show examples of simulated physics observables, presented at the generator-level and at the reconstructed detector level in $p$+$p$ and 0-20% Au+Au events. The detector-level distributions were made using a full GEANT4 simulation of the Pythia 8 events used for the generator-level distributions, read-out, reconstruction and calibration of the calorimeter towers, and application of the heavy ion underlying event subtraction and jet reconstruction algorithms with cone size $R = 0.4$. In these studies, the kinematics for high-$p_{\text{T}}$ direct photons and charged-particle tracks were taken to be the generator-level

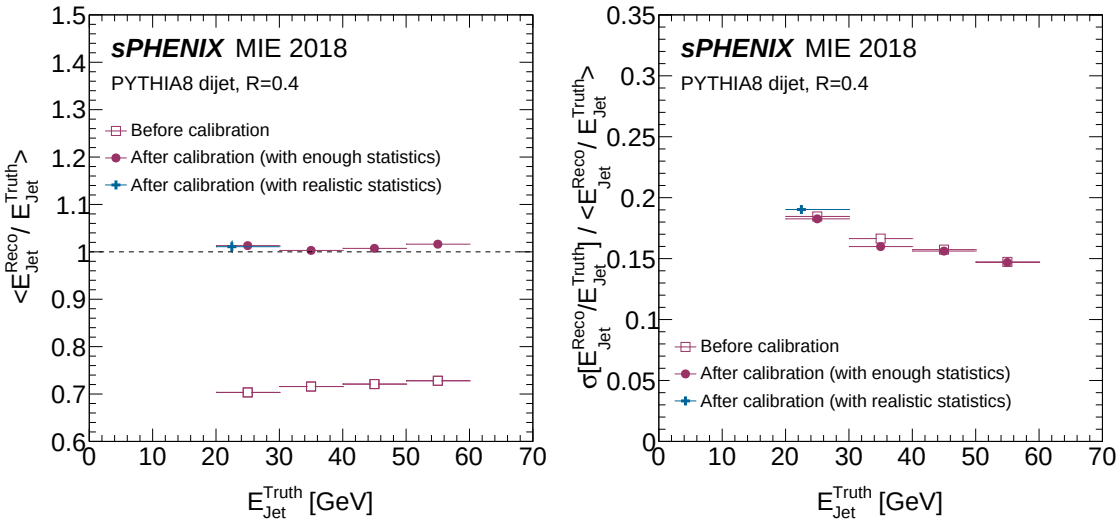



**Figure 8.28:** Jet energy scale (left) and resolution (right) as a function of truth jet energy in simulated proton-proton events. Open and closed markers indicate before and after the calibration, respectively.

value, since the finite resolution from detector effects is completely dominated by the jet $p_{\mathrm{T}}$ resolution.

The observables are shown in example kinematic selections for which sPHENIX is expected to have large statistics, where detector effects are small overall relative to the intrinsic shapes of the distributions (c.f. the generator-level and reconstructed $p$+$p$) and where the additional resolution introduced by the Au+Au underlying event fluctuations are small (c.f. the reconstructed $p$+$p$ and Au+Au distributions). Thus the Figures give clear examples of measurements which are expected to be straightforward to perform with first sPHENIX data.

Figure 8.29 shows distributions of the dijet transverse momentum balance. This measurement, which was one of the first to be performed in the LHC heavy ion programs, is a historically impactful probe of jet quenching occurring in individual events (rather than observed in a statistical average) and is sensitive to many physics of interest such as the path length dependence of parton energy loss and the role of energy loss fluctuations.

Figure 8.30 shows distributions of the photon+jet transverse momentum balance. Photon+jet physics is a capstone for sPHENIX, and a suite of high-statistics photon+jet measurements can be used to measure the absolute amount of energy loss, the resulting medium response, constrain the rate of large angle scatterings in the medium, and so forth. Importantly, measurements such as those in Fig. 8.30 can be connected to both historical RHIC measurements of photon+hadron correlations and to LHC photon+jet measurements. In particular, given the smaller rate of initial state radiation processes at RHIC energies, the photon+jet $p_{\mathrm{T}}$ balance is expected to be substantially better correlated

than at the LHC, allowing for a more sensitive probe.

Figure 8.31 shows distributions of the longitudinal fragmentation function for inclusively selected jets and jets that are azimuthally opposite to a high-$p_{\mathrm{T}}$ photon. Measurements of the internal structure of jets are an increasingly important way to probe how the medium interplays with and modifies the particular angular and momentum scales involved in the QCD parton showering process. Thus measurements of jet structure and sub-structure will be needed to characterize the jet softening and broadening of jet constituents, and address questions of how the medium resolves correlated structures in the shower. The fragmentation functions are one example of this aspect of the physics program.

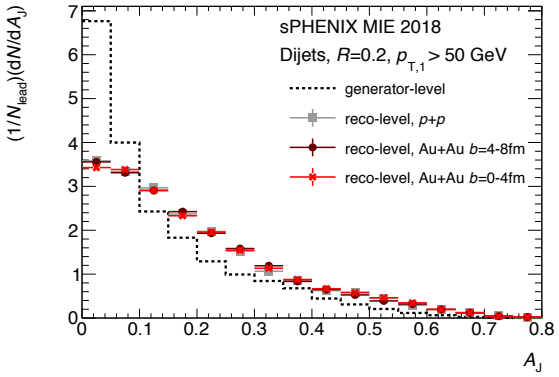



**Figure 8.29:** Distributions of the dijet transverse momentum balance ratio, shown at the generator level and at the reconstructed detector level in $p$+$p$ and Au+Au events.

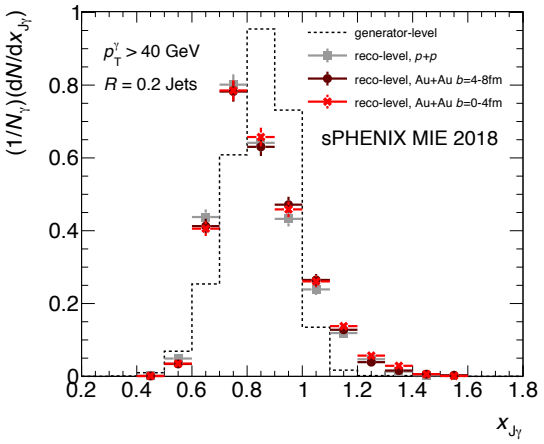



**Figure 8.30:** Distributions of the photon+jet transverse momentum balance ratio, shown at the generator level and at the reconstructed detector level in $p$+$p$ and Au+Au events.

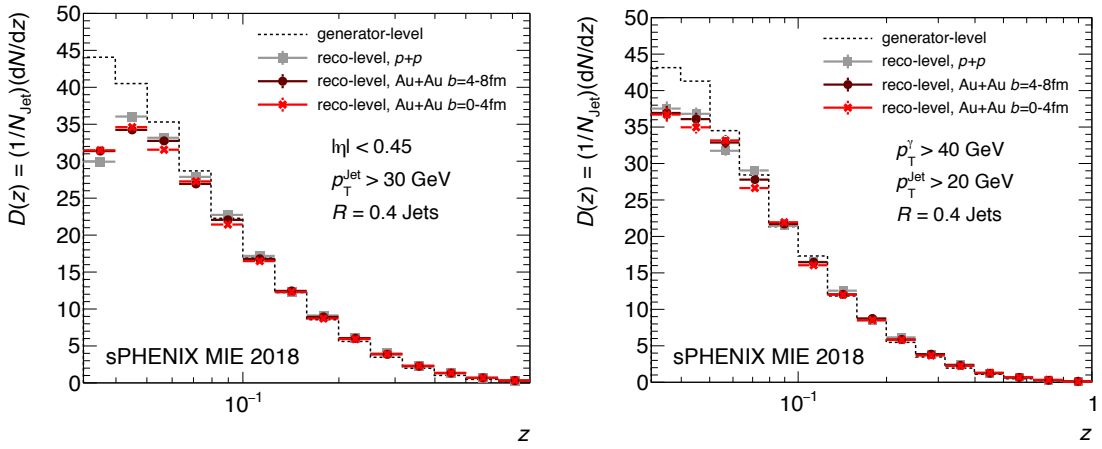



**Figure 8.31:** Distributions of the longitudinal fragmentation function for inclusive jets (left) and photon-tagged jets (right).

### 8.2.4 Photon isolation

As well as the jet reconstruction, the photon isolation algorithm also has been developed, which is important for photon-jet correlation measurements. The procedure is as follows. First, an EMCal cluster above certain $E_{\mathrm{T}}$ value is selected as a photon candidate. Then, $E_{\mathrm{T}}$ of all the towers around this cluster is summed over within the isolation cone $\Delta R$. The reconstructed isolation energy is defined by $E_{\mathrm{T}}^{\mathrm{iso}} = (\Sigma E_{\mathrm{T}}^{\mathrm{Tower}}) - E_{\mathrm{T}}^{\mathrm{Cluster}}$. Currently, sPHENIX clustering and cluster-splitting algorithms utilize the shower profile based on the PHENIX method.

Figure 8.32 shows the $E_{\mathrm{T}}^{\mathrm{iso}}$ distributions for different $\Delta R$ in simulated Au+Au events. Circles are for $\Delta R = 0.2$, squares are for $\Delta R = 0.3$, and triangles are for $\Delta R = 0.4$ isolation cones, respectively. Filled points are the results with raw towers, and $E_{\mathrm{T}}^{\mathrm{iso}}$ is centered around higher values for larger $\Delta R$ due to the presence of the UE. As a next step, the photon isolation is performed over the UE-subtracted towers, as it is done for jets. The UE-subtracted results are shown as open points, and $E_{\mathrm{T}}^{\mathrm{iso}}$ is peaking at zero for all $\Delta R$. Distributions are broader for larger $\Delta R$ as the background fluctuations are expected to be proportional to the isolation cone size. By this study, it can also be validated that the sPHENIX UE subtraction method is working reasonably.

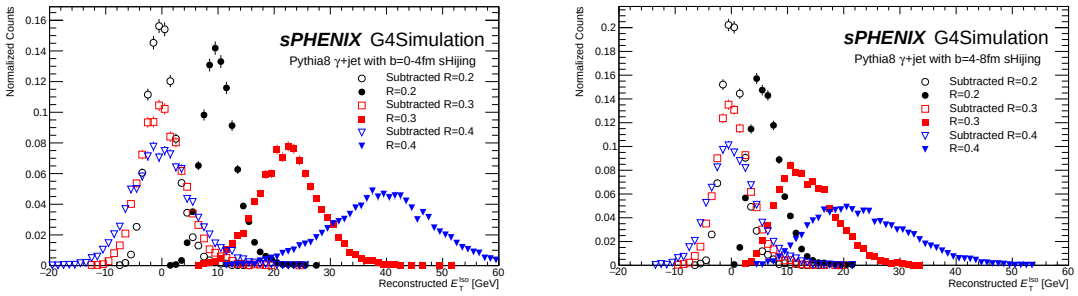



**Figure 8.32:** Distrubitons of cluster isolation energy ($E_{\mathrm{T}}^{iso}$) for different isolation cone size $\Delta R$ in simulated Au+Au events with the impact parameter of $b$=0-4 fm (left) and 4-8 fm(right). Filled points are the results with raw towers, and open points are with the UE-subtracted towers.

# Appendix A

# Superconducting Magnet

The magnet and tracking system should be capable of order of 1% momentum resolution at 10 GeV/$c$ over $|\eta| < 1.1$ and the full azimuth. The BaBar solenoid, with a central field of $\sim 1.5$ T and an inner radius of $\sim 140$ cm, is an excellent match to the sPHENIX physics requirements. The magnet became available in late 2012, and the ownership of the coil and related equipment have been transferred to BNL.

## A.1 Magnet Mechanical Design

The superconducting solenoid magnet was manufactured by Ansaldo and delivered to the BABAR experiment at SLAC in 1997. The magnet was successfully commissioned in 1998, and it was operated and remained in good condition through the end of the BaBar experiment in April 2008. The solenoid was then shipped to BNL in February 2015. Upon installation in sPHENIX at BNL, the magnet will remain unchanged except for an extension to the connection to the exiting power leads and cryogenic line structure (referred to as the valve box) to eliminate interference with the sPHENIX outer calorimeter.

Partly to simplify track finding and fitting, the magnitude of the magnetic field within the tracking volume should be constant within a few percent. The field will be measured to better than 1% in the whole cryostat area to correct for nonuniformities, especially close to the plug doors.

### A.1.1 Conductor

The conductor is composed of a niobium titanium "Rutherford-type" superconducting cable which was co-extruded with an outer aluminum matrix. The cable is made of sixteen strands of 0.8 mm diameter wire with a copper to superconductor ratio of 1:1, filament size less than 40 $\mu$m, and twist pitch of 25 $\mu$m. The final superconducting cable is rectangular in shape and 1.4 mm by 6.4 mm in size. The aluminum matrix into which the superconductor is co-extruded is of two sizes; 8.49 mm thick by 20 mm wide in the body of the magnet, and 4.93 mm thick by 20 mm wide in the coil end regions. The thinner aluminum matrix in the ends permits higher current density in the coil ends to extend the axial region of uniform solenoid field. The critical current of the conductor is 12,680 A at 2.5 T and 4.2 K, which provides a safety margin of 2.75 over the operating current of 4,596 A. The conductor is wrapped with fiberglass cloth which is later impregnated with epoxy, the combination of which provides both electrical insulation for the conductor and mechanical support for the completed coil.

### A.1.2 Coil

The solenoid coil consists of two conductor layers. Both conductor layers were internally wound inside an aluminum support mandrel — first the outer layer and then the inner layer. Winding was started at the end where the conductor leads would ultimately exit the coil, using the narrow conductor. After a specified number of windings the narrow conductor was spliced to the thick conductor using two 30 cm long soldered lap connections, spaced 20 cm on either side of a 1.5 m long region where the edges of the overlapping thin and thick aluminum matrices were welded together (Figure A.1). The completed splice region was hand wrapped with fiberglass cloth when complete and winding using the thick conductor was completed to a specified number of turns, after which a similar splice back to thin conductor was installed and the winding of the outer layer completed to the desired dimensions. A third splice, this one to connect to the inner coil layer, was installed, and inner layer winding was completed in a fashion similar to the outer layer using thin, then thick, a finally thin, conductor. The number of thin and thick conductor windings, for the inner (outer) layer, counting from the exiting lead end of the coil, are 184, 164, and 183 (188, 159, and 189). When the winding was completed, the coil was impregnated using epoxy to create a rigid structure. G-10 parts were used in transition locations and to adjust the overall length of the coil to meet the aluminum support mandrel end flanges.

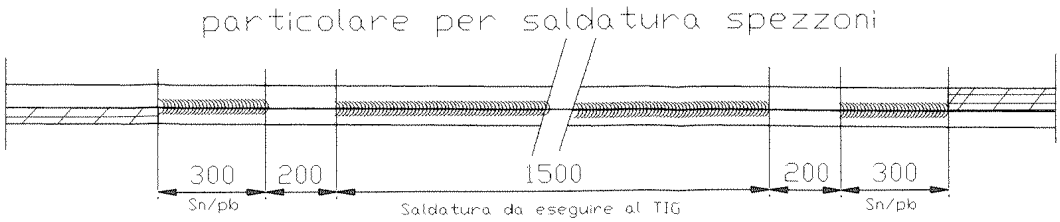
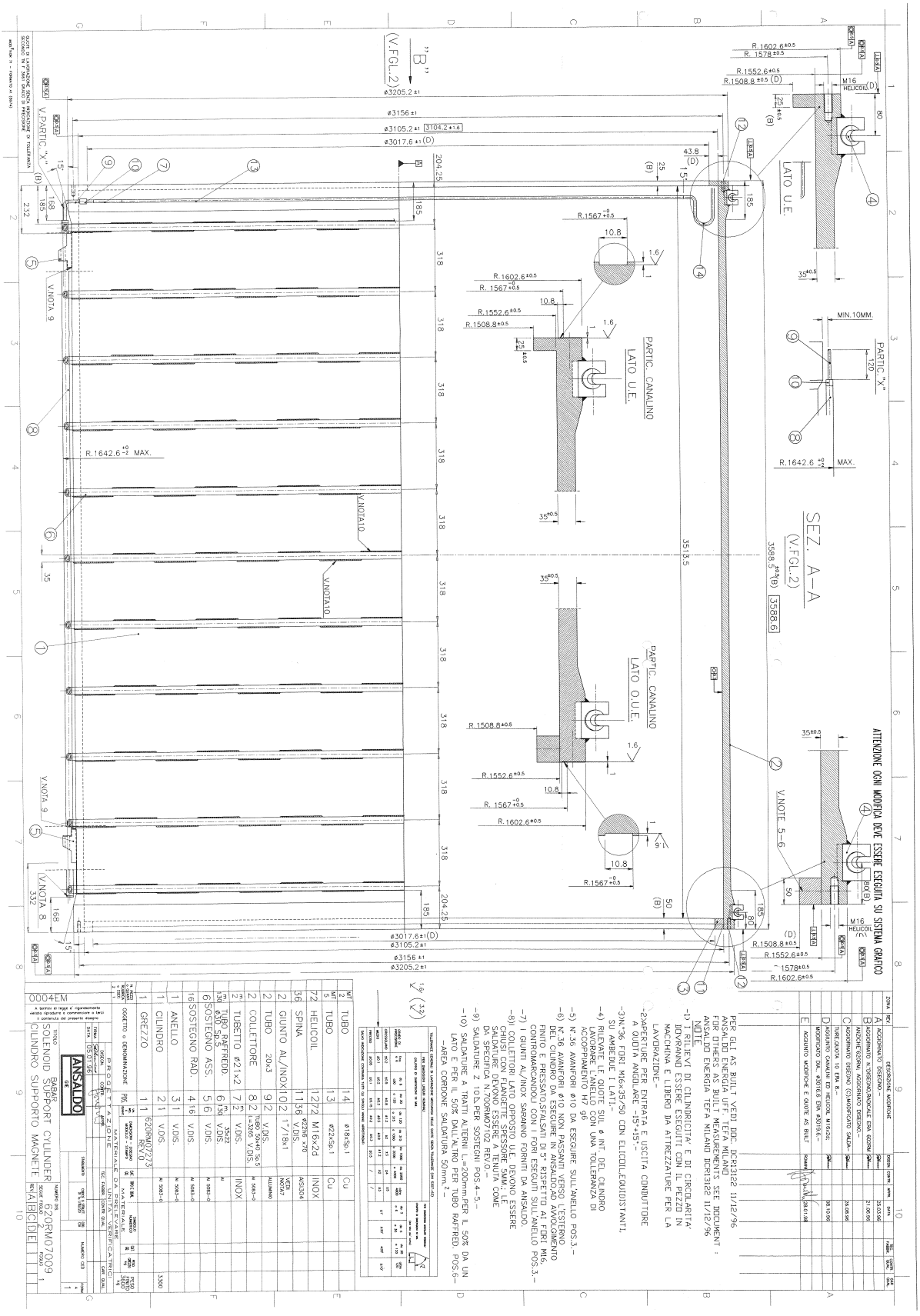



**Figure A.1:** Internal splices (extracted from the original Ansaldo drawing): 1500 mm weld of aluminum edges + 200 mm gap + 300 mm solder of aluminum faces on both sides of the weld. The welding was done with the TIG (Tungsten Inert Gas) technique.

### A.1.3 Cold Mass and Cryostat

The aluminum support mandrel provides both mechanical support and cooling to the solenoid coil (Figure A.2). Conductive cooling is provided via helium which circulates in lines welded to the outside surface of the support mandrel. An outer heat shield which is actively cooled to 40 K using helium gas from the cold mass cooling line boil-off that is returned to the helium reservoir, along with conductively cooled heat shield end plates and inner heat shield (connected to the outer shield) assist with maintaining a uniform 4 K coil temperature. Support from outward radial and axial Lorentz forces is provided by the strength of the aluminum cylinder. Gravity loads, as well as magnetic field alignment, are




206

**Figure A.2:** Original Ansaldo drawing of the Solenoid Support Cylinder

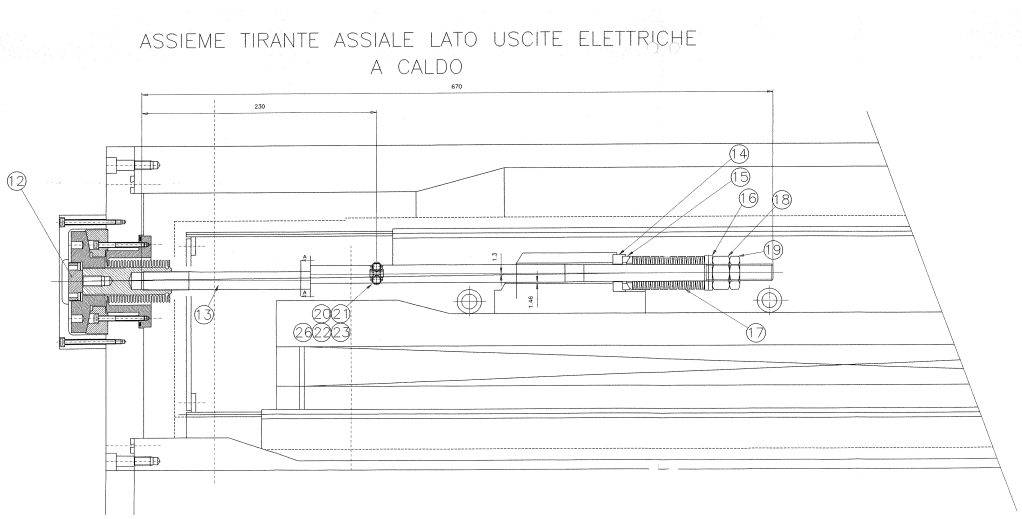



**Figure A.3:** Original Ansaldo drawing: Axial Tie Rod Assembly

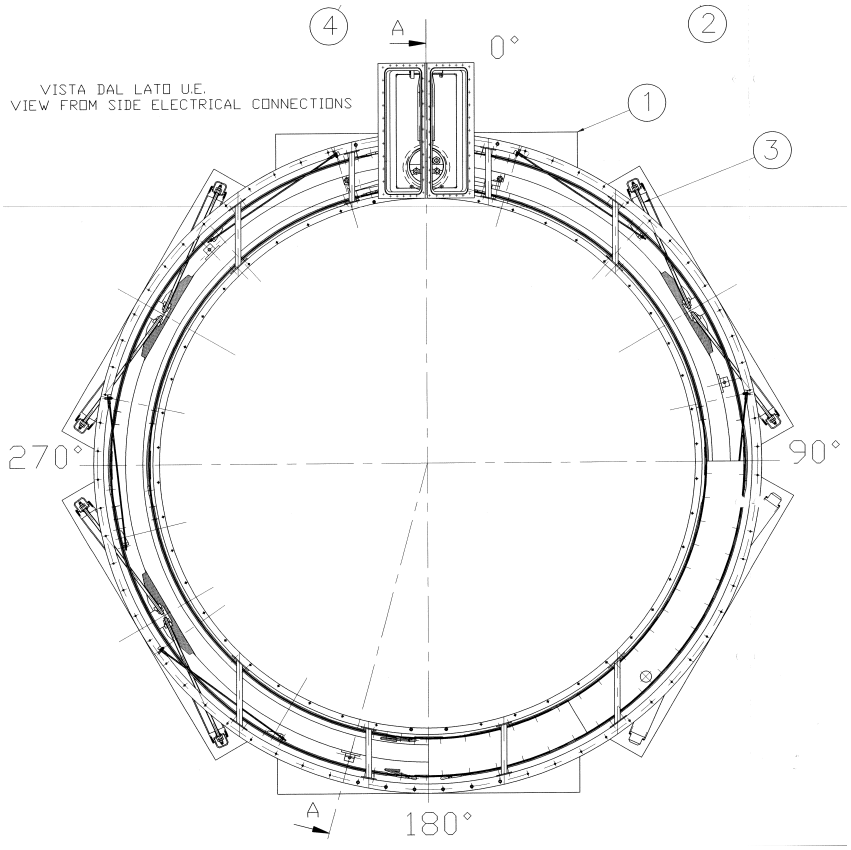



**Figure A.4:** Original Ansaldo drawing: Cryostat Assembly


**Figure A.5:** (Left) Exiting leads — aluminum removed and niobium titanium soldered to heavy copper stabilizer leads (overlapping aluminum; (Right) Outer heat shield.

provided by a system of tangential and axial Inconel tie rods which develop tension on cool down to 4 K. Tie rods connect the coil support cylinder directly to the aluminum outer cryostat (Figure A.3) but are heat stationed to the outer heat shield. The coil is positioned with a 30 mm axial offset toward the lead end with respect to the outer cryostat. The outer heat shield is independently supported by the outer cryostat by separate tie rods (Figures A.4 and Figures A.5).

### A.1.4 Valve Box

The cryostat connects to a vertical tower (valve box, Figure A.6), which contains all the electrical (vapor cooled) power leads, instrumentation wire leads, helium supply and return lines for coil and heat shield, and vacuum connections. During installation in sPHENIX this valve box will be extended away from the magnet to provide clearance

for the outer calorimeter, by adding a 1 m transfer line extension which carries all of the aforementioned lines from magnet to valve box.

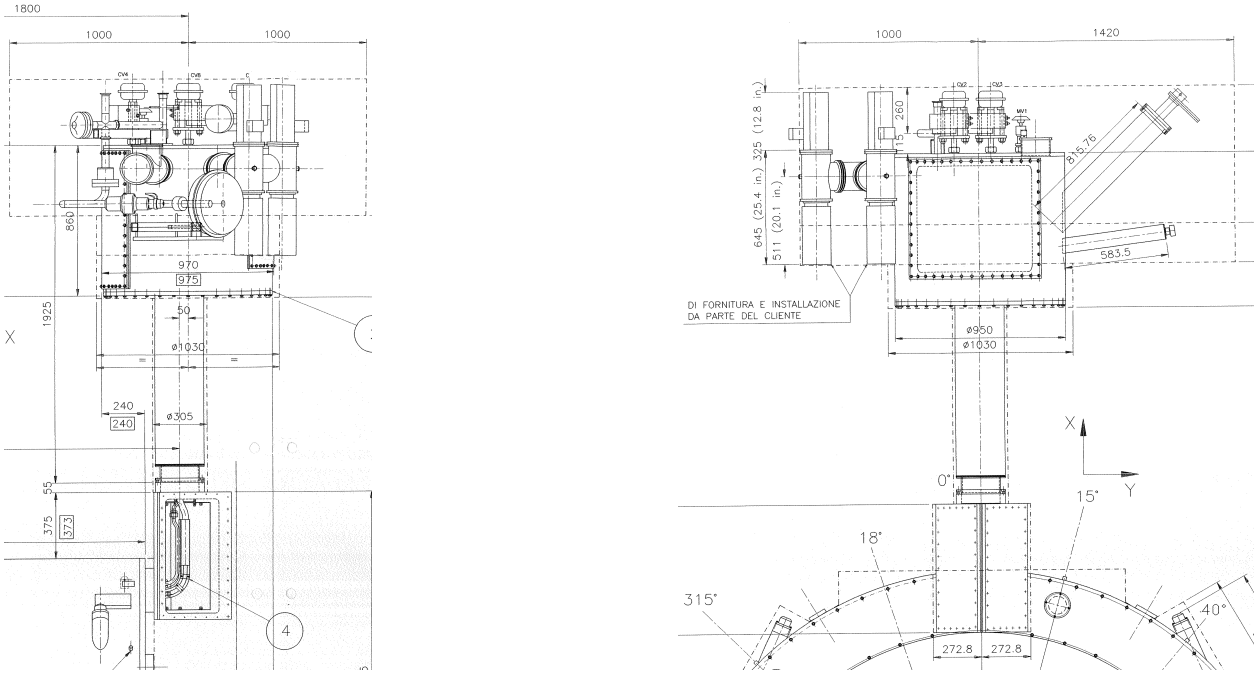



**Figure A.6:** Original Ansaldo drawing of the valve box.

Figures A.6 and A.7 show the placement of the cryostat, the extension and the valve box. Figure A.8 shows different portions of the extension that is connected to the valve box.

## A.2 Cryogenics

### A.2.1 Magnet Cryostat System

The coil of the magnet is attached to a cylindrical aluminum mandrel which is cooled by boiling liquid helium in eleven parallel aluminum tubes welded to the mandrel. A separate valve-box cryostat located above the solenoid cryostat, outside the return flux iron serves to interface the power and cryogenics to the solenoid. The valve-box contain the cryogenic valves, the siphon phase separator vessel, current leads, and relief devices. A vacuum jacketed interconnect containing the cryogenic lines and superconducting current cables, and instrument wiring, connects the solenoid cryostat to the valvebox.

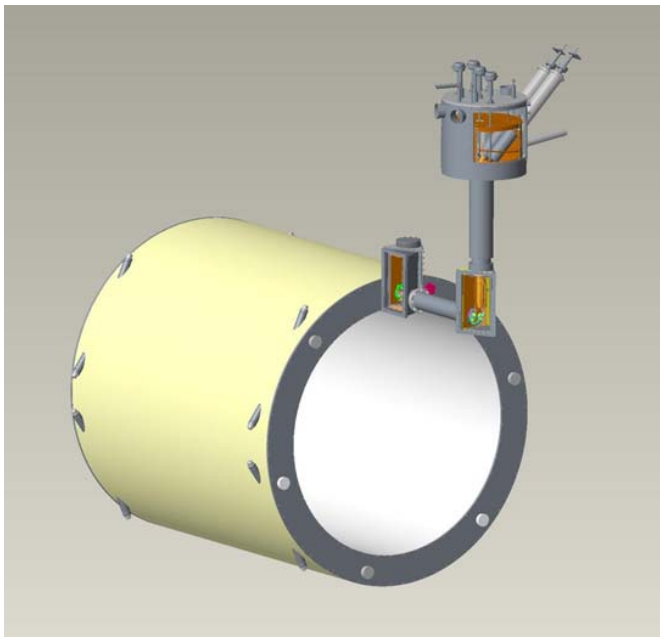


**Figure A.7:** The cryostat, the extension and the valve box.

### A.2.2 Magnet 4.5 K Cooling

The original design of the cooling loop is a thermo-siphon loop in which liquid is drawn from the phase separator vessel and fed to the bottom of solenoids cooling loop and returns back to the phase separator. It has not been operated in the thermo-siphon for most if its normal operating life at its previous facility. The magnet was cooled by, instead of feeding the liquid to the phase separator, the liquid helium was fed directly from the cryogenic supply to the solenoids cooling loop, with the return flow still coming back to the valve-box phase separator. This operating point was still sub-critical, and thus nucleate boiling still occurred and the flow is two phase returning to the phase separator.

**Table A.1:** Steady State Loads

| Solenoid Valvebox Loads | Original Design / Nominal Load | Forced 2 Phase Flow Operation and Design Load |
|---|---|---|
| Magnet load and valvebox | 35 W @ 4.5 [siphon mode] | 7.5 g/s, 145W [with Valvebox separator loading heaters] |
| Shield | 0.35 g/s, from 4.5K to 50K, 110W | 0.5 g/s, from 4.5K to 50K |
| Vapor cooled leads | 0.51 g/s, 4.5K to 300K | 0.51 g/s, 4.5K to 300K |
| Vapor cooled leads | 0.51 g/s, 4.5K to 300K | 0.51 g/s, 4.5K to 300K |
| | | |

### A.2.3 Superconducting Current Leads

The two superconducting current (SC) leads, after exiting the coil are cooled by conduction to the 2-phase flow return tube. The superconducting lead cables are attached to copper bars, which are cooled by this return line going back to the valve box. The SC leads terminate at the lead pots, which each contain the normal conducting copper vapor cooled current lead, that transitions to the room temperature connection for the external power supply. The lead pot is cooled by liquid drawn from the main siphon phase separator. The entire lead pot is electrically hot, and isolation is done with an isolator at the tubing connections that feed liquid and return cold vapor, and on the tubing connection where the lead cooling exit the warm end of the current lead, with the actual pot vessel isolated with a G-10 spacer at the flange on the warm end of the lead pot vessel. The nominal lead cooling flow is 0.2 g/s controlled by a 0.5 g/s thermal mass flow controller.

### A.2.4 Thermal Shield

Thermal shields surround the solenoid coil/mandrel assembly in both annular spaces (inner and out diameter) between the coil and the cryostat vacuum vessel. Some of the 4.5 K cold vapor from the separator vessel is taken through the shield loop and returns back to the cryosystem to a warmup heater (liquefaction load on the plant) or returns cold at approximately 40 K to the cryo plant's coldbox. Nominal shield flow is 0.35 g/s with a return temperature of around 60 K for a load of 110 W.

### A.2.5 Valve Box

The existing valve box serves as the cryogenic, power supply, vacuum, and instrumentation interface between the solenoid and the rest of the facility. It contains the following equipment on the valve box and interfaces: cryogenic control valves, the relief devices, the electrical feedthroughs for all the solenoid instrumentation, turbo vacuum pump, vacuum gages,pressure sensors, TE, SC level, LHe bath heaters.

### A.2.6 Relief Devices

The helium volume is protected by an ASME relief valve and ASME burstdisk, and a cryogenic dump globe valve from a relief line originating from the phase separator. The reliefs were sized to handle a full magnet quench and loss of insulating vacuum to air.

### A.2.7 Cryogenic Supply System

The magnet will be cooled by tie-in to RHIC cryogenic distribution system. There will be one supply line that will tie-in to the S header and the H header of the cryo distribution system. This allows liquid helium supply during 4.5K operations and ability to draw from the heat shield header during cooldown.

Cold vapor returns via a return line to the U header on RHIC distribution system. The solenoid shield returns on a separate shield return which will also be used to shield the cryogenic transfer line for this interface transfer line system. The shield flow will return to the RHIC U-header or WR header. The current lead flow returns will be returned as warm gas to RHIC's WR header, operating at 1.2 bar.

Thus RHIC operating conditions on the cryo distribution system will set the operating condition for the SC Solenoid.

| Header name | Pressure [bar] | Temperature [K] |
|---|---|---|
| S | 3,4 | 5.0 |
| H | 12-14 | 50-80 |
| R/U | 1.22 | 4.6 |
| WR | 1.19 | 293 |

Magnet operating temperature is actually set by the return pressure on the RHIC cryogenic distribution system at 8 O'Clock / 1008. The pressure in RHIC's 4.5 K vapor line R or U header is around 1.22 bar during normal operation. In order to operate the solenoid helium at 4.5 K, the boiling point pressure needs to be 1.300 bar. This sets the 4.5 K pressure drop budget between the solenoid and R header at 80 mbar.

**Table A.2:** 4.5K loop vapor return pressure drop budget [ 10 g/s vapor]

| Item | Pressure [bar] | DP budget [mbar] |
|---|---|---|
| Bath pressure | 1.300 | |
| Tubing run to valve | 1.295 | 5 |
| Vapor return valve | 1.279 | 16 [$C_v = 2.8$] |
| Tubing run to bayonet | 1.275 | 4 |
| Return line to heater | 1.270 | 5 |
| Heater | 1.250 | 20 |
| Return line to RHIC tap, 1" NPS, sch10 | 1.240 | 10 |
| Isolation valves, two | 1.226 | 14 [$C_v = 4$] |
| Margin/Balance | 1.216 | 4 |
| U header, 5K | 1.220 | [overall: 80] |

Tie-in from the RHIC cryogenic distribution system will occur at the valvebox via the tee-ins from the main header to the individual relief transition feedthrough lines located at one end [sextant 8/9 end] of the valvebox. The valvebox is located inside 1008B service building. The transfer line system exits the 1008 building and will penetrate the IP8 Hall via the south wall and suspends across the Hall to the platform. Cryogenic line jumpers with bayonets interface to the new interface box.

### A.2.8 Interfacebox

The interfacebox will be located next to the solenoid valvebox and will contain the following components:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Liquid helium reservoir, 400L | Sufficient for magnet rampdown in 1 hour if LHe supply is interrupted |
| 2a<br>2b | LN2 Boiler / Helium exchanger GN2 / Helium exchanger | LN2 exchangers to hold the magnet at 100K during shutdown using the helium circulating compressor at 1010B. LN2 Boiler and sensible heat recovery exchanger from 80K to 300K. |
| 3a<br>3b<br>3c | heater or recovery heatexchanger* | 20 kW Heater to warmup cold gas from the RHIC distribution for controlled cooldown and controlled warmup.<br>* Recovery heatexchanger option: acts as recovery heat exchanger between solenoid helium stream and RHIC distribution system to control gradient across solenoid during cooldown and warmup |
| 4a | Reservoir Vapor return control | Back pressure on reservoir to develop pressure difference to transfer flow to the solenoid valvebox supply |
| 4b | Reservoir Liquid supply control | Controls liquid Helium into the reservoir from RHIC supply |
| 4c | External dewar Liquid supply control | Controls liquid Helium into the reservoir from external dewar |
| 4d | Heater Supply isolation | Isolates heater inlet from RHIC Helium supply |
| 4e | Heater Exit to return side control | Controls warm Helium gas bypass to return side |
| 4f | LN2 supply to Boiler Exchanger | Controls LN2 into LN2 boiler |
| 4g | LN2/He HX Cooldown supply control | Controls 80K Helium flow into reservoir |
| 5 | Reliefs | Liquid helium reservoir and LN2 boiler bath, and trapped volumes |
| 6 | Temperature sensors | Reservoir, heater exit, LN2 Boiler exit |
| 7 | Pressure sensors | Liquid helium reservoir, Heater volume and LN2 boiler bath |
| 8 | Level sensors | Liquid helium reservoir and LN2 boiler bath |

A 400 Liter ASME U-Stamped liquid helium reservoir will serve as the buffer to allow rampdown of the magnet in the event there is interruption from the liquid helium supply, it also serves as the phase separator to do the phase separation from the supercritical helium supplied from RHIC cryogenic distribution S-header which is slightly warmer than RHIC's main M line flow. Supercritical helium at 3.55 bar and 4.8K is supplied from the S-header via shielded transfer line bundle into the 400L liquid helium reservoir and from

there liquid helium at 1.4 bar, 4.6K is supplied to the solenoid's valvebox. An additional bayonet is also provided to allow supply from a 500L portable liquid helium dewar from the superstructure platform. The reservoir will need to have a net liquid inventory of 300 Liters to allow liquid draw of 7.5 g/s and 1.3 g/s of vapor generation (8.8 g/s = 264 LPH) to allow rampdown of the magnet within 1 hour. [from 4600 A @1.5A/s].

The Interface box will also include the LN2/He exchanger for keeping the solenoid cold at 100K during RHIC shutdown. To handle the controlled gradient cooldown with no warm helium gas supply source available during RHIC operation, either a heater configuration or a He/He heat-exchanger and a small heater configuration is required. When the RHIC plant is not running the capability exists to use a small 18 g/s compressor located at 1010B to supply helium for circulation.

### A.2.9 Liquid Nitrogen Supply Line

Liquid nitrogen is supplied to the interface valvebox for use during the shutdown to maintain the magnet at 100K. The LN2 is supplied a 500 ft long cryogenic transfer line from the liquid nitrogen storage dewar located in the front of the experimental hall building.

### A.2.10 Warm Piping

N2 vent line to vent room temperature N2 to outside of the building will be run from the interface box to outside.

### A.2.11 Utilities

A.2.12 Utilities Instrument Air is supplied via RHIC's Cryogenic system's Instrument air system capable of providing -60°C dewpoint at 90 psig.

120VAC and 480VAC power is required for the heater and controls at the solenoid and in 1008B service building.

### A.2.12 Controls

Controls of the solenoid valvebox, the interfacebox will be done by a Modicon 340 series PLC and I/O chassis, located in two (2) 19" rack along with the temperature sensors controllers, SC level probe controllers and vacuum pump controllers. The PLC is interfaced to the RHIC Cryogenic Systems DCS/HMI control system via Ethernet on its own subnet.

Figure A.9 presents a flow-chart of the cryogenic control system.

# A.3 Magnet Power Supply

## A.3.1 Elements of the Power Supply System

Figure A.10 shows the main elements of the sPHENIX Magnet powering system.

**L Solenoid = 2.5 Hy** The solenoid is represented as two inductors in series, as it constructed in two layers. The connection between the two layers is brought outside the solenoid, to be used by the quench protection system. It is close, but not exactly, a true center tap. The two layers have slightly different number of turns (531 vs 536), and the inner winding has greater capacitive coupling to the support cylinder.

**Rd = 68 mΩ** Rd is energy dump resistor, used to quickly reduce the current in the solenoid if a quench is detected. This minimizes the energy absorbed within the solenoid. It is split in two, with a soft reference to ground at the center point. With this split, the voltage on either side of the solenoid to ground is only half the full dump voltage.

**Rg = 67 mΩ** Rg limits the ground current, should the coil fault to ground. The voltage across Rg is monitored by a ground fault detector.

**Magnet ZFCT** The magnet zero flux current transducer (ZFCT) accurately measures the current into the solenoid. It differs from the power supply current by the current flowing through the dump resistor. For this reason, this is the ZFCT used to regulate the current in the power supply.

**DC Contactor** In the event of a quench, the DC contactors are opened, and the power supply is disconnected from the solenoid. The full solenoid current is then directed through the energy dump resistor.

**Rc = 1.25 mΩ (SLAC Configuration)** Rc is the cable resistance. It determines the time to ramp down the current through the freewheeling diode (FWD) when the power supply turns off.

**PS ZFCT** The power supply ZFCT is for testing purposes, as it does not represent the solenoid current as accurately as the magnet ZFCT.

**FWD** The freewheeling diode (FWD) provides a current path when the power supply is turned off or trips.

**PS** The power supply (PS) nominally operates 4.6 kA and less than 20 V. The unit is manufactured to operate up to 8 kA and 40 V. Taps on the input transformer are used to reduce the maximum operating voltage.

### A.3.2 Operating Conditions

1. Ramping Up to Full Current

   Under the conditions where the current is ramped from zero to 4.6 kA at a rate of 2.5 A/sec:

   (a) The time to reach full current is (4,600 A) / (2.5 A/sec) = 1,840 seconds = 30.7 minutes.

   (b) The voltage across the magnet is V m = L di/dt = 2.5 Hy x 2.5 A/sec = 6.25 V.

   (c) The current through Rd is Vm / Rd = 6.25 V / 68 mΩ = 92 Amps

   (d) The peak power supply voltage is Rc ( Im + Id) + Vm = 1.25 mΩ (4.600 + 92) + 6.25 = 12.1 V.

2. Slow Discharge through FWD and Rc

   (a) Time constant $\tau$ = L / R c = 2.5 Hy / 1.25 mΩ = 2,000 seconds = 33.3 minutes

   (b) Time to decay from 4.6 kA to 100 A (as an example), Td = -$\tau$ ln(I / Io) = -33.3 ln (100 / 4,600) = 127.5 minutes = 2.1 hours

3. Fast Discharge through Dump Resistor

   (a) Time constant $\tau$ = L / Rd = 2.5 Hy / 68 mΩ = 36.76 seconds

   (b) Time to decay from 4.6 kA to 100 A (as an example), Td = -$\tau$ ln(I / Io) = -36.76 ln (100 / 4,600) = 140.4 seconds = 2.34 minutes

### A.3.3 Monitoring the Solenoid

The change in state of a conductor from superconducting to resistive is called a quench. The function of the quench detector is to measure small values of resistance by the voltage they create. Figure A.11 shows the wires connected to parts of the solenoid to sense internal voltages.

#### A.3.3.1 Quench Detection During Ramping

The quench detector should be sensitive to a voltage rise of about 100 mV. This is simple when the current in the solenoid is constant. But, when the current is ramping up or down, the induced voltage, $V = Ldi/dt$, is much greater than 100 mV. With a ramp rate of 2.5 A/sec, V = 6.25 V.

There is a voltage tap at the connection between the inner and outer solenoid windings. During ramping, if the inductance of these windings were identical, the voltage across the

top coil (VT05 with respect to VT07) would be exactly negative of the voltage across the bottom coil with respect to the same point (VT10 with respect to VT09).

The sum of these two voltages would add to zero. An imbalance caused by a 100 mV quench voltage can then be detected in the sum.

#### A.3.3.2 Practical Considerations

The inner and outer coil inductances are not identical.

1. The winding turns are not equal. The number is slightly different, 531 vs 536. This can be corrected by scaling the voltage tap value slightly before summing the two halves of the solenoid voltages.

2. The inner coil has greater capacitive coupling to the supporting cylinder than the outer coil. Even if the coils had identical initial inductances, this coupling imbalance will cause an imbalance in induced voltage. This is effect is a function of ramp rate. To reduce this effect, the summing correction for the static inductance difference is adjusted for a given ramp rate.

#### A.3.3.3 Energy Extraction

When a quench is detected, DC contactors are opened, removing the power supply from the load and directing the load current through the energy dump resistor.

The energy dump resistor causes the current in the solenoid to decay with a time constant of 36.8 seconds. This minimizes the heating of the quenched portion of the magnet. The peak voltage across the magnet is approximately 640 V, which due to the center ground reference at the energy dump resistor, is a maximum of 320 V with respect to ground on either side of the solenoid. By comparison, the time constant for a slow decay through the freewheeling diode for a normal shut down is 33.3 minutes.

The quench protection of the BaBar magnet was externally reviewed in October 1996. At the end of that review, additional information was requested and a second review was held in January 1997. The final report was delivered in March 1997. The report concluded that the quench analysis was complete. Based on this analysis it was shown that, even without a fast discharge, a quench would not develop temperatures that would cause a catastrophic magnet failure. As a key component of the fast discharge, the energy dump resistor was also studied, and found to provide adequate protection for the magnet.

#### A.3.3.4 Development of a New Quench Detector

Fifteen years have passed since the original quench detection system in the BaBar experiment has been designed and implemented. In the future implementation which will be done by the cooperation of Superconducting Magnet Division and the Collider-Accelerator Department, new hardware and software will make more accurate and reliable quench detection possible for this Magnet.

### A.3.4 Magnetic Field Simulations

As the return yoke in sPHENIX is very different than the original BaBar configuration, detailed field simulations are needed to understand the changes in shape and strength of the field. In a first step 2D simulations were done using the standard commercial opera software package.

These 2D simulations, Fig. A.12, assume a rotational symmetry of the setup and are a starting point for GEANT4 detector and physics simulations.

As the field depends on the dimensions and shape of the return yoke, which is not completely symmetric, and specifically on the distance of the two plug-doors with the beam openings, more detailed 3D simulation are necessary. To simplify the simulations the return yoke was first replaced by a solid cylinder of magnet steel with the appropriate density, Fig. A.13. The calculated magnetic field through this structure, at 4596 A, along the longitudinal axis (beam direction) is shown in Fig. A.14.

These simulations can also be used to calculate the forces on the solenoid. Apart from the mechanical forces due to the cool down, the dimensions and shape of the yoke and plug doors as well as the position of the coil within the return yoke creates sizable forces on the coil.

The plate structure of the return yoke is a challenging setup for the finite-element analysis, but these details are needed for understanding possible changes in the shower shape due to the scintillator gaps, Fig. A.15.

### A.3.5 Magnetic Force Simulations

The BaBar superconducting coil will be placed inside a non-symmetric flux return yoke as a part of the sPHENIX magnet assembly. This can give rise to axial offset forces on the coil. Simulations with OPERA have been run to understand what these forces and torques will be on the coil during its operation at 4596 A, where the central field is about 1.4 T.

Figure A.16 shows the non-symmetric model for the sPHENIX flux return yoke in the OPERA simulation, it is modelled using 1006 steel. The notch in the “south” end door is to allow for the “valve box”, as previously shown in Figure A.7.

In the symmetric model the forces along the beam axis are symmetric, the simulation for the total forces are balanced at about $\pm$ 5.65 $\times$ $10^6$ N. The calculated forces on the two end doors are about $\pm$ 8 $\times$ $10^5$ N.

From the simulations of this model, the magnetic forces and torques at the yoke center due to the coils being misaligned are shown in Table A.3.

**Table A.3:** Magnetic forces (Fx, Fy, Fz) and torques (Tx,Ty,Tz) in the non-symmetric model.

| | Fx [N] | Fy [N] | Fz [N] | Tx [N-cm] | Ty [N-cm] | Tz [N-cm] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| No misalignments | -1043 | -14072 | 15640 | 335007 | 160904 | 0 |
| Coils shift, dx=2 mm | 9412 | -14077 | 15647 | 335345 | 157079 | -2815 |
| Coils shift, dz=3 mm | -1033 | -13903 | 21207 | 354464 | 159326 | 0 |

### A.3.6 Field Mapping

To achieve the required momentum resolution the solenoid field has to be known in detail, specially towards the edges of the tracker acceptance where deviations from the ideal solenoidal field are expected.

There will be three separate monitoring tasks. The low and full field tests scheduled for 2016 and 2018 were just a monitoring task where we plan to use a few commercial hall probes. For the low field test we installed a 3D probe close to the center of the magnet monitoring the expected field of a few hundred Gauss.

For the full field test at a current of 4596 An additional commercial high resolution NMR probes was installed in the magnet. The NMR probes attempted to provide a high resolution measurement of the field and may later be installed as permanent monitoring probes in the final setup.

For the final setup we currently plan to install a series of NMR probes on the outside of the mapping detectors and rely on detailed field simulations.

## A.4 Tests for the Superconducting Solenoid Magnet

There were a series of tests done at room temperature in April 2015 for the initial inspection and acceptance of the superconducting solenoid after it was shipped to BNL. The high potential (hipot) tests (up to 520 V) recorded a leakage current of 0.15 $\mu$A. The impulse test done at 400 V was successful in that the waveform measured didn't indicate any turn-to-turn short in the magnet coils. We also ramped the current across the solenoid slowly from 0 to 2 A and 5 V to measure the inductance of the solenoid to be about 2.3 H

(very close to 2.2 H that was measured in 1997). In addition, we have also performed a leak check which found no noticeable leaks and a 6.6 bar pressure test which was also successful (even up to 85 psi).

In March 2016, a low-field and low-current test has been performed for the superconducting solenoid. We have cooled the magnet with helium down to about 4.5 K and brought the current to 100 A. This was as much a test for the entire cryogenic system as it was to test and verify the expected magnetic field (about 300 Gauss in the center). P. Joshi has also tested his quench protection system that he had used in the Superconducting Magnet Division for other purposes.

In February 2018, we have further performed a high-field and high-current test for the magnet. This time, the entire solenoid cryostat was surrounded by thick steel plates, in a box configuration, which served as the media for the return field. The above-mentioned quench protection system has been upgraded mainly by Z. Altinbas and C. Schultheiss to include a PXIe system with 3 PXIe-4300 boards (24 channels) with some circuitry (such as anti-aliasing filter) adapted from the RHIC quench protection. This system was built such that it can be used in the future sPHENIX experiment at 1008 of RHIC.

On February 13 and 16, 2018, we successfully ramped the magnet current gradually to the peak current of 4830 A, more than 5% over 4596 A, the nominal operating current that the BaBar experiment has used for this magnet during their years of operation. At the peak current, the magnetic field that we measured and recorded with our 3D gauss probe was about 1.34 T. In both occasions, we stayed at the peak current and magnetic field for about 40 minutes. This duration (that we could stay at the peak current) was limited by the amount of liquid helium available in the cryogenic system at Building 912 to keep the Magnet in the superconducting state and we needed to have another hour to perform a slow discharge for the Magnet. Figure A.17 shows the magnetic field and the ramping Magnet current. At the end, we executed a slow discharge from the peak current until it dropped below 1000 A and we then did a fast discharge as the current was deemed to be too low to do any possible damage.

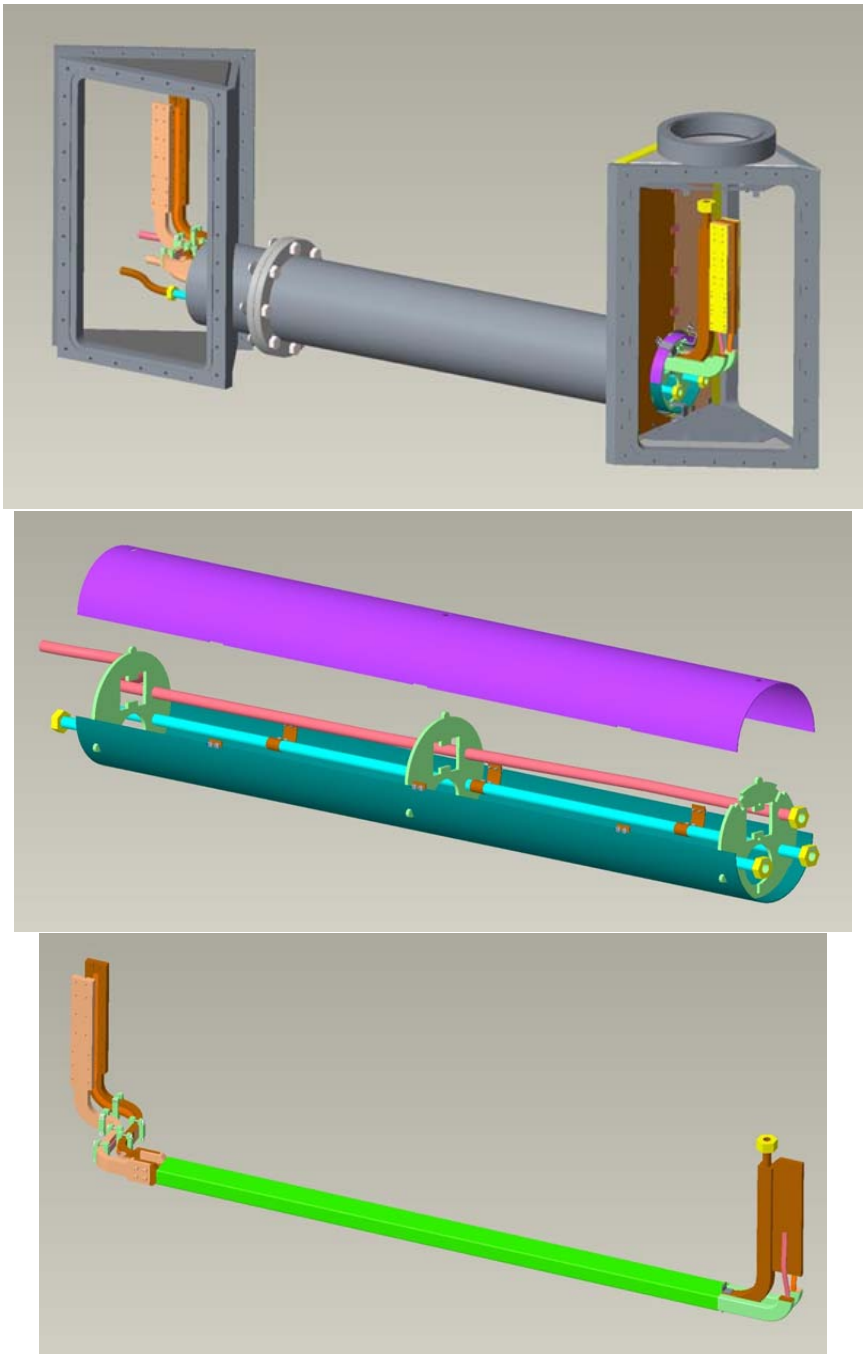


**Figure A.8:** Top: from the junction box (at the cryostat) to the valve box; Middle: coil helium supply line and heat shield; Bottom: extension lead assembly with flexible (laminated copper) connections to accommodate thermal contraction on the left and coil return helium to cool exiting leads on the right.

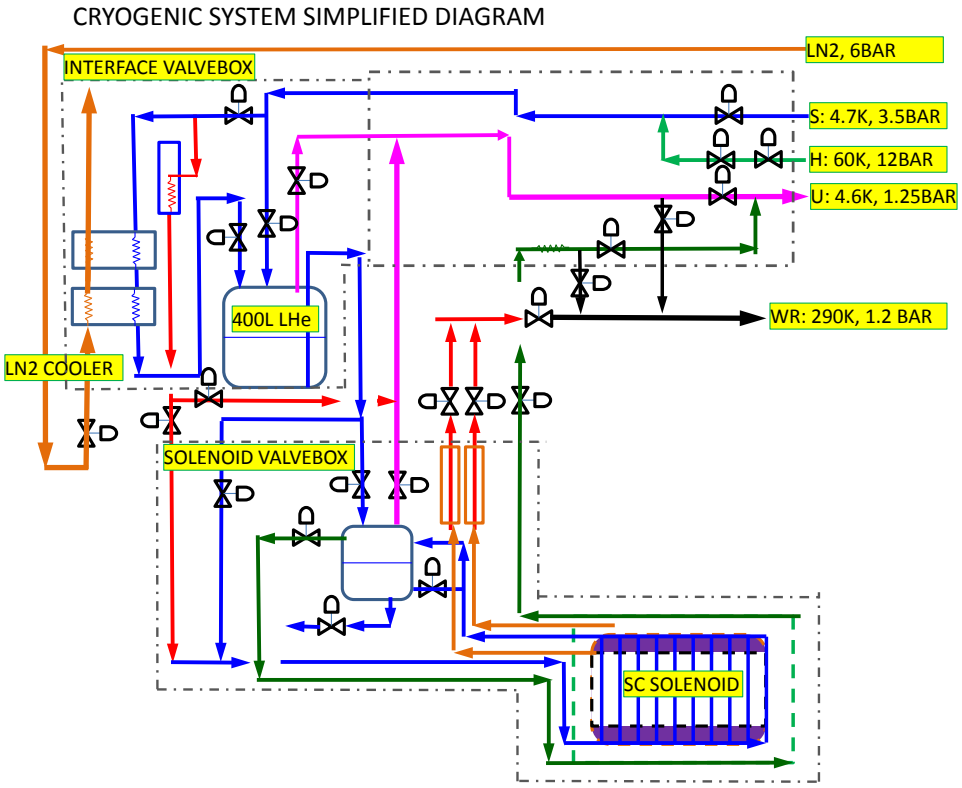



**Figure A.9:** sPHENIX Magnet Cryogenic Control System

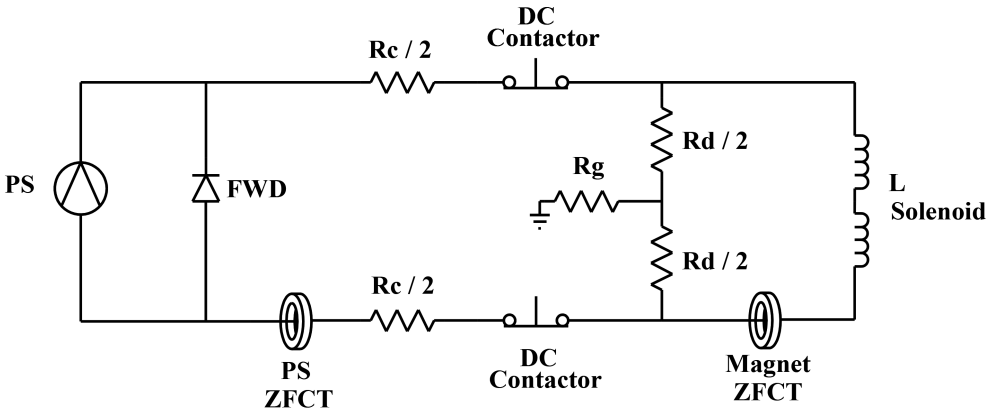



**Figure A.10:** sPHENIX Magnet powering system

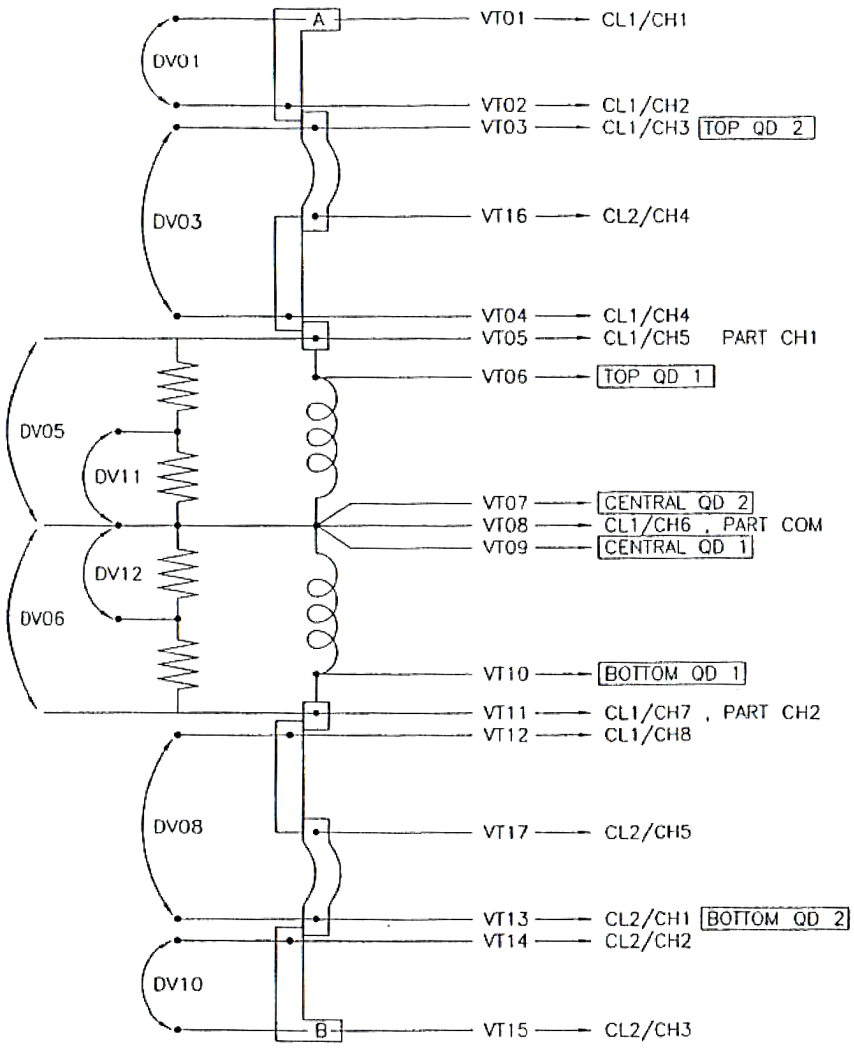



**Figure A.11:** sPHENIX Magnet voltage taps

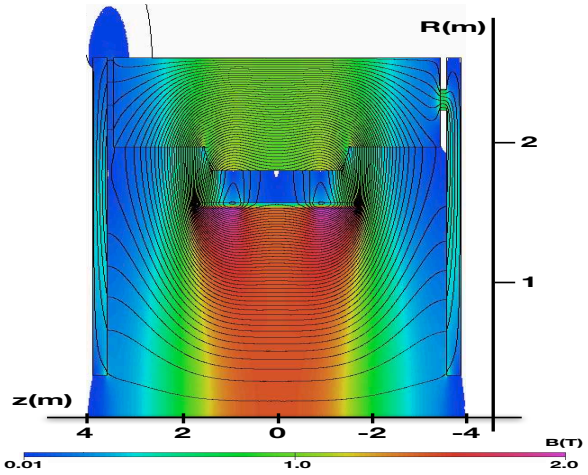



**Figure A.12:** 2D opera simulations of the sPHENIX setup

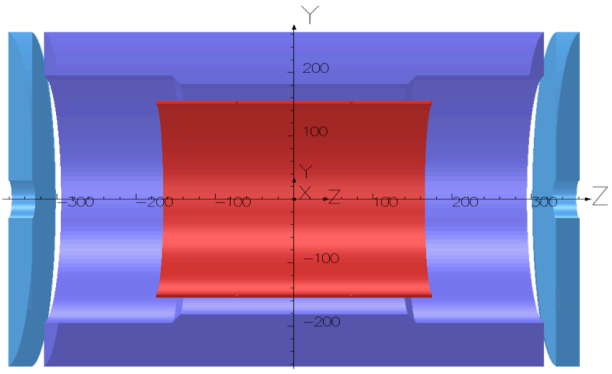



**Figure A.13:** 3D opera Model

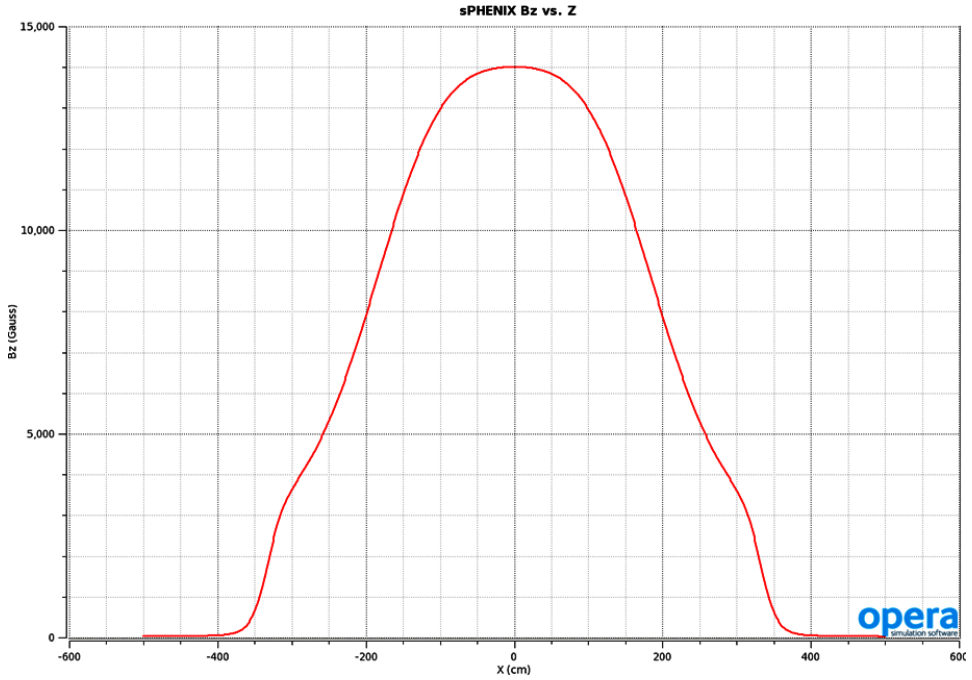



**Figure A.14:** Calculated magnetic field along the longitudinal axis (beam direction) for the symmetric return yoke model

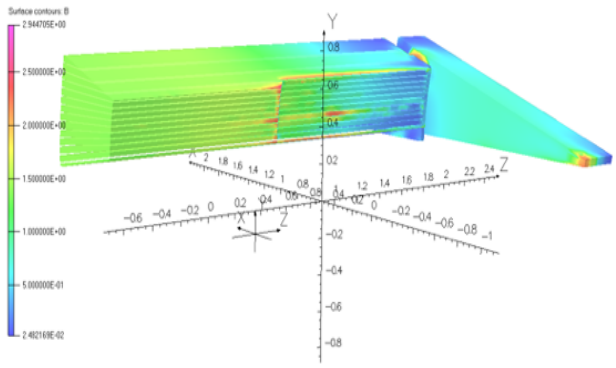



**Figure A.15:** 3D OPERA model detail of the field in the HCal plates

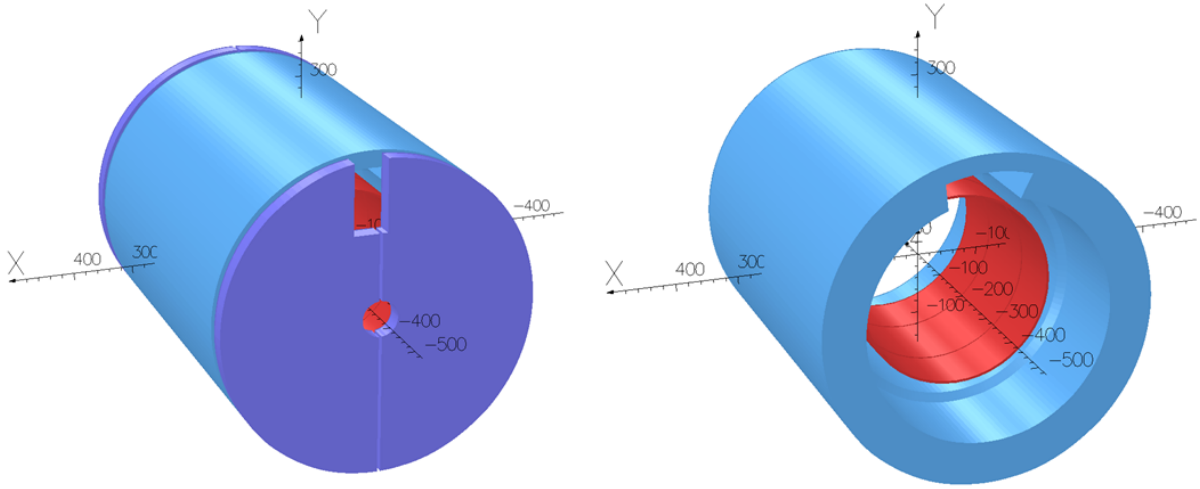



**Figure A.16:** Yoke and end-cap cuts from the OPERA Model, as viewed from the ”south” or the ”lead” end.

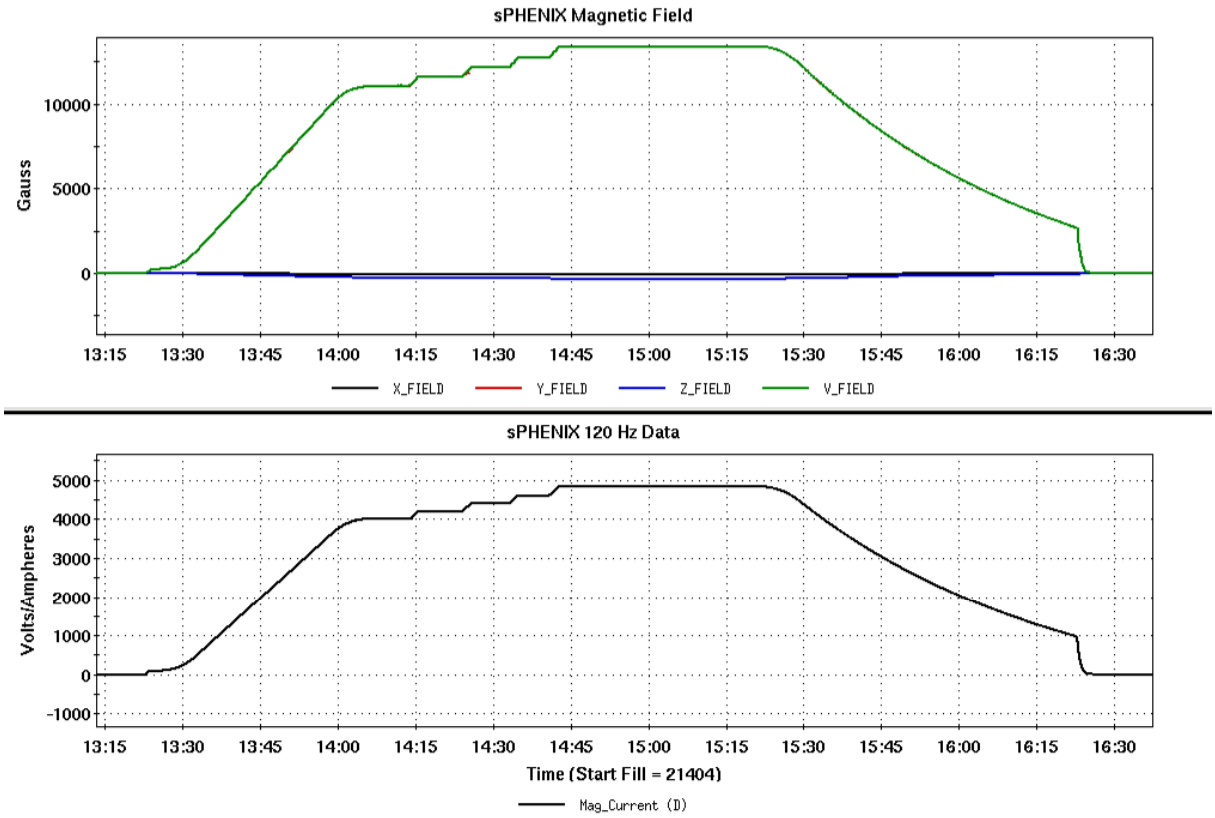



**Figure A.17:** The Magnetic Field and the ramping Magnet Current during the successful ramp to the peak current of 4830 A on Feb. 13, 2018. After staying at the peak current for about 40 minutes, we executed a slow discharge until the current dropped below 1000 A and then we did a fast discharge.

# Appendix B

# Infrastructure

The sPHENIX detector will be located in the RHIC building 1008 complex Major Facility Hall (MFH). It consists of a central hall and two expanded tunnel areas. Adjacent to the MFH is a 3700 square ft. Assembly Building, a Counting House, and Rack Room. Concrete block shielding is provided between the MFH and the assembly building. The central hall is 57 ft. long by 61 ft. wide and 47 ft. high with a 12 ton overhead crane and (2) 1-ton auxiliary cranes. A 40 ton crane is installed is installed over the assembly area. The expanded concrete tunnel areas on either side of the Central Hall are 53 ft. long by 30 ft. wide and 21.5 ft. high with a 9′ 6″ concrete platform to raise the floor level. The Assembly Hall is steel frame with metal siding. See Figure B.1 for a plan view of the structures.

All buildings are connected to the BNL 13.8 KV AC distribution system. The electrical substations at buildings' 1008A and 1008B convert 13.8 KV to 480 volts AC for distribution into the downstream distribution network of 480 V to 208/120 volt transformers and panels.

## B.1 Auxiliary Buildings at the Experimental Site

Auxiliary Buildings 1008B and 1008 C contain cooling water pumping stations and HVAC equipment to service the MFH, Assembly building, and Counting House. Building 1008F is the PHENIX Gas Mixing House and contains racks and delivery systems for mixed gas, dry nitrogen and compressed air.

## B.2 Cradle Carriage

The Cradle Carriage will support the sPHENIX Main Magnet. Four detector systems will be constructed in the inner and outer radius of the magnet. The Beam Pipe passes axially through the magnet/detector center.

## B.3 Electronics Racks

Electronics racks for the detectors will be mounted on the Cradle Carriage and in the PHENIX Rack Room. They will be fully enclosed and contain water cooled heat exchangers to remove heat. They will each contain a safety interlock system to shut their electric power & cooling water flow off during conditions such as over-temperature, smoke or water leak detected. Permanent walkways, platforms and ladders, mounted on the Central Pedestal allow for access to the racks. All will be equipped with appropriate safety railings and kick plates.

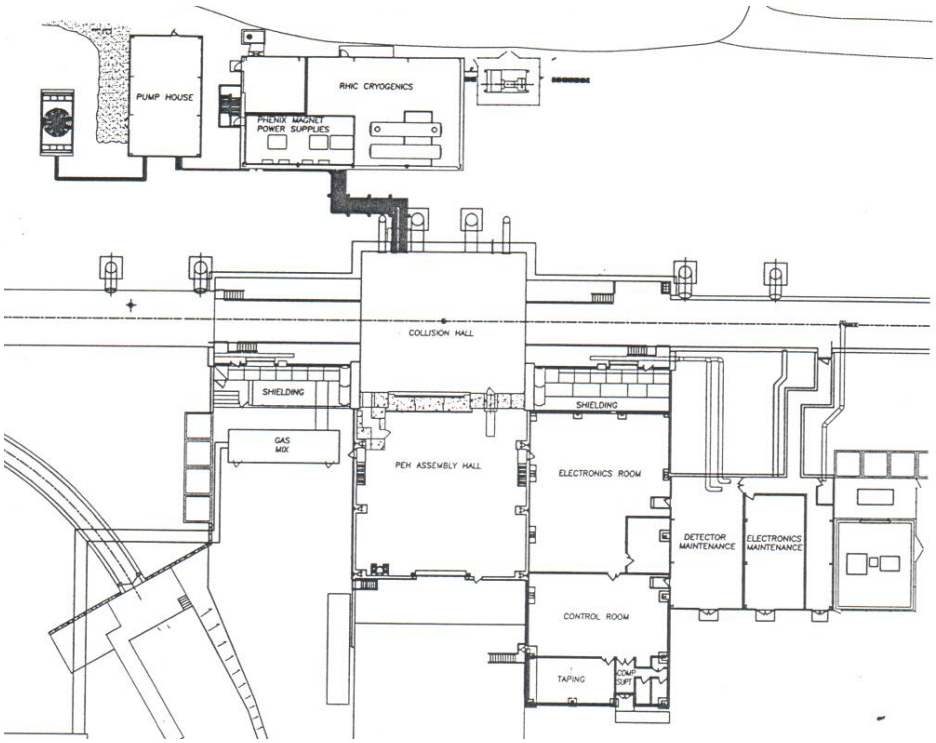



**Figure B.1:** sPHENIX Major Facility Hall and Auxilliary Buildings

## B.4 Beam Pipe

The sPHENIX Beam Pipe is a cylindrical tube with overall length of 101.2 inches. It is made up from a central 31.5 inch long beryllium section 0.030 inch thick which was gun-drilled from beryllium rod then e-beam welded to the aluminum extension pipes which were TIG welded to 2.75 inch conflat explosion bonded aluminum/stainless flanges. The flanges are bolted to the corresponding flanges on the upstream and downstream beam tube transition sections which increase the beam pipe diameter to 5 inch outside diameter in 2 steps. The sPHENIX beam pipe will be supported from the flanges and also within the central pedestal by low mass supports. sPHENIX will reuse the existing central Be section and modify the transition sections as necessary to accommodate the sPHENIX detectors. In addition, gate valves and pumping ports will be added to allow removal of the central beam pipe sections.

## B.5 Shield Walls and Openings

The sPHENIX shield wall is approximately 61′ wide by 48′ high by 5′ 6″ deep, made from light concrete blocks. A large rolling shied block door measures 30′ wide by 36″ high. The shield blocks are 20 tons each. The wall is built on a rolling platform that rides on a number of 200 ton each rated Hillman rollers. This wall can be moved away from its opening to allow large detector pieces or other equipment into and out of the MFH. There is a rolling, motor driven personnel door and emergency egress labyrinth separate from the main rolling shield door. There are PVC pipe penetrations for utilities from the assembly hall into the MFH embedded into a concrete sill . Two 3″ tubes for cooling water services, twelve 4″ tubes for electrical power cables, and eighteen tubes for signal cables are provided. No major modification to the PHENIX shielding configuration is anticipated for sPHENIX.

## B.6 Electrical Power

Numerous distribution transformers are supplied by a 480 volt 1200 amp bus that contains eight molded case circuit breakers. This is the primary “Normal Power” distribution supply that powers all experimental and non-experimental loads. An emergency backup diesel generator provides 150 KW of power to critical loads in the event of on or off site power interruption. A 30 KVA Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) supplies battery backed-up 208/120 VAC power primarily to critical computer loads. A 3 KVA UPS supplies backup power to critical safety instruments protecting the experiment. sPHENIX will utilize the existing PHENIX power infrastructure, however, some modifications to the distribution system will be required at the 480/220 volt level.

## B.7 Safety System and Control Room Monitoring & Alarm System

SPHENIX will have a real time, monitoring and control system that will take inputs from smoke and fire detection systems as well as "crash buttons." Upon detection of an off normal situation from any input, safe shutdown of the experiment will be initiated.

Existing PHENIX systems will be utilized to the maximum extent possible. New components will be necessary to integrate new safety systems features for potential new hazards, like oxygen deficiency.

## B.8 Cooling Water

Chilled water is required at 18 degrees C for cooling the detector electronics. Pumping capacity of the existing system is 400 gallons per minute (GPM) with a capacity of removing 211kWatts of heat (60tons) . The system has 2 chillers installed. Only a single chiller operates at a time while the other serves as a backup. The existing cooling towers and chilled water system at the 1008 complex has the capability to meet SPhenix specifications.

sPHENIX will utilize the existing PHENIX chilled water infrastructure, however, some modifications to the distribution system will be required at the rack level and to satisfy any other new water cooling needs.

## B.9 Climate Control

Conventional heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC) is required. Approximately 100 tons capacity currently is in use, 40 tons in the IR, 50 tons in the rack room and the remainder serving the rest of the complex.

The sPHENIX Rack Room (PRR) has two Trane units each provide 10 tons (120k BTU/hour or about 35 kW) of cooling capacity. These units were installed in the building about 2005. There is also a legacy HVAC system, dating back to about 1980, which provides 30 tons (105kW) of cooling capacity. The air handler and condenser of this unit is on the mezzanine of the service building adjacent to the PRR. The existing systems will maintained for use during sPhenix.

The sPhenix Interaction Area (IR) has 4 Trane units each provide 10 tons (120k BTU/hour or about 35 kW) of cooling capacity. These units are mounted on the MUID steel in each corner of the IR (SW,SE, NE, NW). The air handlers for these units are located "on the hill" outside of 1008B. The existing units will be adequate to provide environmental control for sPhenix.

sPHENIX will utilize the existing HVAC system, with minor additions and upgrades as necessary.

## B.10 Cryogenics

A cryogenics supply system is required for the sPHENIX superconducting solenoid magnet. This system is described in the Magnet section of this report. Liquid nitrogen for the magnet will be supplied by a 5200 gallon horizontal cryogenic tank installed on the 1008F gas pad.

# Appendix C

# Installation and Integration

sPHENIX has been conceived to be straightforward to manufacture and assemble, but it still requires significant and well thought out integration and assembly schemes to achieve the specified alignment and positioning requirements of the component detectors. In addition, the design must allow for appropriate access for maintenance and servicing of the functional components of these detectors and to optimize the integration and installation concept. The goal is to balance design tradeoffs while considering the effects on performance, cost, schedule, and reliability. Figure C.1 illustrates the overall design concept for the installed sPHENIX experiment. The following sub sections of this topic indicate how these factors will be addressed in the sPHENIX project.

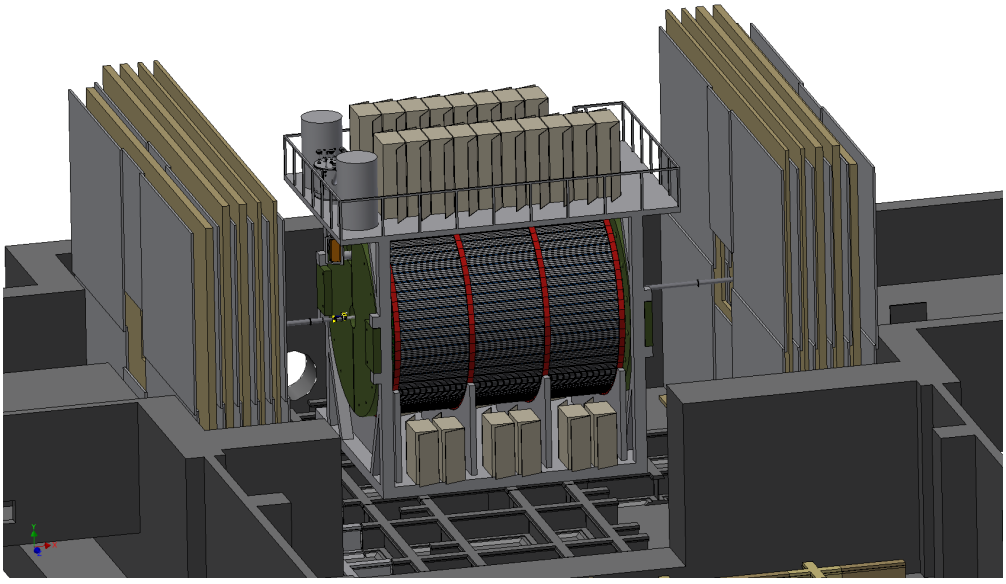


**Figure C.1:** sPHENIX in IR

## C.1 Specifications and Requirements

### C.1.1 General Limits and Requirements

The following are the key general requirements that guide the integration, inter detector assembly and installation of the sPHENIX components comprising the overall sPHENIX experimental apparatus. Requirements may be superseded by individual detector subsystem requirements (see subsystem sections).

**Table C.1:** sPHENIX General Limits and Requirements

| Item | General Requirements |
|---|---|
| Location for final assembly/ Installation | PHENIX Assembly Hall |
| Assembly Hall (”AH”) Crane | rated at 40 tons |
| Interaction region (”IR”) Crane limit | 12 tons plus 2 auxiliary, 1 ton cranes |
| Floor Loading Limit | 4000 psi max |
| Assembly support surface | existing PHENIX rail system |
| Clearance requirements | 2 inches (50 mm), between subsystems |
| Positional precision | 0.1 mm |
| Angular precision | 10 milliradian (roll, pitch and yaw) |
| Positional stability | 0.5 mm |
| Angular stability | 10 milliradian (roll, pitch and yaw) |
| Positional repeatability | 1.0 mm |
| Angular repeatability | 10 milliradian (roll, pitch and yaw) |
| Positional tolerance | (see individual detector specifications) |
| Angular tolerance | (see individual detector specifications) |
| Temperature and humidity | -10 to 50 deg C and 0-100 percent R.H. |
| Magnetic field | 0–2T inside magnet, 0–100 Gauss field outside |
| Radiation environment | to be specified |
| Detector cooling requirements | (see individual detector subsystems) |
| Rack cooling requirements | 2.0 gpm @ 50 deg F, for 2 kW per rack |
| Cryo requirements | (see Magnet Section) |
| Monitoring and safety system requirements | (see Infrastructure Section) |
| Overall size requirements | fit through the sPHENIX sill on existing rail system (see Figure C |

### C.1.2 Configuration Management and Control

In order to assure that the various subsystems of the sPHENIX experiment honor the space requirements for all other components, not interfere with other subsystem and/or infrastructure features of the sPHENIX experimental location, and assure that the integration and installation concepts are achievable, outline/interface drawings will be prepared for each detector subsystem and an overall envelope control drawing will be prepared for the integrated sPHENIX experiment.

Subsystem outline/interface drawings will provide the defining exterior envelope in to which the subsystem components fit, key dimensions for subsystem components which interface with other subsystems and/or infrastructure, and any other information pertinent to the space to be occupied by the subsystem and its relationship to adjacent subsystems and infrastructure. Figure C.3 is the subsystem outline/interface drawing for the EMCal detector subsystem.

Subsystem outline/interface drawings will provide the defining exterior envelope in to which the subsystem components fit, key dimensions for subsystem components which interface with other subsystems and/or infrastructure, and any other information pertinent

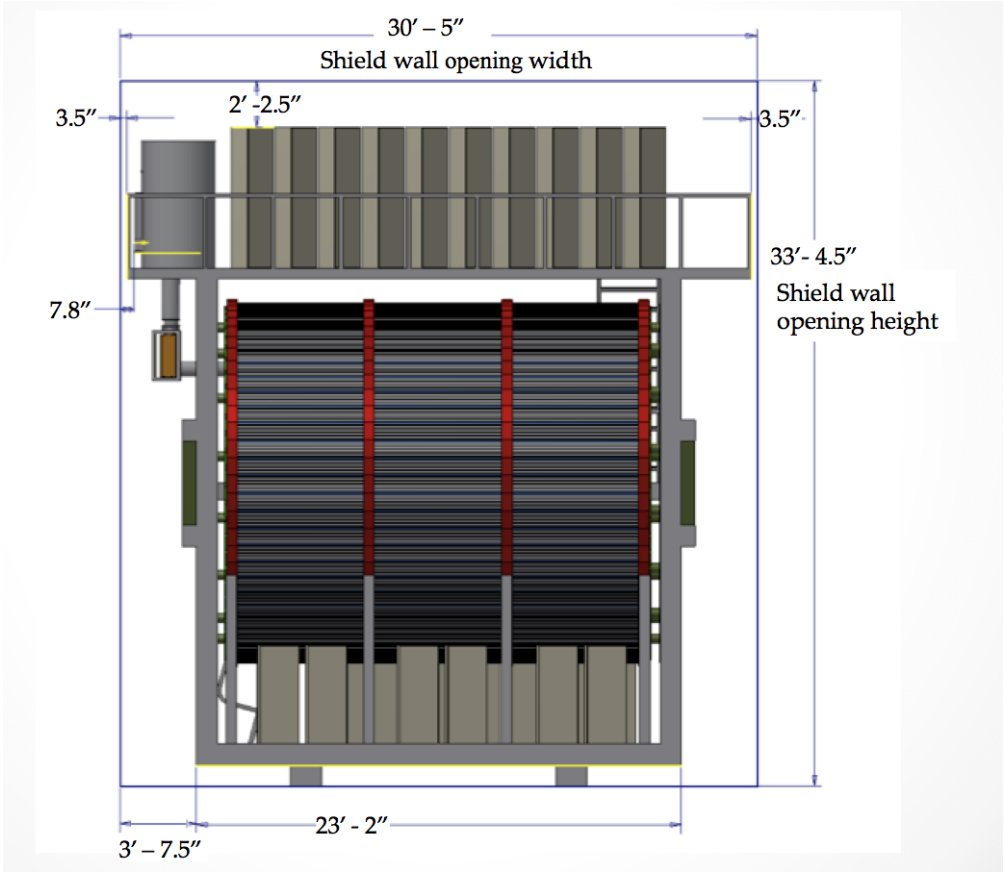



**Figure C.2:** sPHENIX Overall size

to the space to be occupied by the subsystem and its relationship to adjacent subsystems and infrastructure. Figure C.3 is the subsystem outline/interface drawing for the EMCal detector subsystem.

The overall envelope control drawing will provide the limiting space allocations for each of the detector subsystems, as well as space allocations for structural support, integrating interfaces and all services.

Figure C.4 is the overall envelope control drawing for the sPHENIX experiment.

All subsystem design drawings, fabrication and assembly procedures and all other documentation which define the sPHENIX assembly, installation and component subsystems will comply with BNL and DOE requirements that will be governed by sPHENIX controlled documents for Configuration Management and Documentation Control Systems.

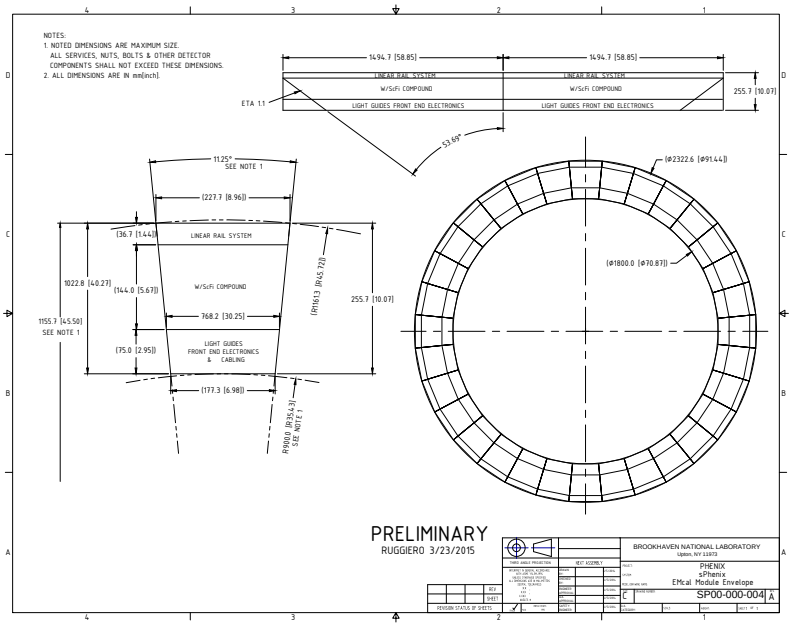



**Figure C.3:** EMCal Envelope Control Drawing

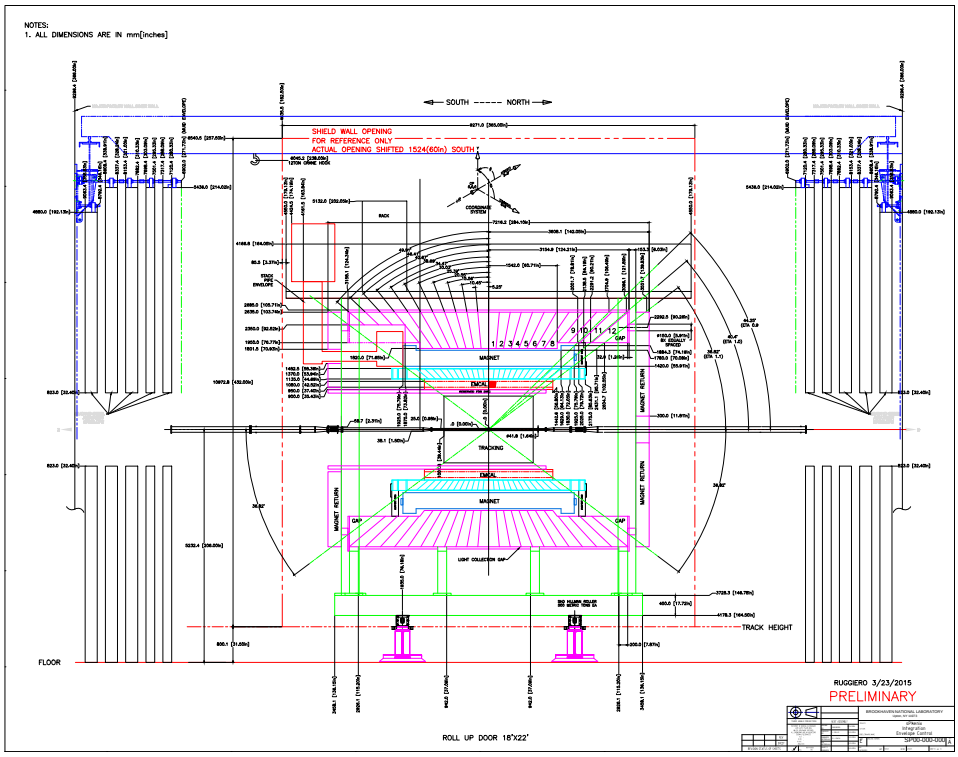



**Figure C.4:** sPHENIX Envelope Control Drawing

### C.1.3 Weight Estimates

In order to properly evaluate the design and adequacy of the integration and installation conceptual design which will proceed parallel to the detailed design of the component detector subsystems and infrastructure, it is necessary to have reasonable estimates of weights for the major components. The following table provides the estimated weights for the major subsystem components for sPHENIX.

**Table C.2:** sPHENIX Estimated Weights of Major Components

| Subsystem | Weight | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| Inner HCal | 64,000 lb, 32 ton | 2000 lb/sector |
| Outer HCal | 854,000 lb, 427 ton | 27,000 lb/sector |
| EMCal (with mounting) | 61,000 lb, 31 ton | 900 lb/sector |
| Inner HCal Assy Rings | 1650 lb, 1 ton | total, 2 rings |
| Inner to Outer load transfer rings | 6400 lb, 3.5 ton | total, 2 rings |
| Flux return end caps | 226,000 lb, 113 ton | |
| Magnet + stack wt | 42,000 lb, 21 ton | |
| TPC | 1000 lb, 1/2 ton | |
| Min Bias | 68 lb, 1/30 ton | 17 lb/quadrant |
| INTT | 500 lb, 1/4 ton | |
| MVTX | 200 lb, 1/10 ton | |
| Detector services and support equipment | 5000 lb, 2.5 tons | |
| Total Detector load on Cradle Carriage (CC) | 1,261,000 lb, 631 tons | |
| CC weight without magnet and detectors | 250,000 lb, 125 tons | |
| Total Detector load on Cradle Carriage (CC) | 1,261,000 lb, 631 tons | |
| CC weight without magnet and detectors | 250,000 lb, 125 tons | |

### C.1.4 Alignment Requirements

Alignment of the detector subsystems to each other and to the RHIC nominal beam path, as reflected by the positional and angular orientations relationship of the detector subsystem components to each other and to the sPHENIX global coordinate is essential to the proposed performance of the sPHENIX experiment. Internally, each detector subsystem component is aligned to the subsystem's own coordinate system as defined by each subsystem. This alignment is then reflected to the global system by means of inspection of dimensional data with respect to reference points (”fiducials”) to be established on the exterior of each component. These reference points are used in the assembly and installation process to establish position and orientation of these components and by extension the internal features of each component to the sPHENIX global coordinate system.

Each component, as it is assembled and installed into the sPHENIX support structure, is to be aligned by means of built-in adjustment to achieve specified precision with respect to the experiment support structure (i.e. the Cradle Carriage) which shall have fiducial references related by survey. After the Cradle Carriage is assembled with all subsystems except the Min Bias, INTT and MVTX detectors and is moved to the Interaction Region (”IR”), THE CC is to be positioned and aligned to the sPHENIX global coordinate system at the nominal Interaction Point (”IP”).

The sPHENIX global coordinate system is related to the RHIC coordinate system from the Interaction Point the center of the RHIC ring and the straight line of the RHIC ring orbit through the sPHENIX IP.

Positional precision and alignment tolerances for the individual detector subsystem component internal features are established for each individual detector subsystem independently (see the appropriate subsystem for details). The subsystem components and/or the support structure will be designed with appropriate adjustment capability to achieve the specifications indicated in the previous section.

Precision is determined by combining the accuracy of the measurement method (survey) for locating the individual fiducial points for subsystem components directly with the fineness of adjustment provided in the subsystem mounting system.

Stability is the tendency for the assembly and its components to remain in the same location over a period of time, under normally varying environmental conditions for both operational and non-operational conditions.

Repeatability is the tendency of the assembly and its components to return to the same location after maintenance operations requiring disassembly and reassembly and/or temporary displacement and return of the entire assembly or any of the components (usually for maintenance purposes).

Tolerance is the amount by which a measured position or angle can vary from its nominal ”exact” position or angle. This is the sum of measured variance plus the measurement precision, repeatability and stability. For internal components of subsystems, the tolerance with respect to global coordinates is calculated from a combination of the tolerance of the external fiducial points and the tolerance of the relative dimensional feature of internal features to the external fiducials. In some cases the tolerance calculations might require combining multiple relative tolerances.

### C.1.5 Service Requirements

Adequate space is to be provided to route appropriate services to all of the detectors including power, signal and monitoring cables, cooling channels (air cooling) and piping (liquid cooling) for removal of heat generated by detector electronics and distribution equipment for branching and integrating electronics signals, electric power and cooling

from detector service racks to module/sector front end electronic distribution panels and flow distribution manifolds to the installed detector components. Within the components these services are to be distributed to individual active components as described in the subsections describing the individual detector subsystems.

In addition, space is to be provided for cooling services and power to the subsystem racks from the cooling source(s) and line power breaker boxes, respectively. Space is to be provided as well to route signals to the rack room. Refer to the infrastructure for more detailed information on service requirements.

During the research and development process for each of the detector subsystems, prototype mockups (dimensionally accurate, non-functional) are to be developed to assist in planning the design of adequate space for services. A mockup of an Inner HCal half-sector is shown in Figure C.5.

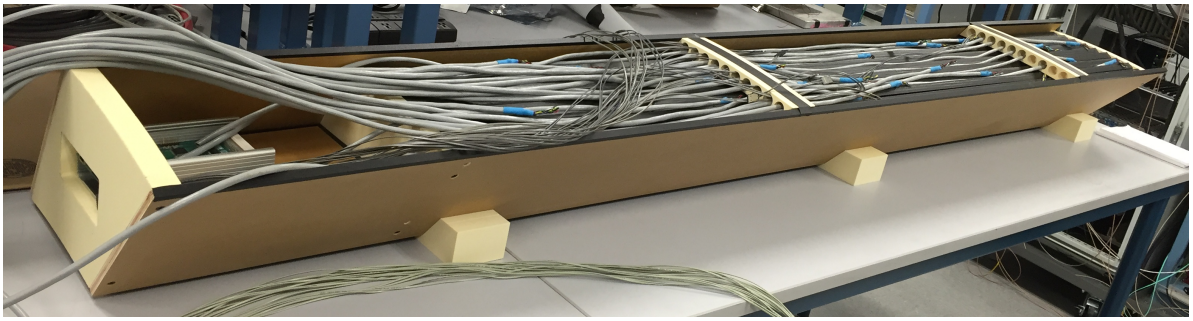


**Figure C.5:** Inner HCal Half-sector mockup

### C.1.6 Accessibility

The sPHENIX detector subsystems will be designed to operate without maintenance for extended periods. Maintenance of the active detector components and the magnet is not possible during a run, except that access is provided to the subsystem rack electronics on all levels, to the magnet valve box and to power and cooling sources and primary distribution equipment. Limited access to the outer HCal detector electronics is possible, but it is not a requirement. Limited access to external interface electronics on all of the detectors is possible during an extended access period during a run (on the order of one or more weeks in duration), but any individual internal component of any detector subsystem is only accessible during a major shutdown of three or more months by reversing the assembly process described later in this report.

### C.1.7 Quality Control

sPHENIX engineering will implement the full quality assurance program described elsewhere in this document by establishing procedures to assure that the design of sPHENIX meets the requirements of BNL, DOE and industry best practices, including implementing the appropriate configuration management, documentation control, work planning, quality control testing and inspection and performance verification.

## C.2 Component Integration

### C.2.1 General Integration Concepts

sPHENIX is designed to be integrated into a single structural assembly wherein a central support structure, the cradle carriage (”CC”), provides a base on a set of roller bearings, which in turn supports a set of four structural arcs (”cradles”) to support the Outer HCal detector subsystem and pillars to support an intermediate level platform, an upper platform and the north and south flux return end caps/pole tips.

The superconducting solenoid magnet is support by 12 mounting feet, six each equally distributed at the north and south ends of the magnet in the annular space between the magnet outer diameter and the Outer HCal inner diameter. These mounting feet also provide alignment adjustment for the magnet in all directions.The Outer HCal provides two additional support rings on its interior diameter onto which the interior Inner HCal and Tracking detector subsystems (TC, INTT and MVTX) are mounted. The EMCal detector subsystem is divided into 64 (32 north and 32 south) sectors which are individually mounted to adjacent Inner HCal sectors by bearing rails.

There will be two sets of four roller bearings under the base platform. They will be rotatable to allow the entire experiment assembly to move east or west and, when rotated 90 degrees, north or south. Relocation of the assembly in these directions is accomplished on the existing PHENIX rail system and allows for repositioning of the assembly in the IR and moving from the AH to the IR for installation, maintenance and upgrade operations. The 2 sets of rollers are positioned with a hydraulic lifting piston on each of the 4 points corresponding to intersection crosses of the sPHENIX rail system. This allows the entire CC to be lifted at 4 points to change the orientation of the roller bearing sets from north/south to east/west and back. Figure C.6 shows an exploded view of the detectors which comprise sPHENIX.

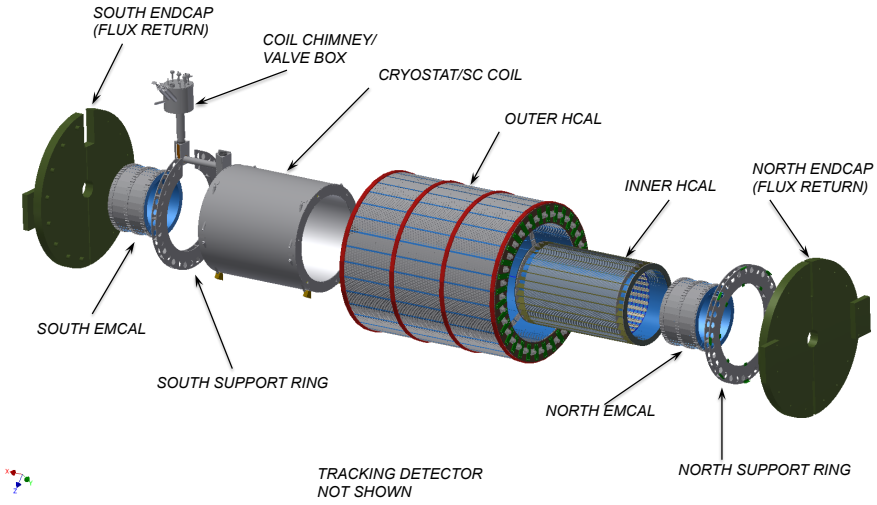



**Figure C.6:** sPHENIX exploded view

### C.2.2 Structural Load Support

Roller bearings for the CC are to be sized for approximately twice the estimated load of the fully assembled sPHENIX experiment. The CC base will be built of structural steel and support the four cradles and four pillars which will be welded to the base as well as provide the lower level platform for detector electronics racks. The Outer HCal will be fully supported by the cradles while the mid and upper platforms and magnet flux return end caps will be supported by the pillars.

The outer HCal is comprised of 32 sectors which are tied together at their north and south ends by splice plates. The loads of each of these sectors is transferred through the splice plates to the cradles. Interior to the Outer HCal will be the magnet mounting feet and Inner HCal support rings which will transfer the magnet and inner detector structural loads separately to the base through the Outer HCal.

The Inner HCal is comprised of 32 sectors each of which has mounting provisions on its inner diameter for two EMCal sectors. Each of the 32 Inner HCal sectors is mounted on its north and south end plate to end rings. The north and south end rings that tie the 32 sectors together are then mounted to the north and south structural rings which transfer the load of the Inner HCal sectors plus the EMCal sectors to the Outer HCal and through the Outer HCal to the cradles to the base to the roller bearings to the rails and finally to the floor.

The TPC subsystem will also have a support structure which attaches to the north and south structural rings that will transfer its load in a similar manner.

The MVTX and INTT will be integrated into a dual hemisphere support frame (upper and lower). Each frame hemisphere will have a 3 point support onto a dual rail and bearing

system in which the bearings will slide along pathways on the rail which allows the upper and lower frames to ride in separately and moved away from the beampipe until the frames have cleared the beampipe flanges. The lower frame is positioned first then the rail is adjusted in 3 dimensions to achieve the alignment precision required. Then the upper frame is brought into position and is mated to the lower frame by kinematic mounts. Figure C.7 shows the load path through the support structures.

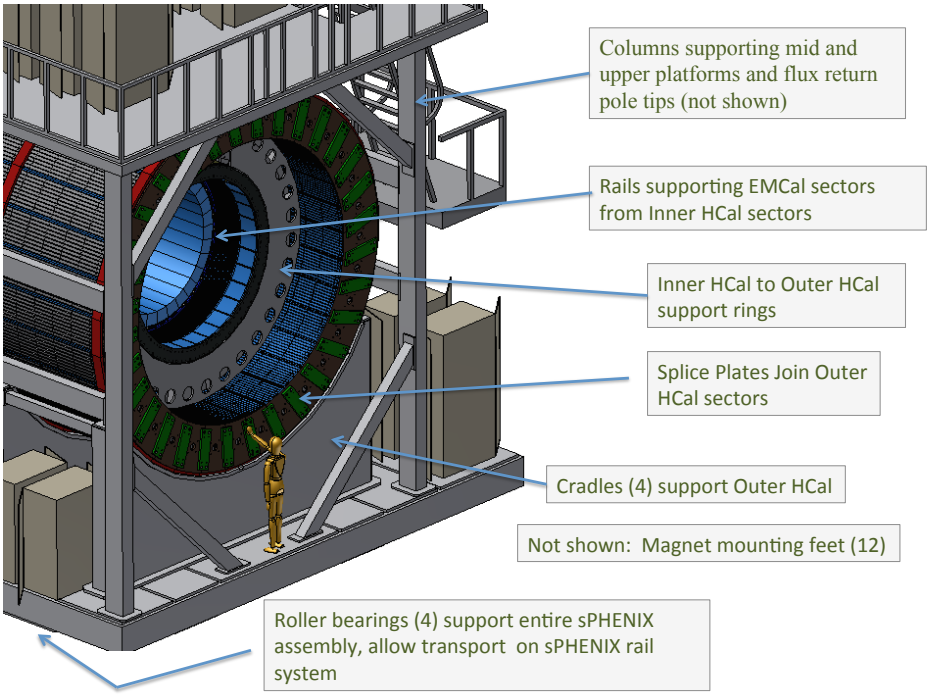



**Figure C.7:** sPHENIX Structural Support

## C.2.3 Alignment

The sPHENIX overall alignment concept will be as follows:

- Internal alignment of detector subsystem components in the interior of the detector subsystem will be aligned as required by the subsystem at the subsystem subassembly level in accordance with the subsystem requirements, related to a set of external fiducials on the subassembly sectors/modules which are deliverables from the subsystem to the sPHENIX AH where final installation will take place. These fiducials will be documented to enable analytical reconstruction of the internal relevant features and to define a nominal axis and centerpoint relationship to the fiducials for each of the subassembly modules.

- The CC base and cradle assembly will be provided with adequate precision alignment features (reference fiducials and adjustment features) to define the nominal experiment axis and center point and the position of the initial Outer HCal sector to align its reference axis and center point to that of the CC Base and cradle assembly. Survey and shimming will be employed to fix the position of the initial Outer HCal sector within the tolerance specifications indicated in the general requirements section, above.

- As each additional Outer HCal Sector is installed it will be surveyed, adjusted and shimmed into place with respect to the required tolerances, until the lower half of the Outer HCal is completed. Figure C.8 shows the initial Outer Hcal sector installed and aligned.

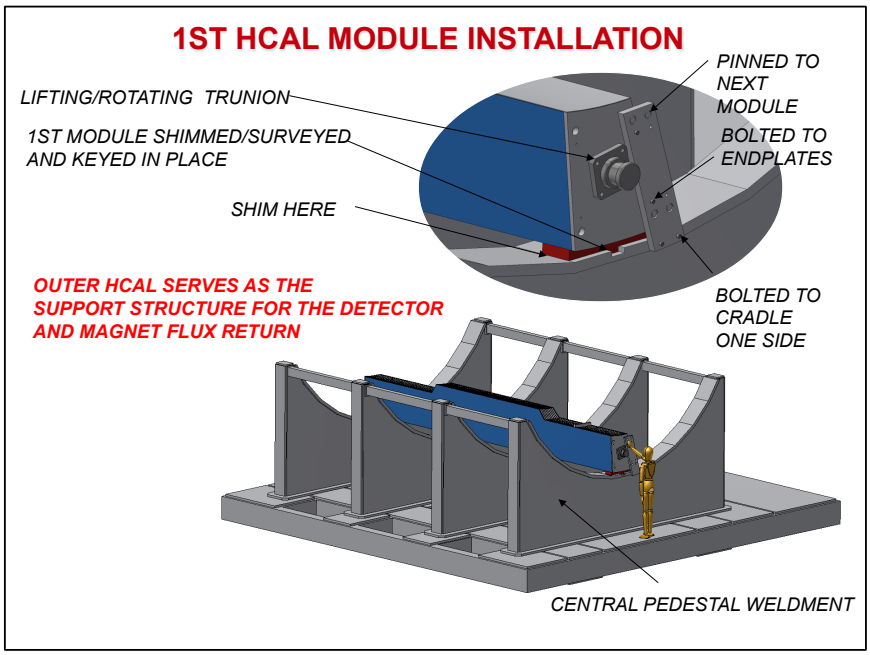



**Figure C.8:** sPHENIX Initial Alignment

- The Superconducting solenoid magnet will have been surveyed and been sufficiently tested to establish a nominal magnetic axis and centerpoint which will have been related to external fiducial points on the magnet and those relationships recorded. The magnet will have 12 adjustable mounting supports attached to position and secure the magnet onto the inner surface of the Outer HCal.

- After the lower half of the Outer HCal installation is completed, the magnet shall

be mounted, surveyed, aligned and secured to the Outer HCal in accordance with requirements.

- The remaining Outer HCal Sectors are installed, surveyed, adjusted and shimmed into place with respect to the required tolerances, until the upper half of the Outer HCal is completed.
- The Inner HCal sectors are installed into a complete detector aligned using mechanical precision features, survey and shimming to achieve the desired alignment of each of the sectors to each other and external fiducial points. The entire assembly is then surveyed, aligned and secured onto the Inner HCal to Outer Hcal support rings.
- Each of the 64 EMCal sectors is then installed onto the rail systems on each of their respective Inner HCal sectors, surveyed, positioned, adjusted and secured into place in accordance with required tolerances. Figure C.9 shows the installation of an EMCal sector.

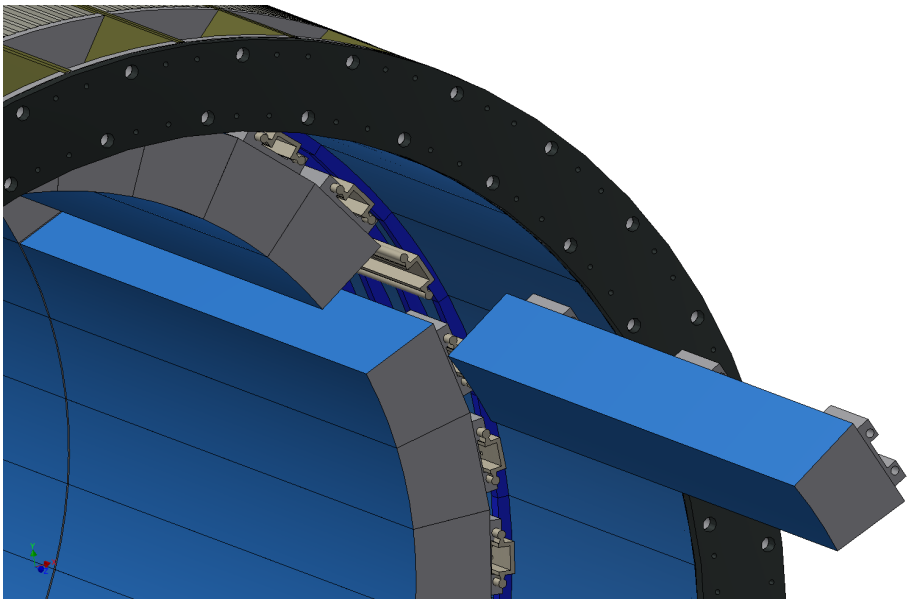


**Figure C.9:** EMCal Sector Installation

- The detector assembly on the CC support structure in the AH is completed by installing and aligning the TPC subsystem with the nominal axis and centerpoint using the alignment adjustments designed into the support brackets.
- Next, the entire CC is moved west on the sPHENIX rail system to the IR until its nominal axis is coaxial with the nominal RHIC beam axis then north until the CC assembly's nominal center point coincides with the sPHENIX nominal interaction point ("IP"). Survey and built in adjustments to the CC assembly are used to bring the entire assembly into tolerance as required.

The following alignments take place after the cradle carriage is moved into the Interaction Region (IR).

The beampipe is installed and surveyed into place by using the beampipe survey fixture and making adjustments on the beampipe stands. The MVTX and INTT will be integrated into a dual hemisphere support frame (upper and lower) with the upper and lower halves relatively aligned on the bench prior to installation such that mating kinematic mounting features are fully adjusted in a simulated installation. Each frame hemisphere will have a 3 point support onto a dual rail and bearing system in which the bearings will slide along pathways on the rail which allows the upper and lower frames to ride in separately and moved away from the beampipe until the frames have cleared the beampipe flanges. The lower frame is positioned first then the rail is adjusted in 3 dimensions to achieve the alignment precision required. Then the upper frame is brought into position and is mated to the lower frame by kinematic mounts.

The final detector to be installed and aligned is the Min Bias detector. It will be mounted on alignment rails which in turn mounted to horizontal and vertical brackets anchored to the Outer HCal inboard of the end caps/pole tips. These will allow X-Y-Z and angular adjustments as required.

### C.2.4 Routing of Services

All services to the detectors are routed from the north or south of the overall experimental assembly to service distribution points at the north and south end of each subassembly sector/module. From that point services are routed to source points (e.g. electronics racks, cooling manifolds, etc.) which will be generally segmented into quadrants at each end for the MVTX all services are routed to the south end.

All manifolds and patch panels will be rack mounted on the Cradle Carriage platforms outside of the detector areas. In general, the services will be layered such that the outermost detector (Outer HCal) has the inner most services routes, with the Inner HCal on top of those, then the EMCal services and finally the Tracking services.

## C.3 Installation

Installation is defined as the final assembly of detector support structure and detector components that will take place at the sPHENIX Assembly Hall and/or in the Interaction Region, QA testing of components at predetermined points during assembly, the relocation of the final assembly to the sPHENIX IR to its Operational location at the sPHENIX IP, installing and integrating infrastructure services, ready for final commissioning and operation.

### C.3.1 Installation Concept

The Installation Concept for sPHENIX is as follows:

- Internal alignment of detector subsystem components in the interior will be completed as described in the previous section and the individual sectors or modules of the detector subsystems will be operationally tested and ready for installation when shipped to the sPHENIX AH for installation, as described in the relevant subsystem section of this report.

- The subsystem sectors/modules will be provided with handling fixtures as indicated in the tooling and support equipment section below.

- As each additional Outer HCal Sector is installed it will be surveyed, adjusted and shimmed into place with respect to the required tolerances, until the lower half of the Outer HCal is completed.

- The Superconducting solenoid magnet will have been surveyed and been sufficiently tested to establish a nominal magnetic axis and centerpoint which will have been related to external fiducial points on the magnet and those relationships recorded. The magnet will have 12 adjustable mounting supports attached to position and secure the magnet onto the inner surface of the Outer HCal. Figure C.10 shows the Outer HCal with 32 sectors installed ready for the superconducting magnet to be mounted.

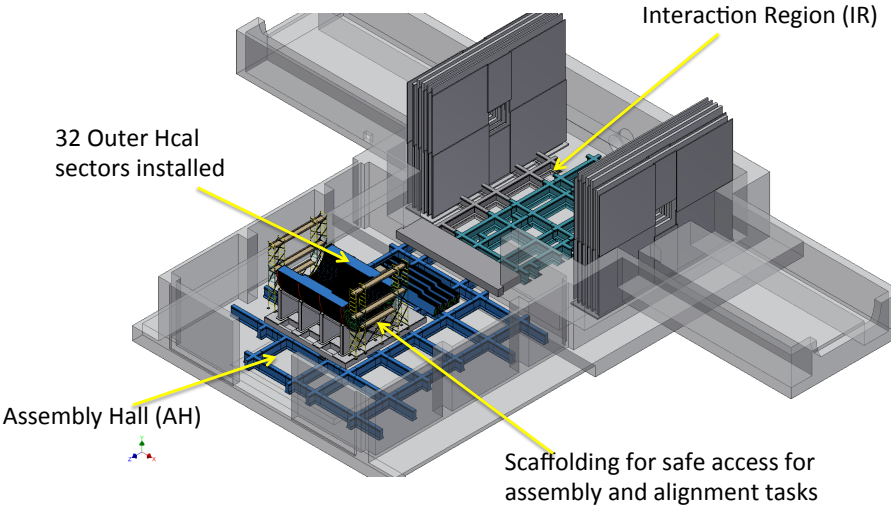



**Figure C.10:** Outer HCal Installation, lower half

- After the lower half of the Outer HCal is completed, the magnet shall be mounted surveyed, aligned and secured to the OuterHCal in accordance with requirements.

- The remaining Outer HCal Sectors are installed, surveyed, adjusted and shimmed into place with respect to the required tolerances, until the upper half of the Outer HCal is completed.

- The pillars for supporting the upper platform and flux return end caps and are then installed followed by the installation of the upper platform and end caps themselves.

- The Magnet valve box with extension is installed. Outer HCal services are then installed.

The Inner HCal sectors are to be assembled into a complete detector on its dedicated assembly fixture, aligned using mechanical precision features, survey and shimming to achieve the desired alignment of each of the sectors to each other and to external fiducial points. The entire assembly is then surveyed, aligned and secured to the Inner HCal-to-Outer Hcal support rings and services are installed.Figure C.11 shows the Inner HCal nearing assembly completion and mounted on the installation fixture

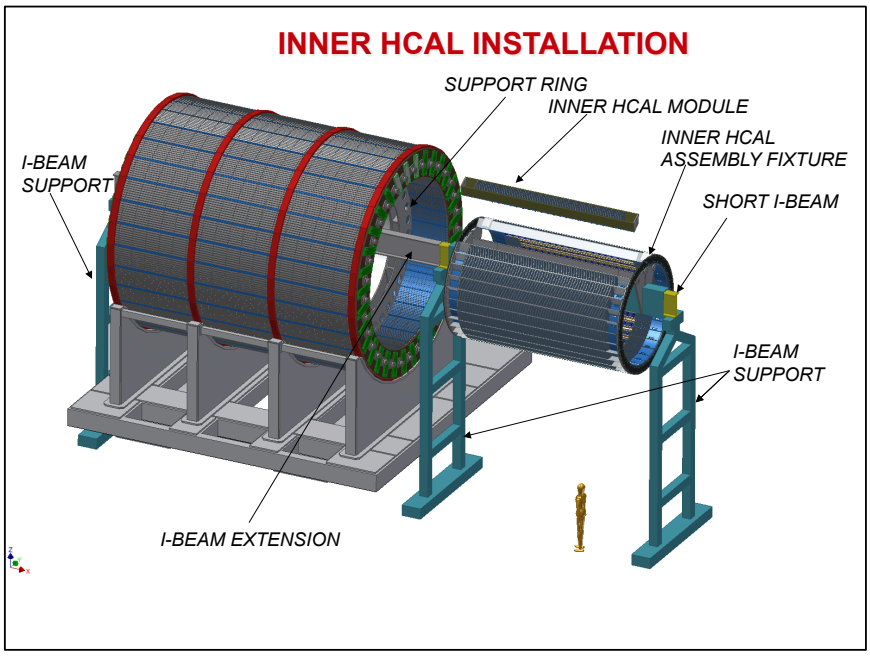



**Figure C.11:** Inner HCal Installation

- Each of the 64 EMCal sectors is then installed onto the rail systems on each of their respective Inner HCal sectors, surveyed positioned, adjusted and secured into place in accordance with required tolerances. EMCal services are then installed.
- The detector assembly on the CC support structure is made ready for movement by installing and aligning the Tracking subsystem with the nominal axis and centerpoint. The pillars for supporting the upper platform and flux return end caps/pole tips are then installed followed by the installation of the upper platform and end caps/pole tips themselves.
- Next, the entire CC is moved west on the sPHENIX rail system to the IR until its nominal axis is coaxial with the nominal RHIC beam axis then north until the CC assembly's nominal center point coincides with the sPHENIX nominal interaction point ("IP"). Survey and built in adjustments to the CC assembly are used to bring the entire assembly into tolerance as required. Once the CC is positioned and aligned in its run position, the MVTX and INTT are installed as separate detectors on a common support structure. (Note, if necessary either of these 2 detectors could be installed without the other.) Services for the MVTX and INTT are then installed.
- Finally, the min Bias detector and its services are installed.

### C.3.2 Tooling and Support Equipment Requirements

The following are the most significant tooling and support equipment needs for integration and installation:

- Central Pedestal (CC): standard lifting tools for CC base and rollers, cradle, support posts, bridge platform, access stairs), alignment tools for rollers and cradle.
- Outer HCal: module holding fixtures (4), indexed lifting/installation fixture, alignment tools, temporary inner and outer assembly support fixtures
- Inner HCal: module holding fixtures (4), module lifting fixture, assembly indexed/rotating fixture and insertion beam and insertion beam lifting fixture, alignment tools
- EMCal: module handling fixtures (8), rail alignment tool, indexed lifting/installation fixture
- TPC: Handling fixtures (2), alignment tool, installation tool
- INTT: Handling fixture, alignment tool, installation tool (common with MVTX)
- MVTX: Handling fixture, alignment tool, installation tool (common with INTT)
- Min Bias: Handling fixture, alignment tool, installation tool (common with MVTX)

- SC Magnet: Lifting fixture (spreader bar), alignment tool, stack handling/lifting tool
- Infrastructure: beampipe alignment tools/fixtures, bakeout tools/fixtures

Note: some of the tools/fixtures described above will be used in subsystem sector/module assembly operations as described in their respective sections of this report prior to being used for final installation.

## C.4 Testing and Commissioning

### C.4.1 Magnet

The superconducting solenoid magnet will be QA tested for integrity and function as described in the Magnet section of this report. After transport to the AH for assembly and again after installation into the CP, the magnet will be QA tested to assure that no damage has been done in transportation and installation. See the magnet section of this report for more details on magnet testing.

### C.4.2 Detector Subsystem Commissioning

All detector subsystem sectors/modules are QA tested at their point of assembly, as described in the relevant subsystem sections of this report, prior to transporting the sectors/modules to the AH for installation. After transport to the AH for assembly and again after installation into the CC, the sectors/modules will be QA tested to assure that no damage has been done in transportation and installation.

The complete detector subsystems will be tested to demonstrate their operational readiness, to calibrate the detector components as necessary and to verify the chains of signals from the detector elements through to the data acquisition system. In addition, all services will be tested to demonstrate performance in accordance with requirements.

## C.5 Alternative Integration/Installation Concepts Considered

The evolution of the integration and installation concept is largely driven by the design evolution of the component detector subsystems. Several alternative integration and Installation concepts have been considered during this process independent of the detector subsystems. Some of the more interesting considerations are described below, with explanation of why they have been rejected.

Multiple carriages instead of one unified Cradle Carriage. This option was considered early on, but it was rejected as unnecessarily expensive and it increases alignment difficulty.

Separate carriages for the flux return end caps. The current concept has hinged flux return caps to minimize cost, and simplify assembly.

Sliding door flux return end caps (both vertical and horizontal sliding), instead of hinged end caps. This concept was rejected because it increases space requirements for maintenance, increases cost and (in the case of the vertical sliding end caps) handling safety considerations.

Installing the EMCal as a complete detector instead of 64 separately supported sectors. This would require an assembly structure and complicated installation tooling fixtures, adding to cost. It also decreases the accessibility for maintenance.

Completing the assembly of the Inner HCal remotely and transporting the completed assembly to the AH for installation. This would require a complicated transport fixture added risk for damage during transportation and additional logistical considerations (additional assembly space). There are some merits to this alternative procedure and it may be revisited, if appropriate, after subsystem designs are finalized.

Using rail mounted gantry cranes to install the Inner HCal instead of a monorail system. Increased complexity and cost. There are some merits to this alternative procedure and it may be revisited, if appropriate, after subsystem designs are finalized.

Using separate pillars and rails to support the Inner HCal, instead of the load transfer rings. This is a more complicated design, which would increase cost and complexity of installation.

Having separate supports for the magnet instead of supporting the magnet with the Outer HCal. This was rejected due to increased complexity and cost.

# Appendix D

# Monolithic Active Pixel Detector

The innermost layers of the tracking system is a separate but coordinated proposal from the sPHENIX MIE called the MVTX. The detector is based on Monolithic Active Pixel Sensors developed for the ALICE experiment and is comprised of three layers of staves developed for the ALICE Inner Tracker System (ITS) approximately 2 mm outside the berryllium section of the beam pipe.

For more details, the MVTX proposal should be consulted.

# Appendix E

# Intermediate Silicon Strip Tracker

## E.1 Detector Description

The INTermediate Tracker (INTT) is part of the charged particle tracking systems of sPHENIX. The INTT consists of two layers, four sub-layers, of barrel silicon semiconductor strip detectors. The layers are noted by Layer-1a, 1b, 2a and 2b from the most inner to outer and the distance in radii of each layer from the interaction point is 7.2, 7.7, 9.7, and 10.3 cm, respectively. Both layers are composed of several ladders cylindrically covering rapidity range of approximately $-1.1 < \eta < 1.1$. To achieve hermeticity, sub-layers are staggered in radius so that the alternating sensor modules overlap in azimuth as shown in Figure. E.1. Number of ladders in each layer is presented on Table E.1.

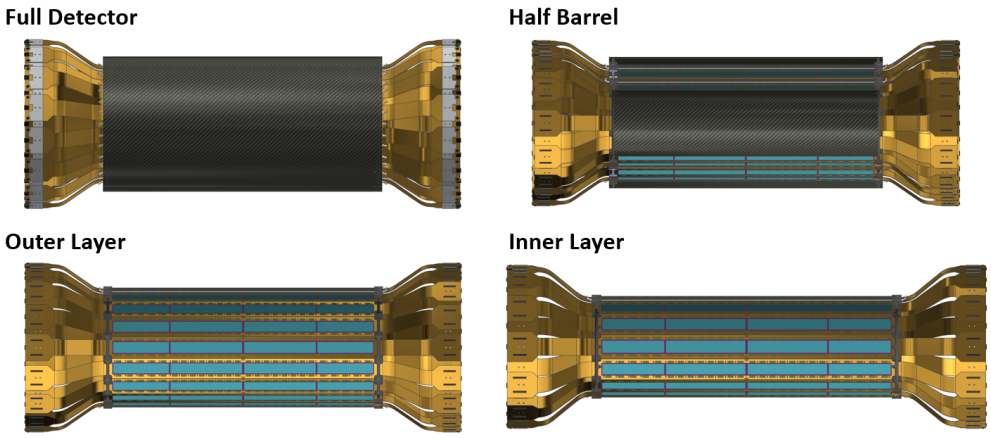



**Figure E.1:** The INTT tracker drawing concept.

**Table E.1:** Radius and number of ladders of each layers of barrel silicon strip detectors.

| sub-layer | radius [cm] | number of ladders |
|---|---|---|
| 1a | 7.2 | 12 |
| 1b | 7.7 | 12 |
| 2a | 9.7 | 16 |
| 2b | 10.3 | 16 |
| Total | - | 56 |

Each ladder is made of two silicon modules mounted on the same Carbon-Fiber-Composite stave. Each silicon module is read out from one side and is composed of: (1) Two AC coupled, single-sided silicon strip sensors produced by Hamamatsu Photonics Co. (HPK) and (2) One flexible circuit board, called the High Density Interconnect (HDI); each HDI provides power, and bias input lines as well as slow control and data output lines. The HDI was designed, manufactured and tested by Yamashita Materials Co. (3) On top of each HDI, twenty six FPHX chips[39] are mounted to layers 1 and 2. The FPHX chip

**Table E.2:** Dimensions of silicon sensors (not active region) to parallel to the beam (z-) direction. The last line of the table is the $|z|$ position of $\eta = 1.1$ at the distance of each layers (7.2, 7.7, 9.7, and 10.3 cm).

| | | Layer-1 | Layer-2 |
|---|---|---|---|
| type-A | z-length/block[mm] | 16 | |
| | # of blocks | 8 | |
| | z-length [mm] | 128 | |
| type-B | z-length/block[mm] | 20 | |
| | # of blocks | 5 | |
| | z-length [mm] | 100 | |
| type-(A+B) | z-length [mm] | 228 | |
| | $\|z\|$ @ $\eta = 1.1$ [mm] | 198 | 223 |

consists of a 128-channel front-end ASIC, and was designed by Fermilab for the FVTX detector[40]. The chip was optimized for fast trigger capability, a trigger-less data push architecture, and low power consumption (64 mW/chip). The HDI ends will be connected to an extender cable which is connected at the other end to a FVTX ROC used in PHENIX previously via an additional conversion cable. The extender is 1.2 m long (and possibly longer) to reach the ROCs, which are in a "big wheel" arrangement on the inner part of the TPC endcap.

The basic design of INTT is derived from the PHENIX Forward VTX (FVTX) detector[40]. In fact, the FPHX readout chip is employed for the INTT and thus the readout chain of FVTX can be re-used for INTT. In order to avoid production of extra readout electronics beyond FVTX resources, number of readout channels are designed to be less than these of FVTX. The INTT silicon strip sensor uses conservative technology design; it is a silicon strip single sided, AC coupled, double-metal layer to route the signal from the strip to the bonding area at the edge of the sensor. In summary, The INTT tracker is driven by several ideas which it is conservative design, low risks, low-cost and high optimization for physics.

The dimensions of silicon sensors (not active region) to parallel to the beam (z-) direction are tabulated in Table E.2. The total z-coverage of Layer-1 and 2 is 228 mm. As tabulated in the bottom of the table, the Layer-1 and 2 fully cover more than $\eta = 1.1$. The effect in the acceptance is discussed in subsection E.2.

## E.2 Acceptance and Efficiency

Geometrical acceptance and detection efficiency of each INTT layer are summarized in Table E.3. Geometrical acceptance is estimated for two types of z-vertex values ($vtxz$):

$vtxz < 0$ cm and $vtxz < 10$ cm. Detection efficiencies in the two rapidity regions, $|\eta| = 0$ and $|\eta| < 1$, are calculated using single electron simulation events fired from the vertex $(0, 0, 0)$ cm.

**Table E.3:** Summary of the geometrical acceptance and detection efficiency for each INTT layer.

| Sub-Layer | Acceptance | | Efficiency | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | $\|vtxz\| < 0$ cm | $\|vtxz\| < 10$ cm | $\|\eta\| = 0$ | $\|\eta\| < 1$ |
| L1a | $\eta < 1.89$ | $\eta < 1.37$ | 100 % | $> 99$ % |
| L1b | $\eta < 1.82$ | $\eta < 1.30$ | | |
| L2a | $\eta < 1.61$ | $\eta < 1.12$ | 100 % | $> 99$ % |
| L2b | $\eta < 1.56$ | $\eta < 1.07$ | | |

## E.3 Silicon Strip Sensors

The sensors are single sided, AC coupled sensors. For Layer-1 and 2, the active area of the type-A and type-B sensors are 128 mm $\times$ 19.96 mm and 100 mm $\times$ 19.96 mm, respectively. The active area of the type-A (type-B) sensor is divided into $8 \times 2$ ($5 \times 2$) blocks. Each block has 128 short strips that are 78 $\mu$m in pitch and 16.0 mm (type-A) or 20 mm (type-B) long, and run parallel to the $z$ (beam) direction (Table E.4). In Figure E.2, the strip runs horizontally. The read-out lines of the strips, run perpendicular to the strips and bring the signals to the read-out chips placed on the HDI at the upper and the lower edge of the sensor.

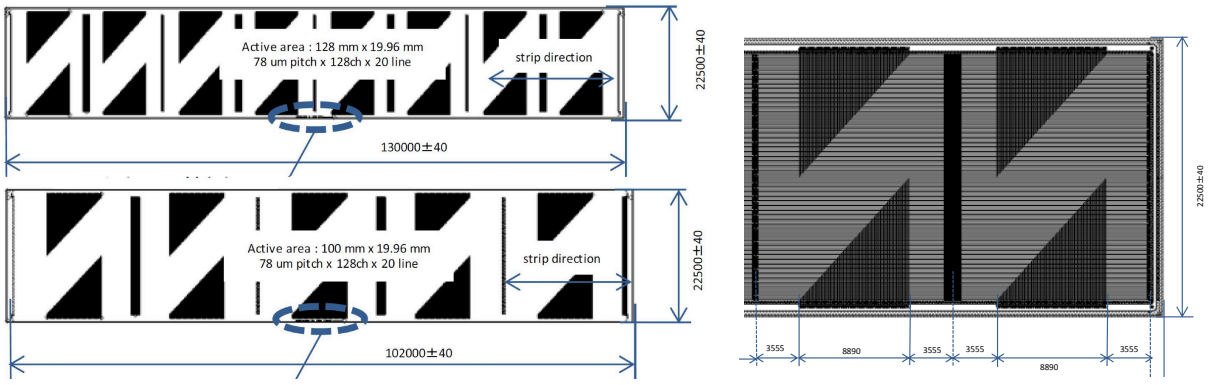



**Figure E.2:** The silicon strip sensor drawings of layer 1 and 2 made by HPK. (Top left) type-A, (bottom left) type-B, and (right) part of type-A sensor.

The thickness of silicon sensors are standard 320$mu$m manufactured by Hamamatsu Photonics Co (HPK).

**Table E.4:** Silicon sensor dimensions of Layer-1 and 2.

| Type | number of blocks | active area dimension | strip pitch |
|---|---|---|---|
| A | 8 | 128 mm $\times$ 19.96 mm | 78 $\mu$m |
| B | 5 | 100 mm $\times$ 19.96 mm | 78 $\mu$m |

Shown in Figure E.3 is the prototype silicon sensor B for Layer-1 and 2.

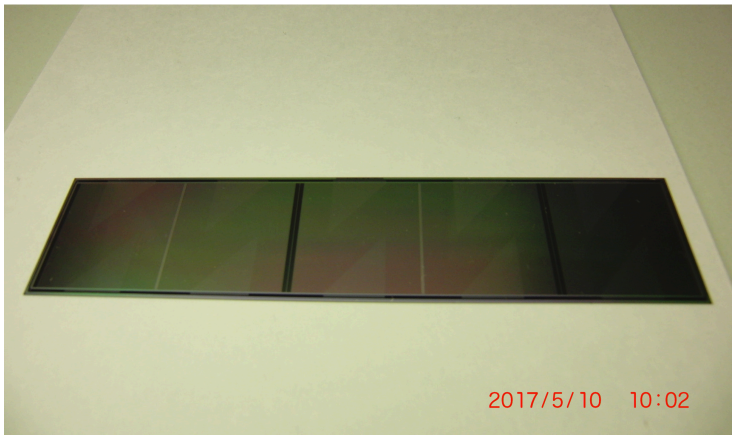



**Figure E.3:** The photograph of the type-B silicon sensor prototype for Layer-1 and 2.

## E.4 High Density Interconnect (HDI)

The HDI is a seven layer flexible circuit board to read-out two silicon sensors. The basic layer structure design of HDI is derived from the PHENIX FVTX. On the other hand, some of parameters are slightly different particularly for those close to technological limit in FVTX are somewhat relaxed in INTT. The copper line width and pitch between copper lines are 60$\pm$10 and 120 $\mu$m, respectively. Each copper line pairs are spaced greater than 180 $\mu$m at least. The impedance is well controled to be 50$\Omega$. The HDI will be manufactured by Yamashita Materials Co. Shown in Figure E.4 shows the photo and dimension of the pre-production version of HDI for layer-1 and 2 and layout of silicon sensors and FPHX chips. The width of HDI is 38mm in sensor part while 48mm in the connector end. The length is 400mm which is the longest limit of multilayer flexible cable technology.

Shown in Figure E.5 is the 7 layer structure of HDI. The total thickness is 493 $\mu$m. The total thickness governed by copper layers is 68 $\mu$m which is the major source of the material budget of INTT layers. As shown in Figure E.6 signal layers are sandwiched by ground/bias layers in order to shield incoming/outgoing noise to/from signal lines. Some signal lines running in sensor region in L7 is not succeeded design from FVTX. This signal

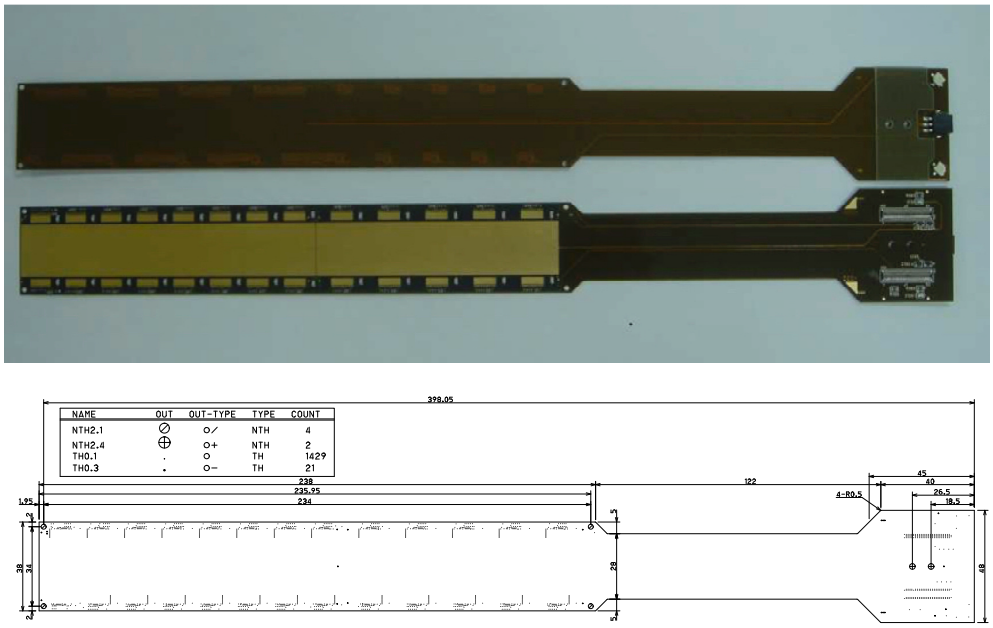



**Figure E.4:** Photograph of the pre-production of HDI (above) and its dimension for layer-1 and 2 and layout of pads for the silicon sensors, FPHX readout chips and other components.

lines were bi-product of saving HDI width as narrow as possible and thus couldn't fit within the signal layers. Since L7 is not shielded by the ground layers, the signal lines are exposed to the external environment, the length of the lines were kept as short as possible ($<$ a few cm).

FPHX chips[39], which was used for the FVTX silicon tracker of PHENIX[40], are mounted on HDI to read-out the sensor. A FPHX chip has 128 channels of 3 bit ADCs and it can read out 128 mini-strips in one block of the sensor. The read-out pad pitch of the sensor is thus matched to that of FPHX chip (78 $\mu$m). FPHX chip has low power consumption, about 64 mW per chip, which reduces the need for cooling for the sensor module. The analog signal of each strip is digitized in the FPHX chip, and the digitized data of 128 channels are sent out through the 200 MHz data-out port of the FPHX chip.

## E.5 Bus Extender

The bus extender is a cable to connect between the ROC board and the INTT ladder, and to bring all the signals from the ladder to the ROC board and power and the control commands from the ROC board to the ladders.

The requirements of the bus extender are following: (1) 1.2m long, (2) signal integrity of 200 MHz clock rate with LVDS lines, (3) small available space in the inner space of the

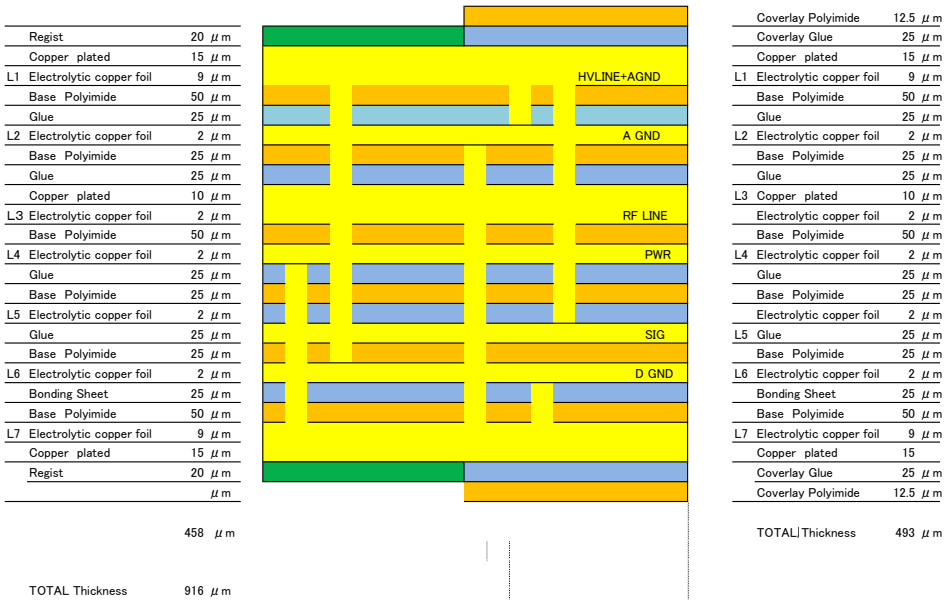



**Figure E.5:** 7 layer structure of HDI.

TPC. Figure E.7 shows the sPHENIX tracking system. INTT detector is placed at the center of the TPC barrel and the ROC boards are outside of the barrel. The distance between the INTT ladder and the ROC boards is 1.2 m. The available space near INTT region is small. The MAPS detector has a heavy cabling systems with the mechanical support.

To investigate the technical feasibility of the bus extender, we made a prototype of the long and hi-dense data bus using flexible printed circuit (FPC) which is a film based PC board. A liquid crystal polymer (LCP) is chosen as a film material to reduce signal loss because of small di-electric tangent. The prototype is a three layer structure where the middle signal layer is sandwiched by the top and bottom ground layers for 100 Ω of the differential impedance ($Z_{\mathrm{diff}}$). Figure E.8 shows a FPC sheet containing five set of the signal layer before laminating the top and bottom layers.

We evaluated the electrical and mechanical characteristics of the prototype. As a result, we found that the signal attenuation and reflection are about 70% and 10%, and $Z_{diff}$ is 90 Ω. The signal distortion was visually tested by eye diagram. The eye is clearly open. Some of the results are shown in Fig. E.9. In addition, we measured the accuracy of width of signal lines is $\pm 3 \mu m$. These results shows the prototype meets the requirements within the scope of specification.

However, there are two issues found in the prototype FPC. One is that the peel strength of the laminated layers is weak, other is that producing the through holes for long FPC is difficult. For the peel strength, we studied several ways to improve the strength.

The through hole is produced by drilling a hole on FPC and Cu-plating on surface of the

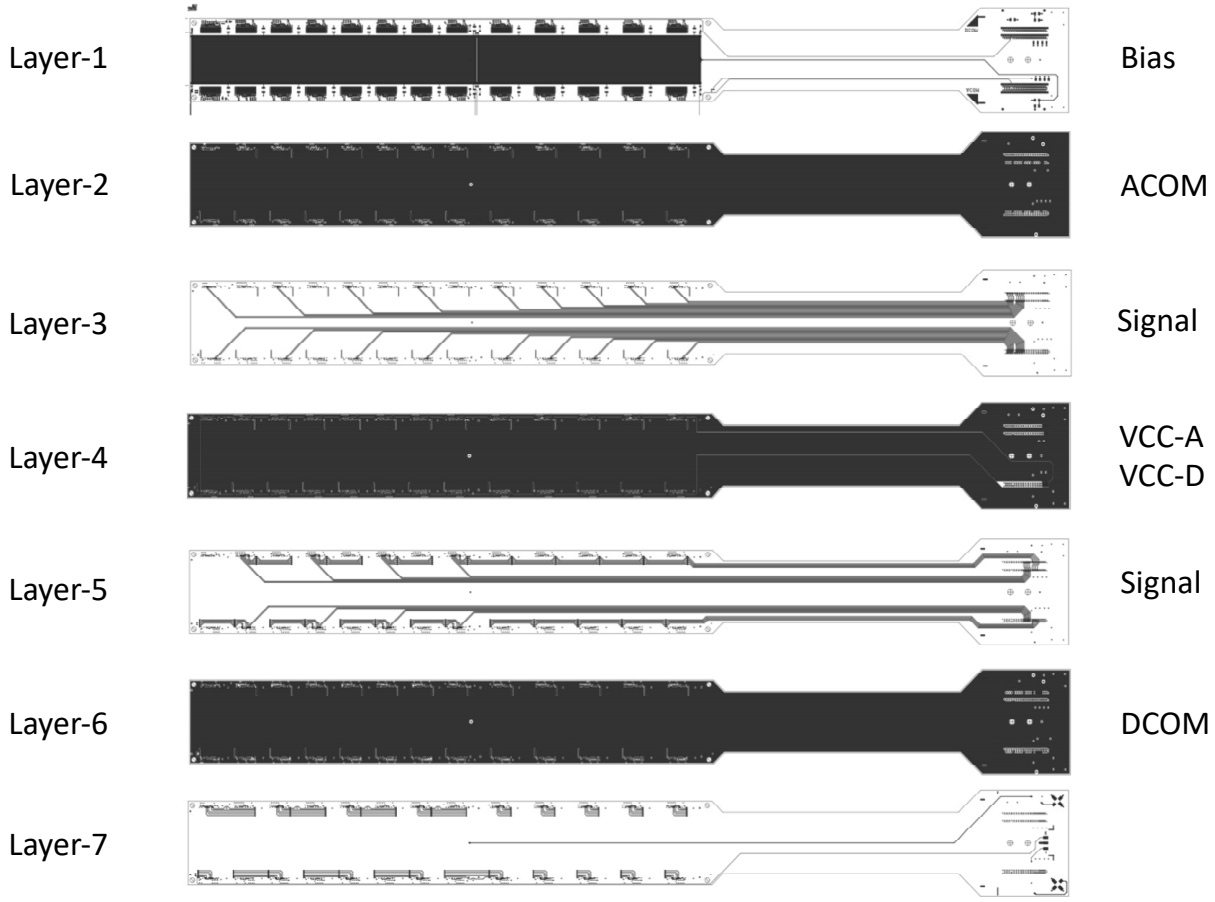



**Figure E.6:** 7 layer structure of HDI.

hole with a electro-chemical process. This requires a big chemical bath to soak the whole FPC. We looked for the company which has the big enough bath for INTT data bus. With the company, we tested the Cu-plating on the through hole for the 4 layer FPC. We will investigate the reliability of the through hole with thermal shock test as a next step.

We evaluated the feasibility of the long and hi-density data bus using FPC. Above technical issues are currently under investigation. After optimizing the design based on the series of prototyping, the new pre-production version of the bus extender for INTT has been made as shown in FigureE.10

The bus extender is designed to be composed from two pieces. One is the 1.2m long data bus and other is the conversion cable with 40cm. The connector orientation and line wiring of the 1.2m log data bus is not compatible with ROC. The conversion cable is used to connect the 1.2m long data bus and ROC.

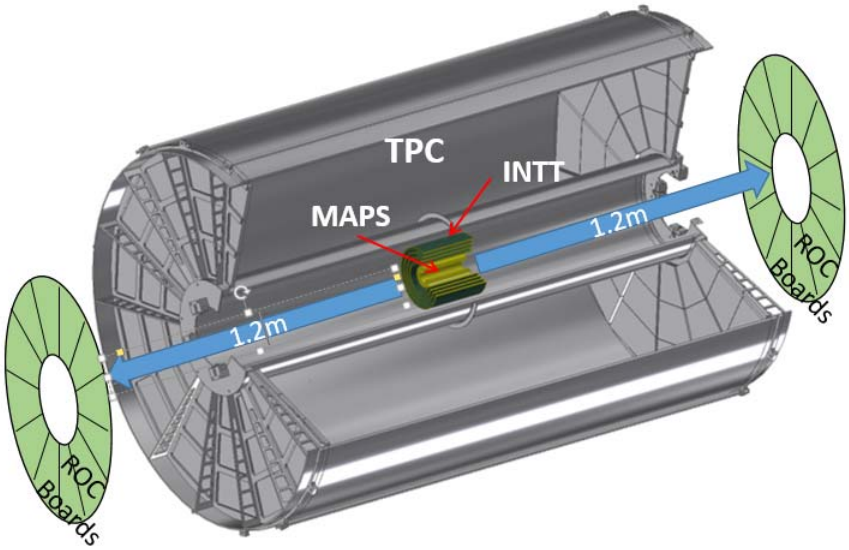



**Figure E.7:** sPHENIX tracking system. The bus extender should be at least 1.2m to connect between the INTT ladders and ROC boards.

**Table E.5:** The set of parameters of the FVTX bus extender.

| | |
|---|---|
| length | 27 cm |
| width | 2cm |
| Layer | 7 |
| LVDS lines | 62 |
| Powers | power, GND |

## E.6 Sensor Module

Figure E.13 illustrates the conceptual design of the sensor module of layer-1 and 2 of the INTT tracker. Each of the silicon strip module is made:

(1) Two pieces of silicon sensors type-A and type-B for barrel-1 and 2. For details about


**Figure E.8:** A LCP sheet of the signal layer for the prototype.

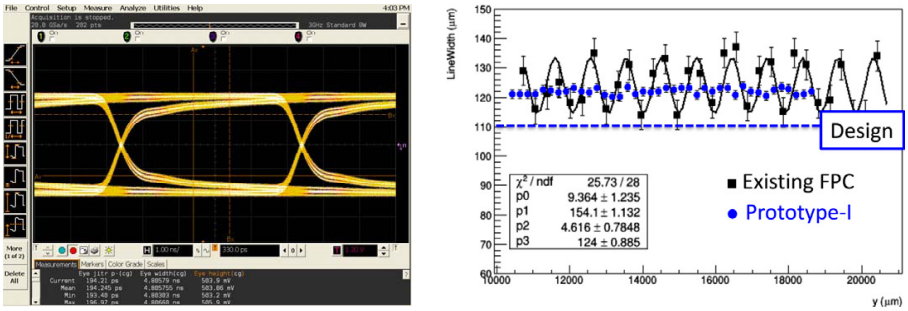



**Figure E.9:** Electrical and mechanical characteristics of the prototype. (Left) Eye diagram shows clear opening. (Right) variation of the line widths on FPC for the prototype (blue) and the existing FPC from the manufacturer (black).

silicon sensors type-A, -B, you can see section E.3.

(2) One flexible circuit board, called High Density Interconnect (HDI); each HDI provides power, and bias input lines as well as slow control and data output lines. The HDI is manufactured and tested by Yamashita Materials Co.

(3) Signals from strip sensors are digitized by 26 FPHX chips mounted on HDI for barrel-and 2. The FPHX chip consists of a 128-channel front-end ASIC, and was designed by Fermilab for the FVTX/PHENIX detector. The chip was optimized for fast trigger capability, a trigger-less data push architecture, and low power consumption (64 mW/chip). The from-end of each chip (128 channels) is a wire-bond to the silicon sensor, and the back-end of the chip (32 channels) is wire-bonded to the HDI. All wire-bonding are encapsulated for protection.

(4) It should be pointed out that each sensor module contains two temperature sensors. Each ladder contains two thermistors (NCP15XH103D03) allowing us to read the temperature of each sensor module. The thermistors are part of the HDI (built in) and they are read out from the edge of the HDI. From each HDI, we will have one cable going to a readout board. The thermistors and readout board have been determined by engineer using them currently and planned to be used in sPHENIX.

## E.7 Ladder

For Layer-1 and 2, each ladder is build as following:

(1) One mechanical support made of Carbon-Fiber-Composite skins called stave. The area of the stave for barrel-1 and 2 is 50 cm $\times$ 3.3 cm, as shown in figure E.15. The temperature of each ladder should be at 10 degrees Celsius during operation. The

heat load expected from each half ladder for barrel-1 and 2 is: 400 $\mu$W $\times$ 128ch $\times$ 26 chips = 1.3 W $\simeq$ 2 W (including power). The total heat load over the entire INTT is about 200 W.

(2) Each stave carried out on top two sensor modules. Each sensor module is read out in one edge of the ladder through the HDI bus extender as shown in figure E.14. The HDI ends will be connected to an extender cable which is connected at the other end to a FVTX ROC used in PHENIX. The extender has to be at least 1.2 m long (and possibly longer) to reach the ROCs, which are in a cone arrangement on the inner part of the TPC endcap.

(3) Number of ladders per layer of barrel is presented on Table E.6. We have two layers of barrels silicon strip detectors made of 56 ladders in total.

(4) The two layers (layer-1 and 2) of the silicon strip detectors will be integrated into a dual hemisphere support frame (left and right). Each frame hemisphere will have a 3 point support onto a dual rail and bearing system in which the bearings will slide along pathways on the rail which allows the side frames to ride in separately and move away from the beam pipe until the frames have cleared the beam pipe supports. The two side frames are mated to each other by kinematic mounts. Then the rail is adjusted in 3 dimensions to achieve the alignment precision required.

**Table E.6:** Number of ladders per layer of barrel silicon strip detectors.

| sub-layer | number of ladders |
|---|---|
| 1a | 12 |
| 1b | 12 |
| 2a | 16 |
| 2b | 16 |
| Total | 56 |

## E.8 Mechanical Design

### E.8.1 Stave

To achieve the stave requirements, 1) rigidity, 2) flatness (measured using optical machine laser at BNL: the stave should be flat within 40 um to 60 um deviation over 50 cm ladder length), 3) thermally conductivity, and 4) low radiation length, we have established two R&Ds programs. The Latter are progressing in parallel: 1) water cooled foam core sandwich stave, and 2) thermal conductive plate stave.

#### E.8.1.1 Water Cooled Foam Core Sandwich Stave

Each ladder consists of two silicon modules mounted on a mechanical support, called a stave. The silicon modules are oriented such that the they are immediately adjacent and symmetric on the mid-plane of the ladder. The water cooling inside the stave is used to carry out the heat from the ladder. The stave spans the entire silicon sensors plus an extension for mechanical attachment to the end supports for a total length of about 50 cm. The stave consists of two 3 mm thick ROHACELL cores that taper down near the edges, and a pultruded round tube centered between them. On the top and bottom of the stave, there are 0.19 mm unidirectional m55J carbon-fiber-composite sheets that are thermally conductive (96 [W/mk]) and high modulus (540 GPa). The total thickness of the stave is 3.43 mm and the total radiation length of the stave is about 0.25% per ladder. At both ends of the stave, there are carbon PEEK mounting blocks allowing for accurate mechanical attachment and water cooling input and output. The mounting blocks have clearance holes for pins and screws, cut outs for the HDI and cooling tube and tapped holes for handling and mounting of the succeeding sub-layer. The entire stave structure, as well as the sensor module attachment, are epoxied together. This information is shown in figure E.16.

#### E.8.1.2 Thermal Conductive Plate Stave

To satisfy the necessitated rigidity and thermal conductivity, this plate stave employs the carbon-fiber-reinforced-plastic (CFRP) as material. The CFRP are baked up from unidirectional prepregs consisting of high thermal-conductive carbon fibers, with their directions aligned to achieve directional high thermal conductivity in the length direction of the stave. For this R&D, we have selected two types of prepregs, E9025C-25N and NT9100-520S produced by the Nippon Graphite Fiber (NGF). Both of these two prepregs consist of the 25R epoxy and XN-90 carbon fiber with a thermal conductivity of 500[W/mK], with resin weight fractions of 32% for E9025C-25N and 20% for NT9100-520S, respectively. One can therefore expect the thermal conductivity of approximately 300-400 [W/mk] at CFRP level in the carbon fiber direction, which is higher than that of CFRP for the FVTX backplane of 180[W/mK]. Sample CFRP staves are currently being prepared with a dimension of 450 mm(L)$\times$35 mm(W)$\times$1mm(T). We are going to simulate possible thermal deformations of the stave caused by the heat from HDI, verifying it by also directly measuring the real thermal distribution using the sample CFRP staves with thermography devices. Additional structures to the current stave dimension will be considered depending on simulation results such that thermal deformations fall in the acceptable range.

### E.8.2 Barrel Layout

As it was required by the simulation, the INTT consists of two layers. Each layer consists of two sub-layers with slightly different radii. The width of the active area of a ladder is 52.6% of the total width of the ladder. In order to have overlap for full PHI coverage and have a reasonable stave thickness, the ladders were stagger radially with no tilt. Ladders within a barrel are radially offset from the central axis with no tilt, such that the active area of the silicon sensor modules has sufficient coverage overlap. The quantity of ladders per barrel depends on the radial location, pseudorapidity coverage, tilt angle with respect to the tangent of the radial location, active area overlap, and clearance. These parameters are summarized in table E.17.

### E.8.3 Barrels Support Structure and Assembly

For the mechanical flexibility of the installation, both layers are divided into two equal rotationally symmetric halves. On both ends of the ladders of a given layer, there is a support ring (or endring) both radially inward and outward which has flats and locating pins for easy attachment of ladders. Like the division of the ladders, the three support rings, made of carbon PEEK, are also divided into halves. The inner most sub-layer (1a) is attach to the inner most support ring, then the remaining ladders of layer one, sub-layer 1b, is attached directly to the preceding sublayer. The next endring is directly attached to sub-layer 1b and layer 2 and the third end ring are similarly attached. Once all the ladders are installed in a set of half support rings the inner and outer shells are attached. Each INTT half is fully assembled and tested in the silicon lab at the physics department. The two halves of the INTT are pre-assembled in the silicon lab to ensure they function and mate properly. The final attachment of the two INTT half barrels is done around the beam pipe in the sPHENIX interaction region in the inner bore of the TPC.

### E.8.4 Cooling and Cabling

The inputs/output signals from each silicon module, from the HDIs to the Readout Cards (ROCs), are carried out through a 1.2 m extension cables shown in figure E.19. The extension cables from the ladders are supported by a tube spanning the entire length of the TPC. The tube in turn is supported by rials that extend beyond the TPC and are attached to the inner hadronic calorimeter (HCal) through a supports structure. The ROCs are attached to the inner and outer faces of a large L-bracket aluminum cold plate. The L-brackets allow for sufficient access and clearance for the TPC and also allow for the ROCs to be pre-attache to the INTT survice barrel meaning it can be installed at one unit. The L-bracket also allow for access of connections and cooling tubes for the ROCs, as shown on the figure E.19. As for the cooling of the ladders, there are several inlets and outlets per layer connected to the water cooling tube of each ladder. For water cooling,

some ladders within a layer can be connected in series to minimize the number of inlets and outlets supplied to the detector. The INTT support structure is connected to the inner HCal as shown on figure E.20.

## E.9 Electronics, LV&HV Systems

As briefly described in the detector description section, the readout, slow control, LV, HV supply electronics chains composed by re-use boards of FVTX. These boards are mostly functional in the last year of FVTX operation and known to be kept in reasonably good condition. However, each boards are to be tested before the INTT installation and repaired up on necessity. Shown in Figure E.21 is the schematics of the readout and slow control chains for INTT.

## E.10 R&D

The first prototype for the layer- 1 and 2 of INTT modules have been assembled in 2016 successfully at BNL with the silicon sensors and HDI sent from Japan. This prototype is named L123 prototype-0. The thickness of the silicon sensors used for the prototype modules were 240 and 320 $\mu$m. Figure E.22 shows the prototype module with 320 $\mu$m-thick silicon sensors. HDIs are connected one either side of the silicon sensors and 10 FPHX chips were mounted on each HDI. The silicon sensors are mechanically separated at the middle and the FPHX chips are wire-bonded to the sensors.

Tests of the prototype modules have been made with calibration pulses and the test result for a single FPHX chip on the HDI is shown in Fig. E.23. A clear correlation between calibration pulse amplitude and ADC values can be seen and all 128 channels on the chip look working correctly. The major outcome of the prototype-0 was thus the established communication between FPHX chip and the lest of downstream readout electronics.

The second round prototypes for Layer-1 and 2 (prototype-I) were assembled in 2017. The protyope-I was examined with cosmic rays and a beta ray source and demonstrated reasonable S/N ratio in the test bench. The prototype-I was further examined using proton beam at the test beam facility in FNAL. A telescope was assembled with three stations of prototype-I for the test. The resulting performance in semi-offline analysis level was satisfactory. Further analysis will be pursued.

## E.11 Rates

The expected data rate of INTT is estimated under the expected maximum collision rate in sPHENIX era in Au+Au and p+p. The maximum collision rate for Au+Au is assumed 200kHz and p+p is 10MHz (5MHz BBC noVTX rates as of 50% efficiency).

The estimaation was made based on the observed FVTX data rates. These rates are scaled by following scale factors:

1. The acceptance ratio between FVTX and INTT. They are both full coverage in athimuzal angle, thus scale factor is calculated only by their rapidity coverages.
2. Average $dN/d\eta$ ratio between FVTX rapidity regions and INTT's.
3. BBC noVTX rate ratio between the one when FVTX data rates are recorded and the expected maximum rates in sPHENIX era.

The sample FVTX data rates are quoted from Run16 Run#444010 for Au+Au and Run15#432007 for p+p. The BBC noVTX rates and FVTX data rates (taken from the DAQ online monitors for these runs) are tabulated below.

**Table E.7:** BBC noVTX rates and FVTX data rates for sampled runs from Au+Au (Run16) and p+p (Run15).

| Collision system | Au+Au | p+p |
|---|---|---|
| Run Number | 444010 | 432007 |
| BBC noVTX rate | 60kHz | 1.1MHz |
| FVTX data rate | 25kB/s | 2.5kB/s |

The scaling factors 1 and 2 are tabulated in Table E.8:

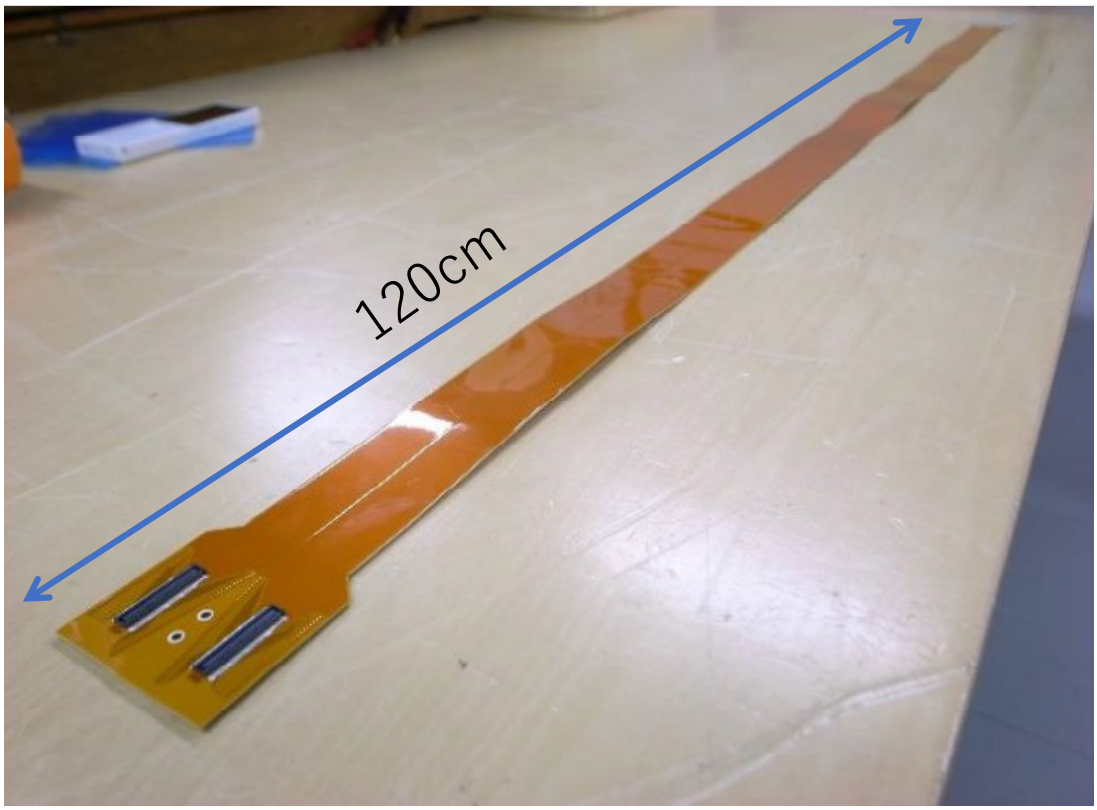
**Table E.8:** Scale factor for $dN/d\eta$ and $\eta$-coverage between FVTX and INTT acceptance.

| Collision system | Au+Au | p+p |
|---|---|---|
| $dN/d\eta$ | 650 | 600 |
| $\eta$-coverage | 2 ($-1 < \eta < 1$) | 4 ($1 < \|\eta\| < 3$) |
| total scale factor | 0.5 | 1 |

Thus the expected maximum data rates of INTT for Au+Au and p+p in sPHENIX era are tabulated in Table. E.9.

**Table E.9:** Expected INTT data rates for the maximum BBC rates in Au+Au and p+p.

| Collision system | Au+Au | p+p |
|---|---|---|
| Maximum BBC noVTX rates | 200kHz | 5MHz |
| Expected INTT data rates | 42kB/s | 5.6kB/x |



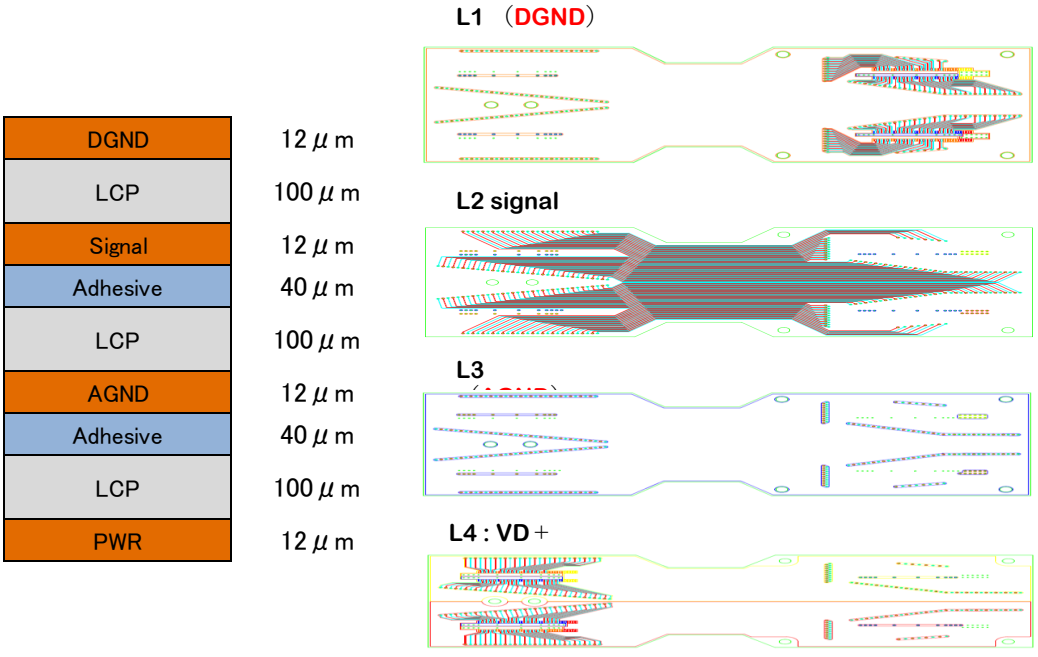




**Figure E.10:** Photograph (top) and the layer structure (bottom) of the pre-production version of the INTT bus extender.

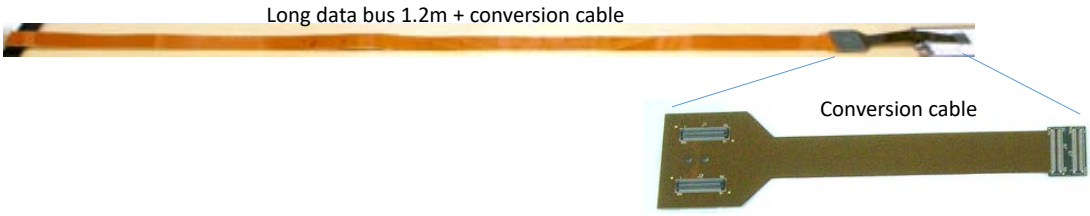



**Figure E.11:** Long data bus and conversion cable.

**Figure E.12:** The bus extender for FVTX.

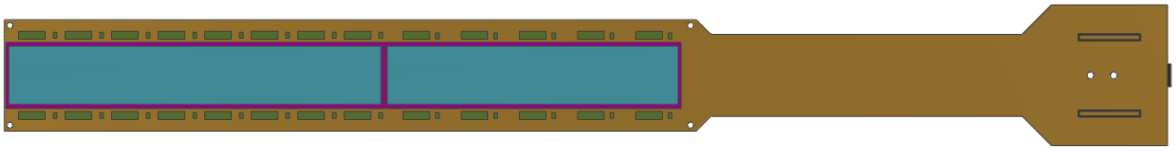


**Figure E.13:** Conceptual design of the Sensor Module for barrel-1 and 2 of the INTT detector.

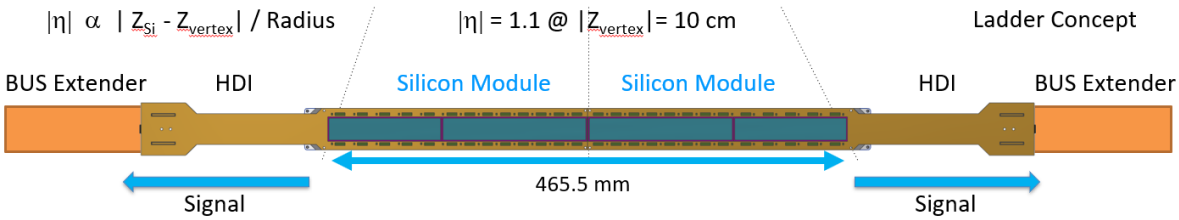



**Figure E.14:** Conceptual design of ladder for Layer-1 and 2.

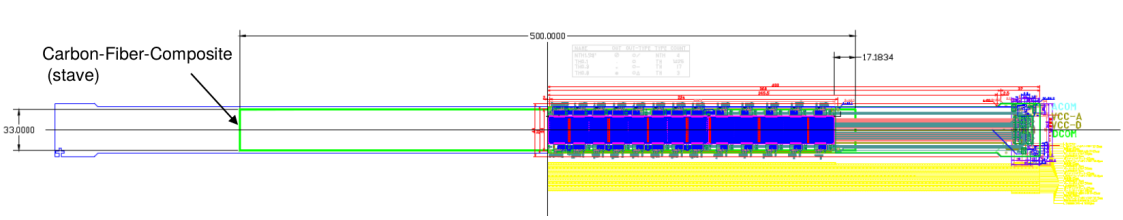



**Figure E.15:** Auto-Cad drawing of one stave, one silicon module, one HDI extender bus of one ladder.

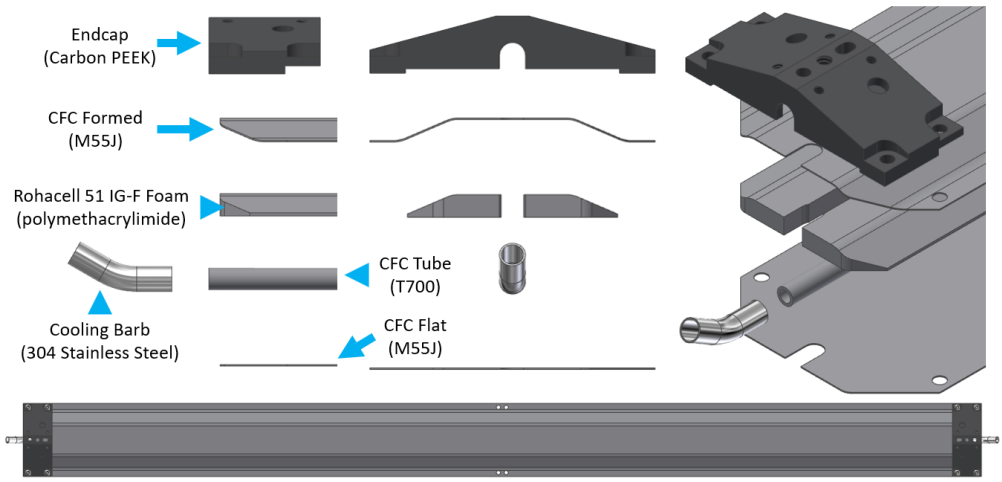
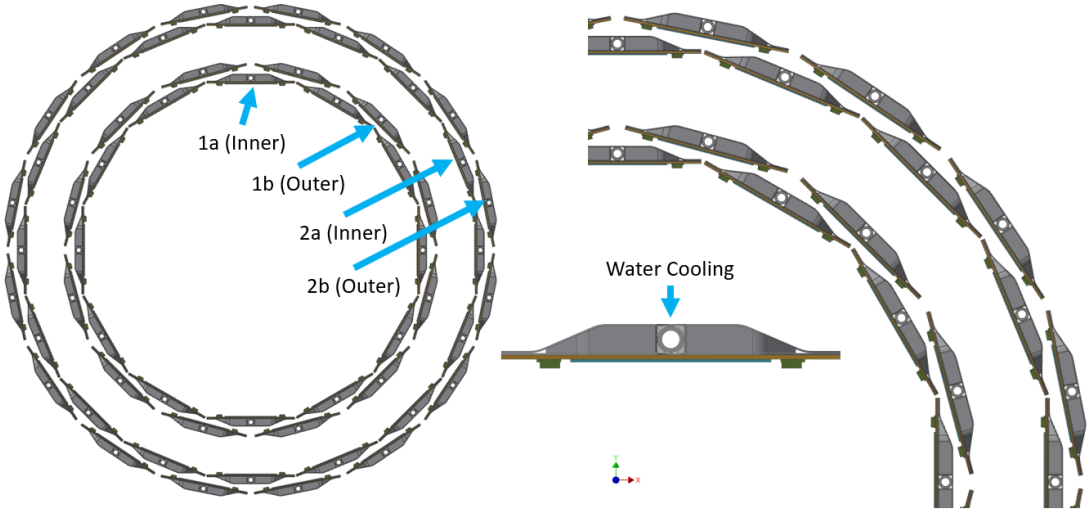



**Figure E.16:** The INTT drawing of the water cooled foam core sandwich stave.




| Barrel | Center of Sensor Tangent Radius (mm) | Pseudo rapidity | QTY of Ladders | Angle (deg) | Coverage (PHI) (%) | Overlap (%) | Clearance (mm) | Chip Power Dissipation (W) | Stave Rad Length (%) | Barrel Rad Length (%) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | - | - | 24 | - | 100 | 1.8 | 2.0 | 79.88 | 0.50 | 2.16 |
| 1a (Inner) | 71.88 | 1.37 | 12 | 0 | 52.7 | 0 | 0.6 | 39.94 | 0.25 | 1.08 |
| 1b (Outer) | 77.32 | 1.31 | 12 | 0 | 49.4 | 0 | 3.4 | 39.94 | 0.25 | 1.08 |
| 2 | - | - | 32 | - | 100 | 1.8 | 2.0 | 106.50 | 0.50 | 2.16 |
| 2a (Inner) | 96.80 | 1.12 | 16 | 0 | 52.4 | 0 | 0.6 | 53.25 | 0.25 | 1.08 |
| 2b (Outer) | 102.62 | 1.07 | 16 | 0 | 49.4 | 0 | 2.8 | 53.25 | 0.25 | 1.08 |
| Total | - | - | 56 | - | - | - | 11.88 | 186.38 | 1.00 | 4.32/4.26 |

**Figure E.17:** The INTT barrels design concept and its parameters: number of ladders per barrel, coverage, tilt angles, and clearances between adjacent ladders.

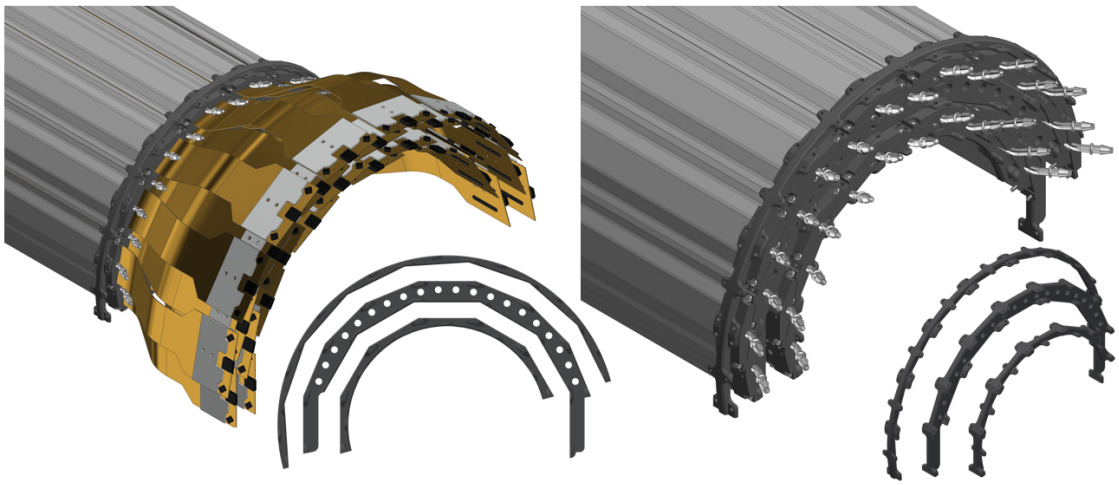


**Figure E.18:** The INTT barrels support structure concept.

**Figure E.19:** The drawing concept of the INTT barrels, extender cables and services mounted into the mechanical structure support.

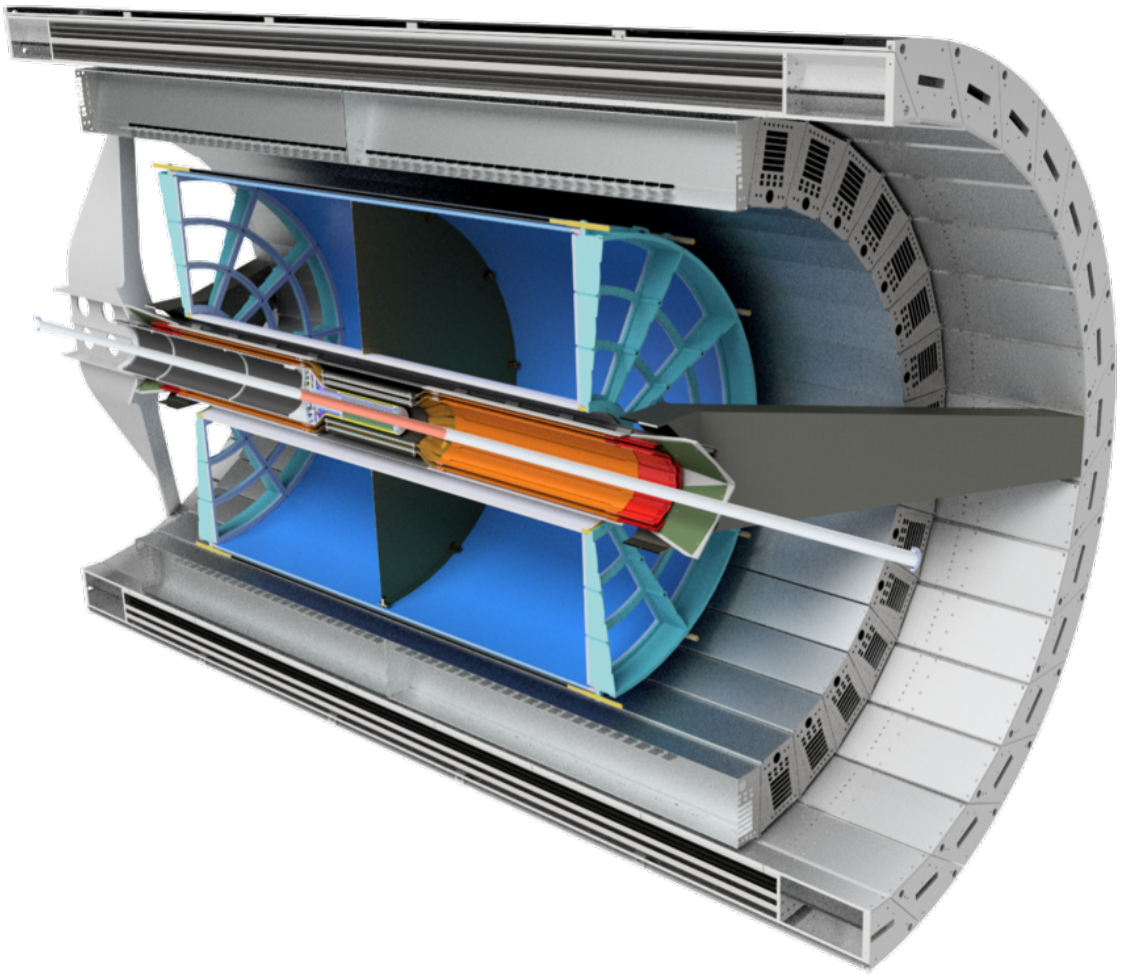


**Figure E.20:** The concept of the INTT support structure connected to the Inner Hadronic Calorimeter.

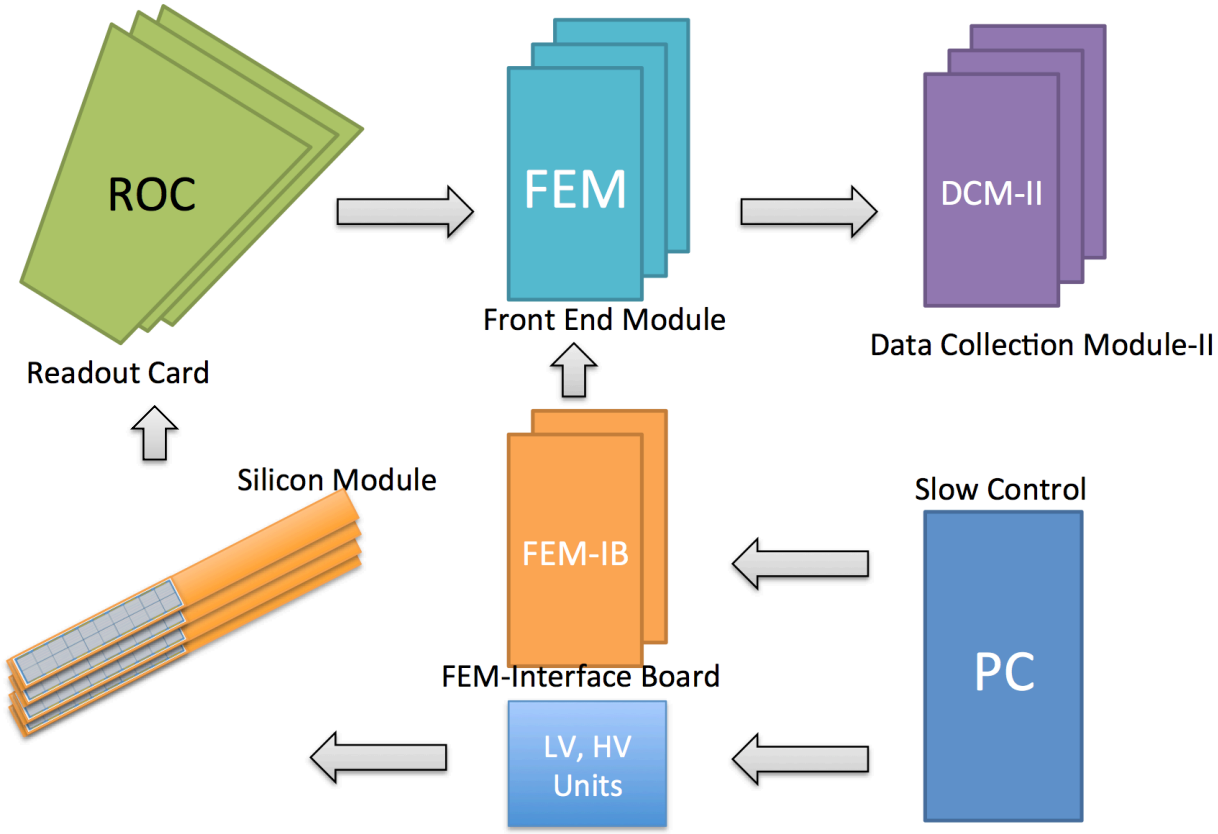



**Figure E.21:** Readout electronics chain for INTT. Any electronics downstream of ROC boards are re-use of resources from FVTX.

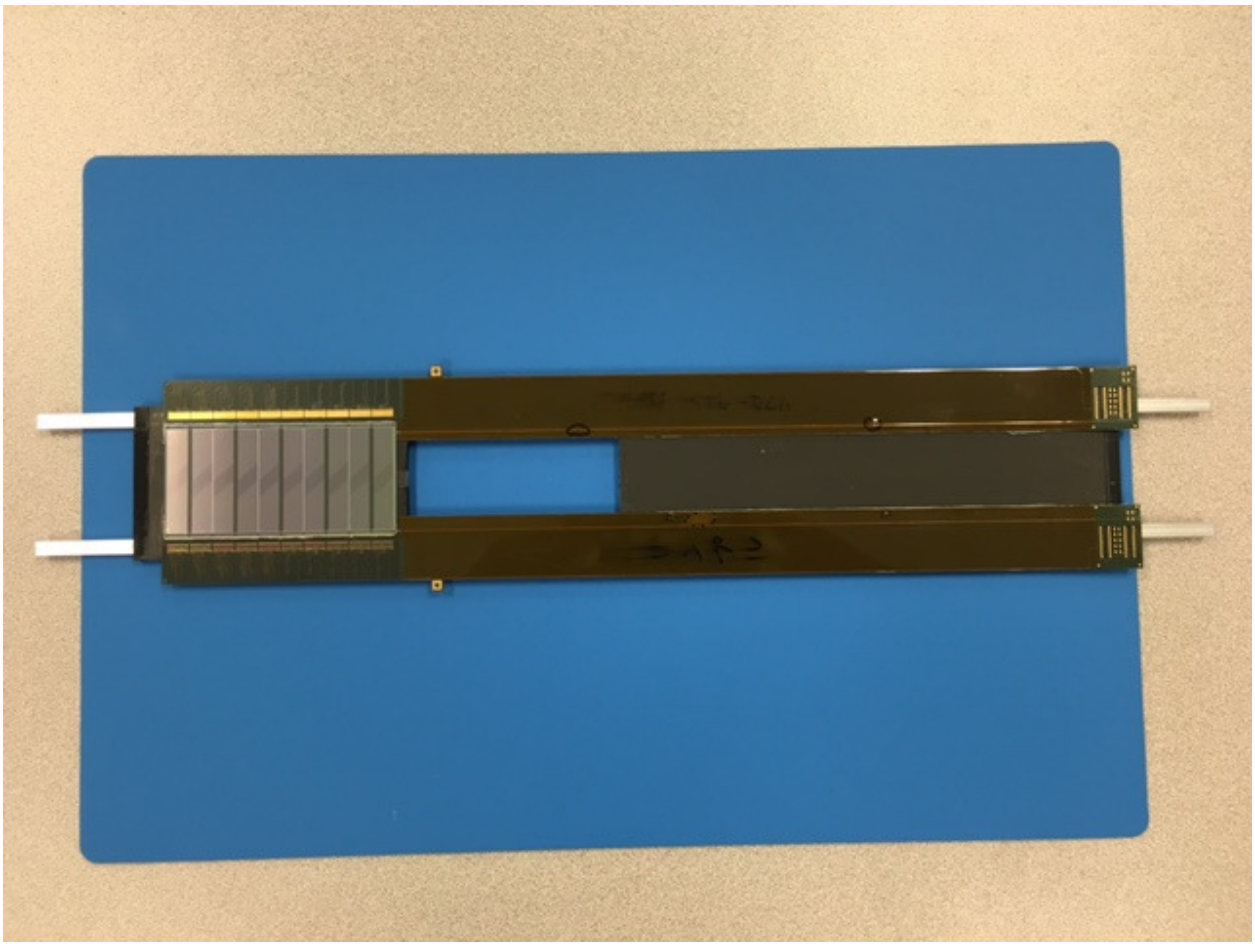


**Figure E.22:** The prototype module with 320 $\mu$m-thick silicon sensors.

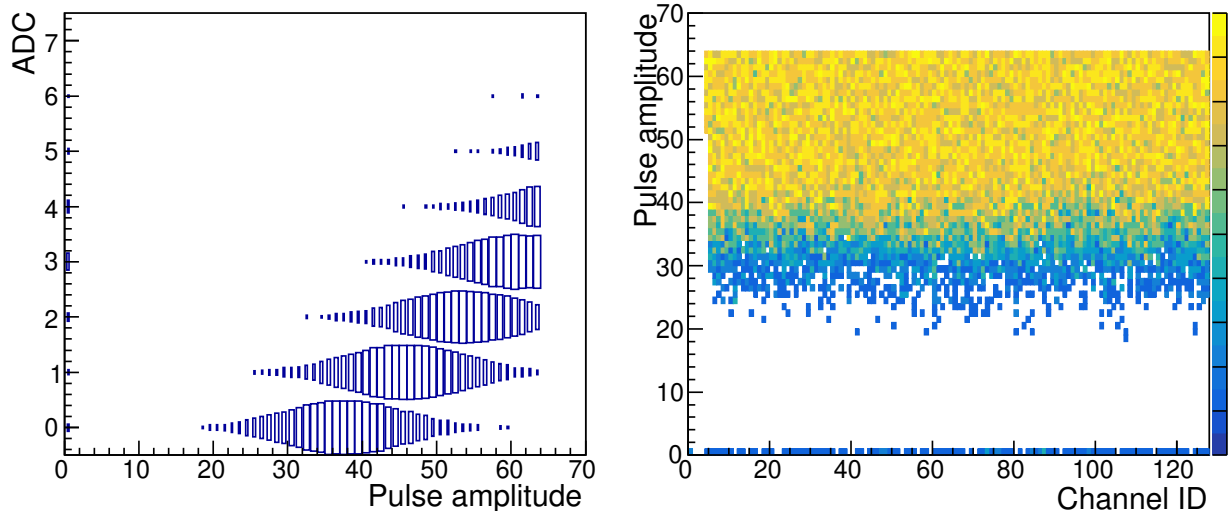



**Figure E.23:** The correlation between calibration pulse amplitude and ADC values (Left) and responses with the calibration pulses for all channels on the chip (Right).

# List of Tables

LIST OF TABLES

# List of Figures

LIST OF FIGURES

# Bibliography


[1] A. Adare et al. An Upgrade Proposal from the PHENIX Collaboration. 2014. arXiv:1501.06197. (document), 1.3

[2] T. Higuchi, M. Nakao, R. Itoh, S. Y. Suzuki, and E. Nakano. Study of radiation damage in front-end electronics components. In *Proceedings, 18th Real-Time Conference (RT2012): Berkley, USA, June 11-15, 2012*, 2012. doi:10.1109/RTC.2012.6418189. 2.5.5

[3] Zi-Wei Lin, Che Ming Ko, Bao-An Li, Bin Zhang, and Subrata Pal. A Multi-phase transport model for relativistic heavy ion collisions. *Phys. Rev.*, C72:064901, 2005. arXiv:nucl-th/0411110, doi:10.1103/PhysRevC.72.064901. 2.5.5

[4] M. J. Wirthlin, H. Takai, and A. Harding. Soft error rate estimations of the Kintex-7 FPGA within the ATLAS Liquid Argon (LAr) Calorimeter. *JINST*, 9(01):C01025, 2014. doi:10.1088/1748-0221/9/01/C01025. 2.5.5, 2.5.5

[5] S. Afanasiev et al. Measurement of Direct Photons in Au+Au Collisions at $\sqrt{s_{NN}} =$ 200 GeV. 2012. arXiv:1205.5759. 3.1

[6] A. Adare et al. Direct-Photon Production in $p + p$ Collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 200$ GeV at Midrapidity. 2012. arXiv:1205.5533. 3.1

[7] B. D. Leverington et al. Performance of the prototype module of the GlueX electromagnetic barrel calorimeter. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, A596:327–337, 2008. doi:10.1016/j.nima.2008.08.137. 3.2.1

[8] S. A. Sedykh et al. Electromagnetic calorimeters for the BNL muon (g-2) experiment. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, A455:346–360, 2000. doi:10.1016/S0168-9002(00)00576-3. 3.2.1

[9] T. Armstrong et al. The E864 lead-scintillating fiber hadronic calorimeter. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, A406:227–258, 1998. doi:10.1016/S0168-9002(98)91984-2. 3.2.1

[10] R. D. Appuhn et al. The H1 lead / scintillating fiber calorimeter. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, A386:397–408, 1997. doi:10.1016/S0168-9002(96)01171-0. 3.2.1

[11] D. W. Hertzog, P. T. Debevec, R. A. Eisenstein, M. A. Graham, S. A. Hughes, P. E. Reimer, and R. L. Tayloe. A HIGH RESOLUTION LEAD SCINTILLATING FIBER ELECTROMAGNETIC CALORIMETER. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, A294:446–458, 1990. doi:10.1016/0168-9002(90)90285-E. 3.2.1

[12] O. D. Tsai et al. Development of a forward calorimeter system for the STAR experiment. *J. Phys. Conf. Ser.*, 587(1):012053, 2015. doi:10.1088/1742-6596/587/1/012053. 3.2.1, 3.3.1, 8.1.2.1, 8.1.2.2

[13] O.D. Tsai, L.E. Dunkelberger, C.A. Gagliardi, S. Heppelmann, H.Z. Huang, et al. Results of & on a new construction technique for W/ScFi Calorimeters. *J. Phys. Conf. Ser.*, 404:012023, 2012. doi:10.1088/1742-6596/404/1/012023. 3.2.1, 3.3.1

[14] R. McNabb, J. Blackburn, J. D. Crnkovic, D. W. Hertzog, B. Kiburg, et al. A Tungsten / Scintillating Fiber Electromagnetic Calorimeter Prototype for a High-Rate Muon g-2 Experiment. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, A602:396–402, 2009. arXiv:0910.0818, doi:10.1016/j.nima.2009.01.007. 3.2.2

[15] C. A. Aidala et al. Design and Beam Test Results for the sPHENIX Electromagnetic and Hadronic Calorimeter Prototypes. *IEEE Trans. Nucl. Sci.*, 65:2901–2919, 2018. doi:10.1109/TNS.2018.2879047. 3.3.1, 3.3.1, 8.1.2.2

[16] M. E. Connors et al. Test Results and Status of the sPHENIX Calorimeter System. *Submitted to: IEEE 2017 NSS/MIC Conf. Rec. Proc.*, 2017. 3.3.2

[17] A. Izmaylov, S. Aoki, J. Blocki, J. Brinson, A. Dabrowska, et al. Scintillator counters with WLS fiber/MPPC readout for the side muon range detector (SMRD)of the T2K experiment. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, A623:382–384, 2010. arXiv:0904.4545, doi:10.1016/j.nima.2010.03.009. 4.2.1

[18] Kuraray Co. Ltd. Scintillation materials catalogue. 4.2.1

[19] W. Anderson et al. Design, Construction, Operation and Performance of a Hadron Blind Detector for the PHENIX Experiment. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, A646:35, 2011. arXiv:1103.4277, doi:10.1016/j.nima.2011.04.015. 5.3

[20] T. Matsumura et al. Effects of radiation damage caused by proton irradiation on Multi-Pixel Photon Counters (MPPCs) . *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, pages 301–308, 2009. doi:10.1016/j.nima.2009.02.022. 5.6.1

[21] Y. Qiang et al. Radiation Hardness Test of SiPMs for the JLab Hall D Barrel Calorimeter. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, pages 301–308, 2009. doi:10.1016/j.nima.2012.10.015. 5.6.1

[22] Y Musienko. Radiation Damage Studies of Silicon Photomultipliers for the CMS HCAL Phase 1 Upgrade. *New Developments in Photodetection Conference Presentation*, 2014. 5.6.1

[23] Y. Fisyak et al. Thermal neutron flux measurements in the STAR experiemental hall. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, pages 68–72, 2014. doi:10.1016/j.nima.2014.04.035. 5.6.1

[24] M. Garcia-Valderas et al. The Effects of Proton Irradiation in CoolRunner-II™ CPLD Technology. *Radiation and Its Effects on Components and Systems (RADECS), 2008 European Conference on*, pages 131–135, 2008. doi:10.1109/RADECS.2008.5944064. 5.6.1

[25] K. Ikematsu et al. A Start - timing detector for the collider experiment PHENIX at RHIC-BNL. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, A411:238–248, 1998. arXiv:physics/9802024, doi:10.1016/S0168-9002(98)00307-6. 6.1

[26] M. Allen et al. PHENIX inner detectors. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, A499:549–559, 2003. doi:10.1016/S0168-9002(02)01956-3. 6.1

[27] RHIC Beam Projections [online]. URL: http://www.rhichome.bnl.gov/RHIC/Runs/RhicProjections.pdf. 7

[28] J. Anderson, K. Bauer, A. Borga, H. Boterenbrood, H. Chen, K. Chen, G. Drake, M. Dönszelmann, D. Francis, D. Guest, B. Gorini, M. Joos, F. Lanni, G. Lehmann Miotto, L. Levinson, J. Narevicius, W. Panduro Vazquez, A. Roich, S. Ryu, F. Schreuder, J. Schumacher, W. Vandelli, J. Vermeulen, D. Whiteson, W. Wu, and J. Zhang. FELIX: A PCIe based high-throughput approach for interfacing front-end and trigger electronics in the ATLAS upgrade framework. *Journal of Instrumentation*, 11(12):C12023–C12023, dec 2016. URL: https://doi.org/10.1088%2F1748-0221%2F11%2F12%2Fc12023, doi:10.1088/1748-0221/11/12/c12023. 7.1

[29] J. Adolfsson, A. Ayala Pabon, M. Bregant, C. Britton, G. Brulin, D. Carvalho, V. Chambert, D. Chinellato, B. Espagnon, H.D. Hernandez Herrera, T. Ljubicic, S.M. Mahmood, U. Mjörnmark, D. Moraes, M.G. Munhoz, G. Noël, A. Oskarsson, L. Osterman, A. Pilyar, K. Read, A. Ruette, P. Russo, B.C.S. Sanches, L. Severo, D. Silvermyr, C. Suire, G.J. Tambave, K.M.M. Tun-Lanoë, W. van Noije, A. Velure, S. Vereschagin, E. Wanlin, T.O. Weber, and S. Zaporozhets. SAMPA chip: the new 32 channels ASIC for the ALICE TPC and MCH upgrades. *Journal of Instrumentation*, 12(04):C04008–C04008, apr 2017. URL: https://doi.org/10.1088%2F1748-0221%2F12%2F04%2Fc04008, doi:10.1088/1748-0221/12/04/c04008. 7.1.4

[30] Markus F. X. J. Oberhumer. oberhumer.com: LZO data compression library. http://www.oberhumer.com/opensource/lzo/, July 2002. 7.1.5

[31] Stephen Scott Adler et al. PHENIX on-line systems. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, A499:560–592, 2003. doi:10.1016/S0168-9002(02)01957-5. 7.4.3

[32] S. Agostinelli et al. GEANT4: A Simulation toolkit. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, A506:250–303, 2003. doi:10.1016/S0168-9002(03)01368-8. 8, 8.1.2.1, 8.1.2.7

[33] R. Fr?hwirth. Application of kalman filtering to track and vertex fitting. *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment*, 262(2):444 – 450, 1987. URL: http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/0168900287908874, doi:https://doi.org/10.1016/0168-9002(87)90887-4. 8.1.1.1

[34] Johannes Rauch and Tobias Schl?ter. GENFIT - a Generic Track-Fitting Toolkit. *J. Phys. Conf. Ser.*, 608(1):012042, 2015. arXiv:1410.3698, doi:10.1088/1742-6596/608/1/012042. 8.1.1.1

[35] Wolfgang Waltenberger. RAVE: A detector-independent toolkit to reconstruct vertices. *IEEE Trans. Nucl. Sci.*, 58:434–444, 2011. doi:10.1109/TNS.2011.2119492. 8.1.1.1

[36] M. Hirschberg, R. Beckmann, U. Brandenburg, H. Brueckmann, and K. Wick. Precise measurement of Birks kB parameter in plastic scintillators. *IEEE Trans. Nucl. Sci.*, 39:511–514, 1992. doi:10.1109/23.159657. 8.1.2.1

[37] Klaus Alexander Tadday. *Scintillation Light Detection and Application of Silicon Photomultipliers in Imaging Calorimetry and Positron Emission Tomography*. PhD thesis, Heidelberg U., 2011. URL: http://www.ub.uni-heidelberg.de/archiv/12959. 8.1.2.2

[38] F. James and M. Roos. Minuit: A System for Function Minimization and Analysis of the Parameter Errors and Correlations. *Comput. Phys. Commun.*, 10:343–367, 1975. doi:10.1016/0010-4655(75)90039-9. 8.2.2

[39] J.S. Kapustinsky. Production and performance of the silicon sensor and custom readout electronics for the PHENIX FVTX tracker. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, A617:546–548, 2010. doi:10.1016/j.nima.2014.04.017. E.1, E.4

[40] C. Aidala. The PHENIX Forward Silicon Vertex Detector. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.*, A755:44–61, 2014. doi:10.1016/j.nima.2014.04.017. E.1, E.4